

2003 Workshop Manual



License #84356800

Buy Now



DEMO

This DEMO contains only a few pages of the entire manual/product.

Not all Bookmarks work on the Demo, but they do on the full version.

Features:

- Searchable text
- Printable pages
- Bookmarked for easy navigation
- High Resolution images
- Zoom to see exact details
- Money back Guarantee
- Transfer to USB flash drive support



F-150

VOLUME 1 and 2

Discover more ebooks! Visit our website: fordshopmanual.com

Ford Motor Company

Copyright © 2025, Forel Publishing Company, LLC, Woodbridge, Virginia

All Rights Reserved. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission of Forel Publishing Company, LLC. For information write to Forel Publishing Company, LLC, Woodbridge, VA 22192

2003 Ford F-150 Truck Workshop Manual (Volume 1 and 2)

EAN: 978-1-60371-491-4

ISBN: 1-60371-491-X

Forel Publishing Company, LLC
Woodbridge, VA 22192



License #84356800

This publication contains material that is reproduced and distributed under a license from Ford Motor Company. No further reproduction or distribution of the Ford Motor Company material is allowed without the express written permission of Ford Motor Company.

Note from the Publisher

This product was created from the original Ford Motor Company's publication. Every effort has been made to use the original scanned images, however, due to the condition of the material; some pages have been modified to remove imperfections.

Disclaimer

Although every effort was made to ensure the accuracy of this book, no representations or warranties of any kind are made concerning the accuracy, completeness or suitability of the information, either expressed or implied. As a result, the information contained within this book should be used as general information only. The author and Forel Publishing Company, LLC shall have neither liability nor responsibility to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused, or alleged to be caused, directly or indirectly by the information contained in this book. Further, the publisher and author are not engaged in rendering legal or other professional services. If legal, mechanical, electrical, or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

2003

Workshop Manual



License #84356800



F-150

VOLUME 1

Ford Motor Company

2003 F-150

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

GENERAL INFORMATION..... Volume 1

SERVICE INFORMATION

Identification Codes	100-01
Jacking and Lifting	100-02
Noise, Vibration and Harshness	100-04
Maintenance Schedule	100-03

CHASSIS..... Volume 1

SUSPENSION

Suspension System — General Information	204-00
Front Suspension — 4x2	204-01A
Front Suspension — 4x4	204-01B
Rear Suspension	204-02
Wheels and Tires	204-04

DRIVELINE

Driveline System — General Information	205-00
Driveshaft	205-01
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-02A
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
9.75-Inch Ring Gear	205-02B
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
10.25-Inch Ring Gear	205-02C
Front Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-03
Front Drive Halfshafts	205-04

BRAKE SYSTEM

Brake System — General Information	206-00
Drum Brake	206-02
Front Disc Brake	206-03
Rear Disc Brake	206-04
Parking Brake and Actuation	206-05
Hydraulic Brake Actuation	206-06
Power Brake Actuation	206-07
Anti-Lock Control — Rear	206-09A
Anti-Lock Control — 4-Wheel	206-09B

STEERING SYSTEM

Steering System — General Information	211-00
Power Steering	211-02
Steering Linkage	211-03
Steering Column	211-04
Steering Column Switches	211-05

POWERTRAIN..... Volume 2

ENGINE

Engine System — General Information	303-00
Engine — 4.2L	303-01A
Engine — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-01B
Engine Cooling	303-03A
Supercharger Cooling	303-03B
Fuel Charging and Controls — 4.2L	303-04A
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V)	303-04B
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
Natural Gas Vehicle	303-04C
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
Bi-Fuel Vehicles	303-04D
Accessory Drive	303-05
Starting System	303-06
Engine Ignition — 4.2L	303-07A
Engine Ignition — 4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V)	303-07B
Engine Emission Control	303-08
Intake Air Distribution and Filtering	303-12
Evaporative Emissions	303-13
Electronic Engine Controls	303-14

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Automatic Transmission — 4R100	307-01A
Automatic Transmission — 4R70W	307-01B
Transaxle/Transmission Cooling	307-02
Automatic Transaxle/Transmission	
External Controls	307-05

NOTE: The descriptions and specifications contained in this manual were in effect at the time this manual was approved for printing. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to discontinue models at any time, or change specifications or design without notice and without incurring any obligation.

PUBLICATIONS ORDERING INFORMATION

To obtain information about ordering additional copies of this publication or to order any other Ford or Lincoln/Mercury publications, call 1-800-782-4356. Available publications include workshop manuals, wiring diagrams, PC/ED Manuals and Owner Guides.

In addition, you can obtain a publications order form by writing to: Ford Publications, care of Helm Inc., P.O. Box 07150, Detroit, MI 48207.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company.

Copyright© 2003, Ford Motor Company



2003 F-150

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MANUAL TRANSMISSION, CLUTCH AND TRANSFER CASE

Manual Transaxle/Transmission and Clutch — General Information	308-00
Clutch	308-01
Clutch Controls	308-02
Manual Transaxle/Transmission	308-03
Transfer Case — General Information	308-07A
Transfer Case	308-07B

EXHAUST SYSTEM

Exhaust System	309-00
----------------------	--------

FUEL SYSTEM

Fuel System — General Information	310-00A
Fuel System — General Information — Natural Gas	310-00B
Fuel System — General Information — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-00C
Fuel Tank and Lines	310-01A
Fuel Tank and Lines — Natural Gas	310-01B
Fuel Tank and Lines — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-01C
Acceleration Control	310-02
Speed Control	310-03

ELECTRICAL Volume 1

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

Climate Control System — General Information	412-00
Air Distribution and Filtering	412-01
Heating and Ventilation	412-02
Air Conditioning	412-03
Control Components	412-04

INSTRUMENTATION AND WARNING SYSTEMS

Instrument Cluster and Panel Illumination	413-00
Instrument Cluster — Conventional	413-01A
Instrument Cluster — Natural Gas Vehicle	413-01B
Instrument Cluster — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	413-01C
Horn	413-06
Warning Devices	413-09

BATTERY AND CHARGING SYSTEM

Charging System — General Information	414-00
Battery, Mounting and Cables	414-01
Generator and Regulator	414-02

AUDIO SYSTEMS

Entertainment System — General Information	415-00
Audio Unit	415-01
Antenna	415-02
Speakers	415-03
Video System	415-07

LIGHTING

Exterior Lighting	417-01
Interior Lighting	417-02
Daytime Running Lamps	417-04

ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

Module Communications Network	418-00
Module Configuration	418-01

ELECTRONIC FEATURE GROUP

Anti-Theft —PATS	419-01
Remote Convenience	419-02
Multifunction Electronic Modules	419-10
Electronic Compass	419-11

BODY AND PAINT Volume 1

BODY

Body System — General Information	501-00
Front End Body Panels	501-02
Body Closures	501-03
Pickup Bed and Platform Body	501-04
Interior Trim and Ornamentation	501-05
Exterior Trim and Ornamentation	501-08
Rear View Mirrors	501-09
Seating	501-10
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms	501-11
Instrument Panel and Console	501-12
Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems	501-14
Wipers and Washers	501-16
Roof Opening Panel	501-17
Bumpers	501-19
Safety Belt System	501-20A
Supplemental Restraint System	501-20B

FRAME AND MOUNTING

Full Frame and Body Mounting	502-02
------------------------------------	--------

INDEX

INTRODUCTION

NOTE: The descriptions and specifications contained in this manual were in effect at the time this manual was approved for printing. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to discontinue models at any time, or change specifications or design without notice and without incurring any obligation.

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICE

Appropriate service methods and procedures are essential for the safe, reliable operation of all motor vehicles as well as the personal safety of the individual doing the work. This manual provides general directions for performing service with tested, effective techniques. Following them will help assure reliability.

There are numerous variations in procedure, techniques, tools and parts for servicing vehicles, as well as in the skill of the individual doing the work. This manual cannot possibly anticipate all such variations and provide advice or cautions as to each. Accordingly, anyone who departs from the instructions provided in this manual must first establish that he compromises neither his personal safety nor the vehicle integrity by his choice of methods, tools or parts.

NOTES, CAUTIONS, AND WARNINGS

As you read through the procedures, you will come across **NOTES**, **CAUTIONS**, and **WARNINGS**. Each one is there for a specific purpose. **NOTES** give you added information that will help you to perform a particular procedure. **CAUTIONS** are given to prevent you from making an error that could damage the vehicle. **WARNINGS** remind you to be especially careful in those areas where carelessness can cause you personal injury. The following list contains some general **WARNINGS** that you should follow when you work on a vehicle.

- **ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES FOR EYE PROTECTION.**
- **USE SAFETY STANDS WHENEVER A PROCEDURE REQUIRES YOU TO BE UNDER THE VEHICLE.**
- **MAKE SURE THAT THE IGNITION SWITCH IS ALWAYS IN THE OFF POSITION, UNLESS OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY THE PROCEDURE.**
- **SET THE PARKING BRAKE WHEN WORKING ON THE VEHICLE. IF YOU HAVE AN AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, SET IN PARK UNLESS INSTRUCTED OTHERWISE FOR A SPECIFIC OPERATION. IF YOU HAVE A MANUAL TRANSMISSION, IT SHOULD BE IN REVERSE (ENGINE OFF) OR NEUTRAL (ENGINE ON) UNLESS INSTRUCTED OTHERWISE FOR A SPECIFIC OPERATION. PLACE WOOD BLOCKS (4" X 4" OR LARGER) AGAINST THE FRONT AND REAR SURFACES OF THE TIRES TO HELP PREVENT THE VEHICLE FROM MOVING.**
- **OPERATE THE ENGINE ONLY IN A WELL-VENTILATED AREA TO AVOID THE DANGER OF CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING.**
- **KEEP YOURSELF AND YOUR CLOTHING AWAY FROM MOVING PARTS WHEN THE ENGINE IS RUNNING, ESPECIALLY THE DRIVE BELTS.**
- **TO PREVENT SERIOUS BURNS, AVOID CONTACT WITH HOT METAL PARTS SUCH AS THE RADIATOR, EXHAUST MANIFOLD, TAIL PIPE, THREE-WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER AND MUFFLER.**
- **DO NOT SMOKE WHILE WORKING ON A VEHICLE.**
- **TO AVOID INJURY, ALWAYS REMOVE RINGS, WATCHES, LOOSE HANGING JEWELRY AND LOOSE CLOTHING BEFORE BEGINNING TO WORK ON A VEHICLE.**
- **WHEN IT IS NECESSARY TO WORK UNDER THE HOOD, KEEP HANDS AND OTHER OBJECTS CLEAR OF THE RADIATOR FAN BLADES!**

Manual Table of Contents

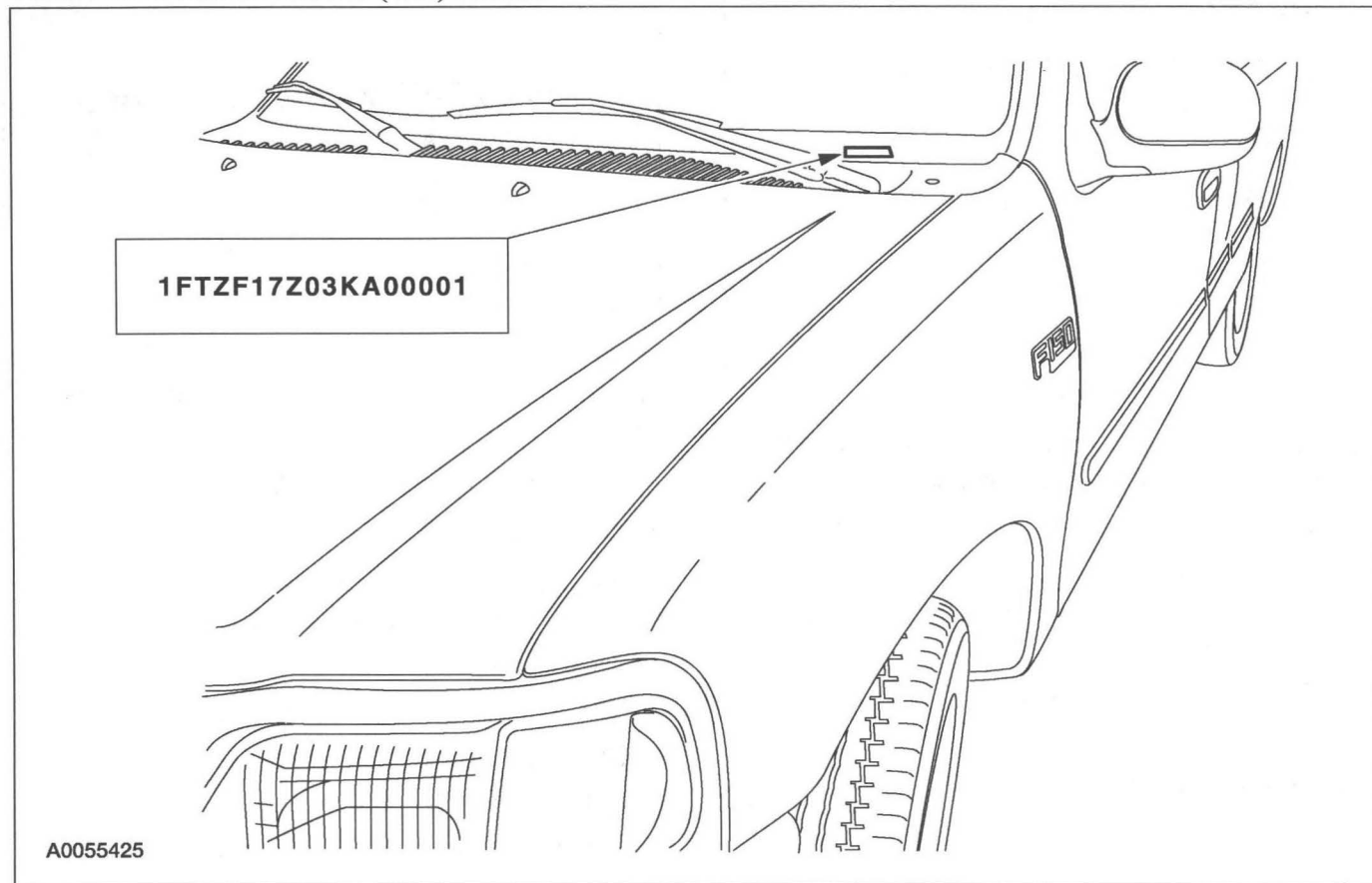
SECTION 100-01 Identification Codes

CONTENTS	PAGE
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
Identification Codes.....	100-01-1

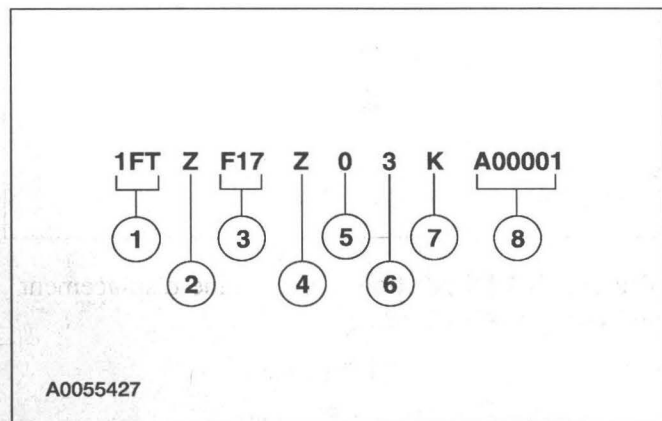
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

Identification Codes

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) Locator



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is a 17-digit combination of letters and numbers. The VIN is stamped on a metal tab riveted to the instrument panel, top upper left of the dash. The VIN number is also found on the vehicle certification (VC) label.



Item	Description
1	World manufacturer identifier (WMI)
2	Brake type and gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR), may also include the vehicle restraint type code
3	Vehicle line, series, body type code
4	Engine type code
5	Computer-generated check digit
6	Model year code
7	Assembly plant code
8	Production sequence number

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Vehicle Identification Number****World Manufacturer Identifier**

1FT Z F17 Z 0 3 K A00001

↑

A0055428

The first three vehicle identification number (VIN) positions are the world manufacturer identifier.

- 1FT — Ford Motor Company, USA, truck, completed vehicle
- 2FT — Ford Motor Company, Canada, truck, completed vehicle
- 3FT — Ford Motor Company, Mexico, truck, completed vehicle

Brake and Gross Vehicle Weight Code

1FT Z F17 Z 0 3 K A00001

↑

A0055429

The fourth VIN position is the vehicle brake type and GVWR code (all vehicles use hydraulic brakes).

- Z — 5,001-6,000 pounds GVWR with driver and front passenger air bags
- R — 6,001-7,000 pounds GVWR with driver and front passenger air bags
- P — 7,001-8,000 pounds GVWR with driver and front passenger air bags

Line, Series and Body Type

1FT Z F17 Z 0 3 K A00001

↑

A0055430

Positions 5 through 7 indicate vehicle line, series and body type.

- F07 — Regular Cab, 4x2, Flareside
- F08 — Regular Cab, 4x4, Flareside
- F17 — Regular Cab, 4x2, Styleside
- F18 — Regular Cab, 4x4, Styleside
- W07 — Crew Cab, 4x2, Flareside
- W08 — Crew Cab, 4x4, Flareside
- X07 — SuperCab, 4x2, Flareside
- X08 — SuperCab, 4x4, Flareside
- X17 — SuperCab, 4x2, Styleside
- X18 — SuperCab, 4x4, Styleside

Engine Code

1FT Z F17 Z 0 3 K A00001

↑

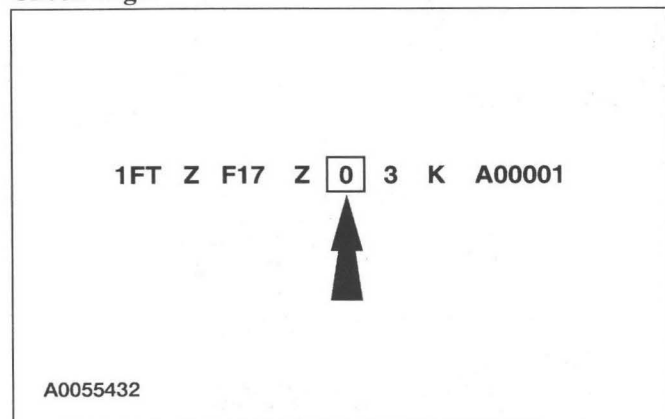
A0055431

The eighth VIN position is the engine displacement and number of cylinders.

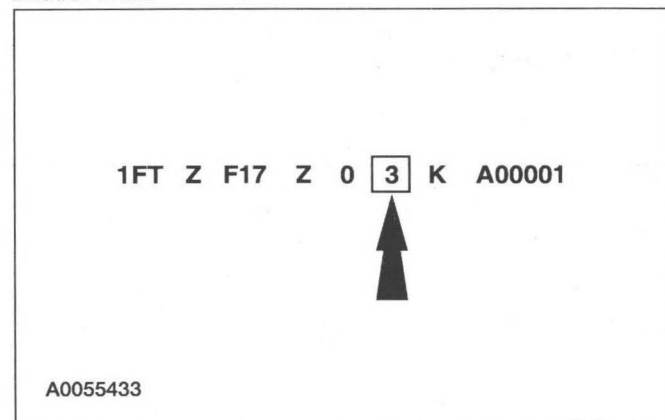
- 2 — 4.2L, OHV, EFI, V6, Gas
- 3 — 5.4L, SOHC, SFI, V8, Gas
- 6 — 4.6L, SOHC, EFI, V8, Gas
- L — 5.4L, SOHC, EFI, V8, Gas

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

- M — 5.4L, SOHC, EFI, V8, Compressed Natural Gas
- W — 4.6L, SOHC, EFI, V8, Gas
- Z — 5.4L, Bi-Fuel, V8, Compressed Natural Gas/Propane

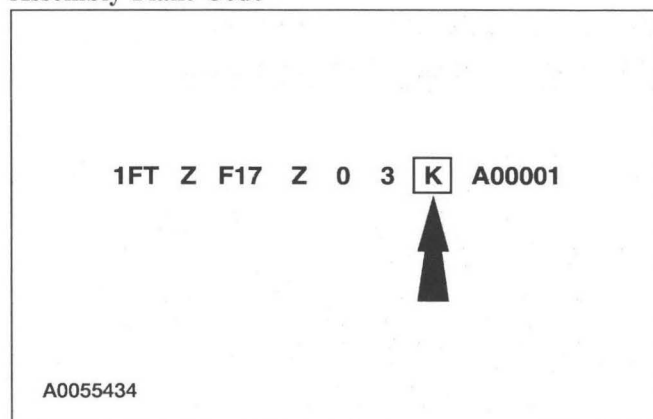
Check Digit

The ninth VIN position is a government assigned, computer-generated check digit.

Model Year

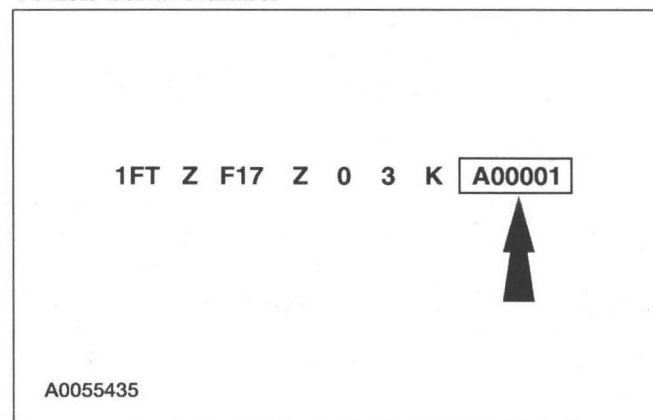
The tenth VIN position is the model year code.

- 3 — 2003

Assembly Plant Code

The eleventh VIN position is the assembly plant code.

- C — Ontario Truck (Oakville, Ontario)
- K — Kansas City (Claycomo, Missouri)
- M — Cuautitlan (Cuautitlan, Mexico)
- N — Norfolk (Norfolk, Virginia)

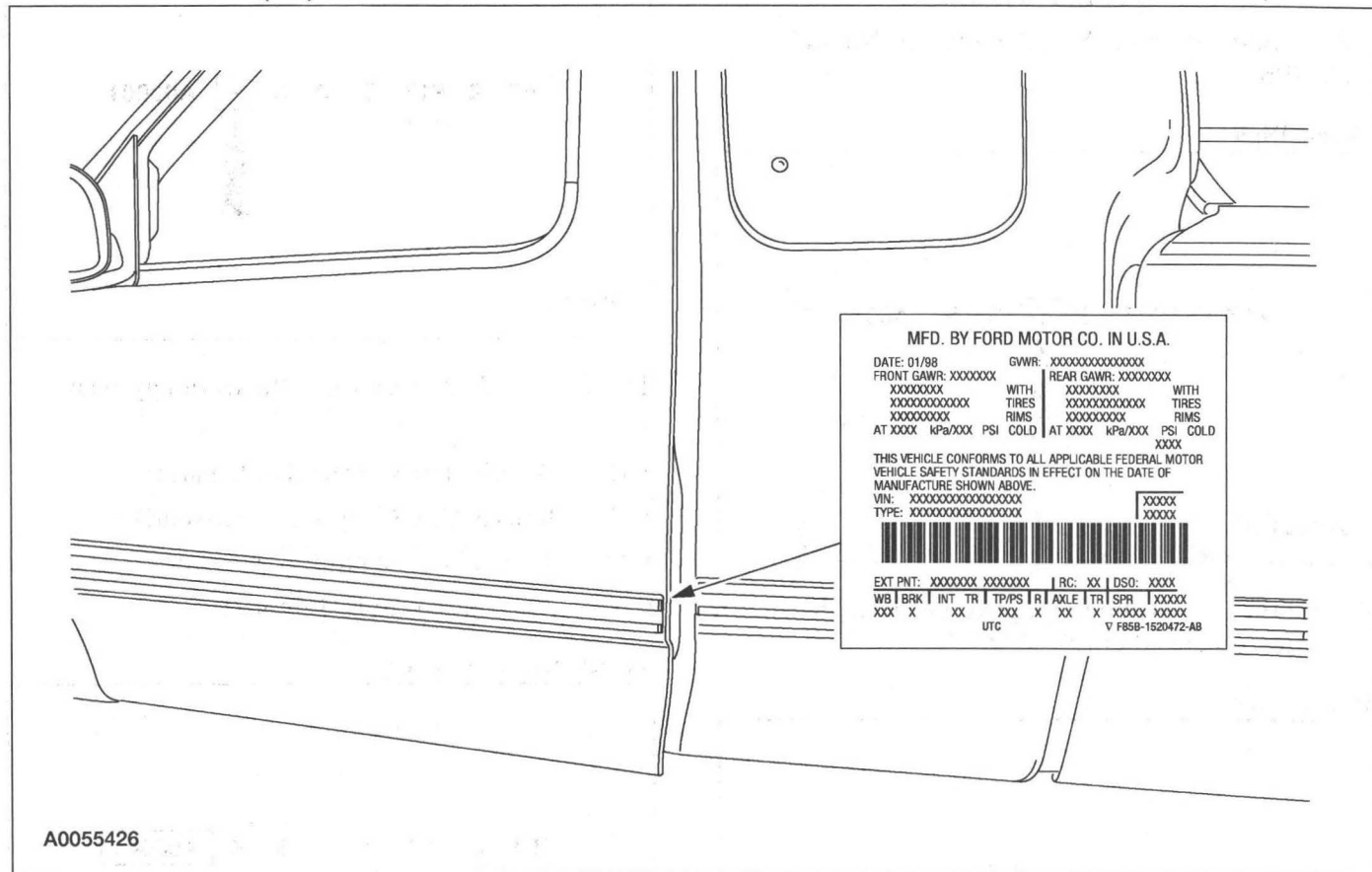
Vehicle Serial Number

The last six VIN positions are an alphanumeric code for the vehicle build sequence. This is also the vehicle serial and warranty number.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Vehicle Certification (VC) Label

Vehicle Certification (VC) Label Locator



DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

The vehicle certification (VC) label contains the manufacturer name, the month and year of manufacture, the certification statement, and the VIN. It also includes gross vehicle weight ratings (GVWR).

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

(1) (2)

EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX
 XXX | X | XX XXX X XX X XXXX X | XXXX
 ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
 (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (3)

A0008272

Item	Description
1	Exterior paint code
2	Region code
3	Domestic special order (DSO) code
4	Wheelbase code

Item	Description
5	Brake type code
6	Interior trim code
7	Tape/paint stripe code
8	Radio code
9	Axle code
10	Transmission code
11	Spring code
12	Powertrain calibration information

Vehicle Certification (VC) Label — Canada (Typical)

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. OF CANADA, LTD.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR/PNBV: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR / REAR GAWR
 PNBE AV PNBE AR
 XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX
 WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX / XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX RIMS/JANTES XXXXXXXX
 XXXXX/XXX COLD/À FROID XXXX/XXX
 XXXX/JUMELÉES

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX COMPLIES: ICES-2 XXXXX

EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX
 XXX | X | XX XXX X XX X XXXX X | XXXX
 ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
 (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (3)

A0008273

Vehicle Certification (VC) Label — Mexico (Typical)

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY

DATE: XXXXX GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX
 REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX

 VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX

EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX
 XXX | X | XX XXX X XX X XXXX X | XXXX
 ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
 (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (3)

A0008274 MADE IN MEXICO MPE ∇ F85B-1520472-AB

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Exterior Paint

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX
 WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXXX XXXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018017

Paint Codes

Exterior paint color codes may be listed as a two-part code. The first set of paint code characters indicate the primary body color. The second set of paint code characters (if applicable), indicate a two-tone body color or accent body color.

Primary Body Color

- AQ — Arizona Beige
- B4 — Chestnut, clear coat
- CX — Dark Shadow Gray, clear coat
- E4 — Vermilion, clear coat
- FX — Merlot
- KW — Charcoal Blue, clear coat
- L2 — True Blue Pearl, clear coat
- PX — Dark Highland Green, clear coat

- SN — Sonic Blue
- ST — Estate Green, clear coat
- UA — Ebony, clear coat
- YN — Silver Metallic, clear coat
- YZ — Oxford White, clear coat

Two-Tone or Accent Color

- AQ — Arizona Beige
- CX — Dark Shadow Gray
- FX — Merlot
- YN — Silver Metallic

Wheelbase

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX
 WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXXX XXXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018018

- 120 — 120-inch (3,048 mm) wheelbase
- 139 — 139-inch (3,531 mm) wheelbase
- 157 — 157-inch (3,989 mm) wheelbase

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Brake Type

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX | RC: XX | DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXXX XXXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB



A0018019

- 2 — Four-wheel disc, four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)
- D — Disc/drum brakes (rear ABS only)

Interior Trim

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX | RC: XX | DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXXX XXXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB



A0018020

Interior trim codes are listed as a two-part code. The first character identifies the interior trim type. The second character identifies the interior trim color.

Interior Trim Type

- A — Vinyl full bench, regular cab
- B — Cloth full bench, regular cab
- C — 40/60 cloth split bench, regular cab
- D — 40/60 Nudo leather split bench, regular cab
- E — Cloth captains chairs, regular cab
- F — Leather captains chairs, regular cab
- L — Leather 40/60 split bench, regular cab (Lightning)
- S — Cloth 40/60 split bench, regular cab (Sport/STX)
- T — Cloth captains chairs, regular cab (Sport)
- R — Cloth full bench, regular cab (Mexico)
- M — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Heritage)
- P — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Heritage)
- G — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Heritage)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

- J — Cloth 40/60 split bench, SuperCab (Heritage)
- N — Cloth 40/60 split bench, SuperCab (Heritage)
- Y — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Heritage)
- W — Leather captains chairs/rear bench, Crew Cab (King Ranch)
- 1 — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Heritage)
- 2 — Cloth full bench, SuperCab
- 3 — Cloth 40/60 split bench, SuperCab, Crew Cab
- 4 — Leather 40/60 split bench, SuperCab
- 5 — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab, Crew Cab
- 6 — Leather captains chairs, SuperCab
- 7 — Cloth 40/60 split bench, SuperCab (Sport/STX)
- 8 — Cloth captains chairs, SuperCab (Sport)
- X — Leather captains chairs, SuperCab (King Ranch)
- K — Leather captains chairs, Crew Cab (King Ranch)
- H — Leather captains chairs, Crew Cab (Harley)
- Q — Leather 40/60 split bench, Crew Cab (Lariat)
- 9 — Leather captains chairs, Crew Cab (Lariat)

Interior Color Code

- 2 — Medium Graphite
- B — Ebony
- H — Medium Parchment
- T — Dark Graphite

Tape/Paint Stripe

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98	GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
FRONT GAWR: XXXXXX	REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
XXXXXXX	WITH XXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXX	TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXX	RIMS XXXXXXXX
AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD	AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
	XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXX
 XXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXX XXXXXX	RC: XX	DSO: XXXX
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX		
XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX		
	UTC	▽ F85B-1520472-AB



A0018021

Upper Tape Stripe

- X — Black
- C — Light Argent/Medium Platinum
- D — Medium Platinum/Light Argent
- E — Arizona Beige/Deep Sandlewood Metallic
- F — Deep Sandlewood Metallic/Arizona Beige

Two-Tone Lower Tape Stripe

- A — Light Argent/Medium Platinum
- B — Arizona Beige/Deep Sandlewood Metallic
- D — Ebony/Satin Silver (Harley)
- G — Arizona Beige/Dark Taupe
- H — Ebony/Arizona Beige (Heritage)
- R — Dark Shadow Gray/Bright Red

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Radio Type

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX | RC: XX | DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018022

- 5 — AM/FM stereo with compact disc (CD) player
- 6 — Premium AM/FM stereo with cassette and compact disc (CD) player
- 7 — Electronic AM/FM stereo with clock
- 9 — Electronic AM/FM stereo with clock and cassette
- P — AM/FM stereo with dual media (compact disc (CD) and MP3 capability)
- S — Premium AM/FM stereo with cassette, six-disc compact disc (CD) and unique equalization
- W — Premium electronic AM/FM stereo with cassette, compact disc (CD) player and clock

- X — CDX6 AM/FM stereo with six-disc compact disc (CD) changer
- Y — Less radio

Axle Type

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
 TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXXX
 XXXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX | RC: XX | DSO: XXXX
 WB | BRK | INT | TR | TP/PS | R | AXLE | TR | SPR | XXXX
 XXX X XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX
 UTC ∇ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018023

- 18 — 3.08, non-limited slip
- 19 — 3.55, non-limited slip
- 24 — 3.54, limited slip
- 26 — 3.73, non-limited slip
- 27 — 3.31, non-limited slip
- B5 — 4.10, limited slip
- B6 — 3.73, limited slip
- H9 — 3.55, limited slip

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Transmission Type

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXX

TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX	RC: XX	DSO: XXXX
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX		
XXX X XX XXX X X X XXXXX XXXXX		

UTC ▽ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018024

- 7 — four-speed automatic (4R100), heavy duty
- E — four-speed automatic, E4OD (4R100)
- M — five-speed manual overdrive (Mazda M5R2-C)
- U — four-speed automatic, AODE (W/4R70W)

Spring Codes

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.

DATE: 01/98 GVWR: XXXXXXXXXXXXX
 FRONT GAWR: XXXXXXX REAR GAWR: XXXXXXXX
 XXXXXXXX WITH XXXXXXXX WITH
 XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS
 AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/XXX PSI COLD
 XXXX

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR
 VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXX

TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

XXXX



EXT PNT: XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX	RC: XX	DSO: XXXX
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX		
XXX X XX XXX X X X XXXXX XXXXX		

UTC ▽ F85B-1520472-AB

A0018025

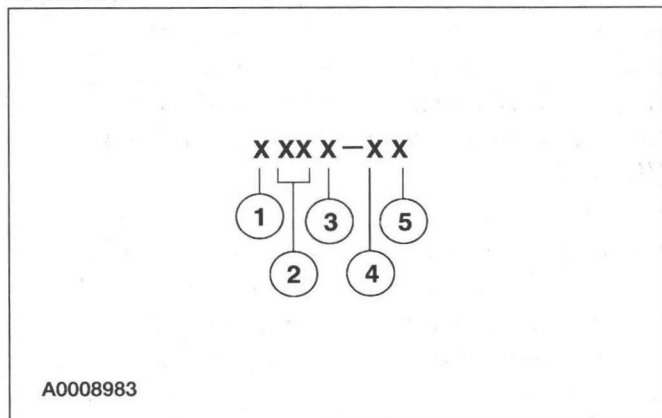
Spring codes are listed as a two-part code. The first characters listed identify the front springs. The second character listed identifies the rear springs.

Front Springs

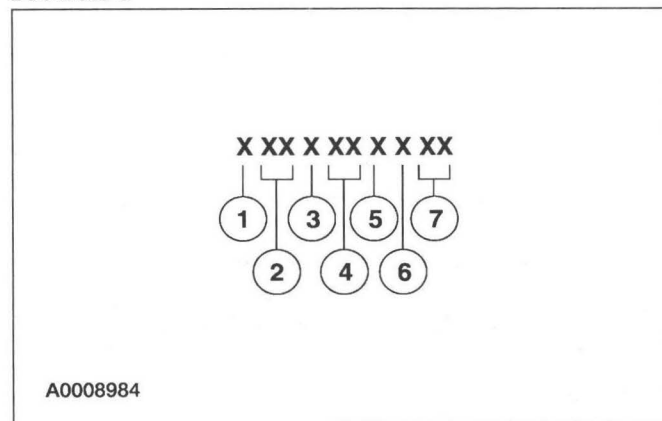
- B — F75A-5310-BA, coil
- K — F75A-5310-RA, coil
- L — F75A-5310-SA, coil
- M — F75A-5310-TA, coil
- N — F75A-5310-XA, coil
- P — F75A-5310-YA, coil
- R — F75A-5310-ZA, coil
- S — F75A-5310-AAA, coil
- W — F75A-5310-AA, coil

Rear Springs

- 3 — YL34-5560-EA, leaf
- 9 — YL34-5560-AF, leaf
- A — YL34-5560-KA, leaf
- B — XL34-5560-UB, leaf
- D — YL34-5560-CA, leaf

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Protocol 2**

Item	Description
1	Model year (model year in which calibration strategy was first introduced)
2	Engine code
3	Transmission code
4	Emission standard (designates the specific country emission standard)
5	Design level (design level assigned to the engine)

Protocol 3

Item	Description
1	Model year (model year in which calibration strategy was first introduced)
2	Vehicle code
3	Transmission code
4	Unique calibration (designates different hardware to similar vehicles). Example: tires, drive ratios, etc.

Item	Description
5	Fleet code (describes fleet to which the vehicle belongs). Example: 6 - evaporative emissions
6	Certification region (lead region where multiple regions are included in one calibration). Example: A - U.S. federal
7	Revision level (will advance as revisions occur). Not printed on label

Protocol 3

The following offers a more detailed explanation of the coding strategy used in Protocol 3.

Model Year

- 0 — 2000
- 1 — 2001
- 2 — 2002
- 3 — 2003

Vehicle Line

- F5 — F-150

Transmission

- 1 — Automatic transmission
- 2 — Manual transmission

Unique Calibration

The Emissions/CAFE/CO2 Compliance Department is responsible for assigning these calibration numbers. Unique calibration identification identifications are assigned to cover similar vehicles to differentiate tires, drive configurations, final drive ratios and other calibration-significant factors.

These two characters are chosen by the analyst to provide identifiable information unique to each calibration. For example, using the number 2 to denote a two-valve engine versus using the number 4 to denote a four-valve engine, offers an easily identifiable difference.

Fleet Code

- 1 — HDGE/Dyno
- 2 — Fast AMA, U.S.
- 3 — ADP, U.S.
- 4 — Not assigned
- 5 — Not assigned
- 6 — Evaporative emissions

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

- 7 — MACAA
- 8 — On-board diagnostics (OBD)
- 9 — Not assigned

Certification Region

Where multiple regions are included in one calibration, only the lead region will be listed.

- 5 — U.S. fifty states
- A — U.S. federal, including altitude, may include Canada and/or Mexico
- B — U.S. California standard, includes U.S. green states
- C — Canada
- D — China
- E — European Community (Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Sweden and United Kingdom)
- F — Extended European Community (E plus Croatia, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Norway, Poland, Romania, Russian Federation, Slovakia, Slovenia, Switzerland and Yugoslavia)
- G — Gulf Cooperative Council (Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia and UAE)
- H — Hong Kong
- J — Japan

- K — Korea
- L — Malaysia
- M — Mexico
- N — New Zealand
- P — Australia
- Q — South America (Brazil)
- S — Singapore
- T — Taiwan
- U — South America (unleaded fuel regions)
- V — Vietnam
- Y — Military
- Z — Israel

Revision Level (not printed on label)

- 91-99 — Hardware calibration levels
- 01-04 — Preliminary levels
- 00 — Job 1 production (initial calibration)
- 05-09 — Pre-job 1 revisions to calibrations
- 10-89 — Post-job 1 revisions to calibrations
- 0B — Durability test level
- BD — On-board diagnostics (OBD) intermediate level (pre-05)

Manual Table of Contents

SECTION 100-02 Jacking and Lifting**CONTENTS****PAGE****DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION**

Jacking	100-02-1
Lifting	100-02-2
Lifting Points — Twin Post Hoist	100-02-2

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

Jacking

⚠ WARNING: The electrical power to the air suspension system must be shut down prior to hoisting, jacking or towing an air suspension vehicle. This can be accomplished by turning off the air suspension switch located in the RH kick panel area. Failure to do so may result in unexpected inflation or deflation of the air springs which may result in shifting of the vehicle during these operations.

⚠ WARNING: Do not run the engine when jacking the vehicle. The wheels contacting the ground could cause the vehicle to move.

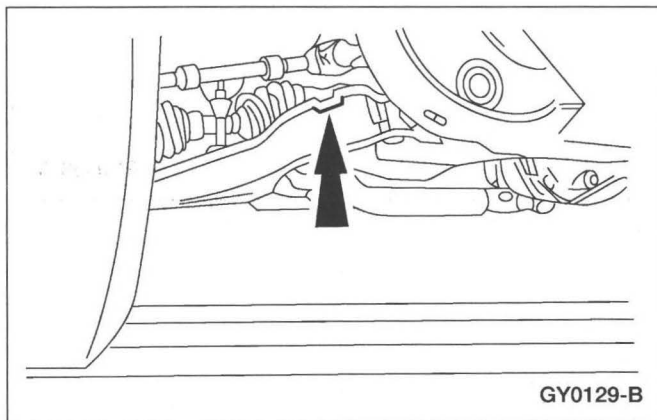
⚠ WARNING: Support the vehicle prior to performing any procedure requiring the vehicle to be jacked off the ground.

⚠ WARNING: Make sure the jack and jack stands are properly located to prevent the vehicle from falling.

⚠ WARNING: Wheel chocks should be used to prevent the vehicle from rolling and falling off the jack.

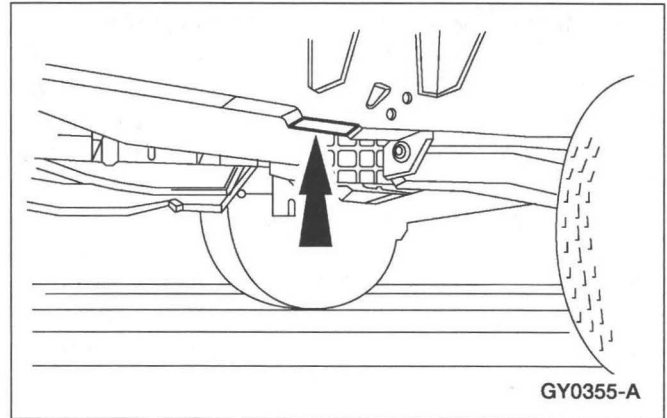
⚠ CAUTION: Never use a halfshaft as a lifting point.

Jacking Points — Front, 4x4



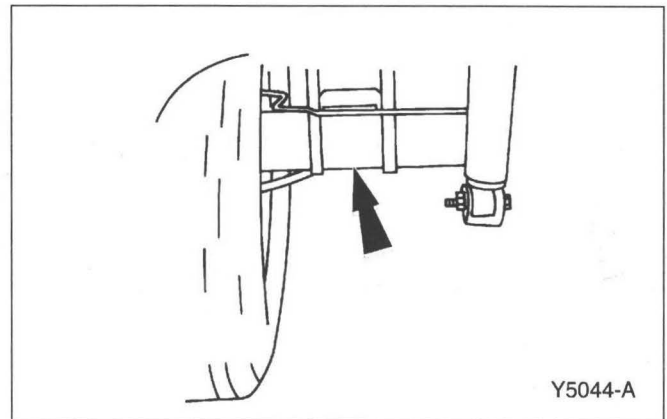
The jacking point is a raised boss located on the front suspension lower arm (3079).

Jacking Points — Front, 4x2



The jacking point is a flat portion on the frame indicated by the arrow cut out. The jacking point is located behind the front tire and wheel assembly.

Jacking Points — Rear



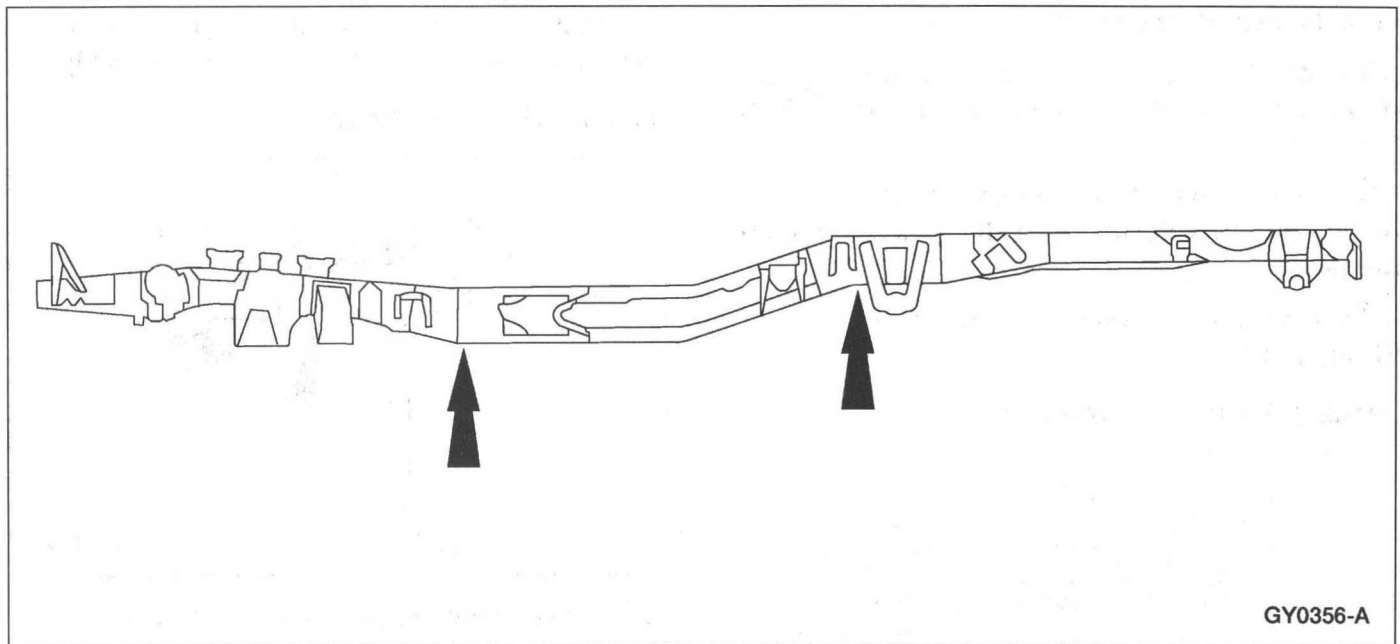
⚠ CAUTION: Never use the differential housing as a lifting point.

The rear jacking points are located on the rear axle (4001).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Lifting**

⚠ WARNING: The electrical power to the air suspension system must be shut off prior to hoisting, jacking or towing an air suspension vehicle. This can be accomplished by turning off the air suspension switch located in the RH kick panel area. Failure to do so may result in unexpected inflation or deflation of the air spring which may result in shifting of the vehicle during these procedures.

⚠ CAUTION: Damage to suspension, exhaust and steering linkage components may occur if care is not exercised when positioning the hoist adapters prior to lifting the vehicle.

Lifting Points — Twin Post Hoist

Locate the front hoist adapters and rear hoist adapters (top of frame arc) as indicated.

Manual Table of Contents

SECTION 100-03 Maintenance Schedule

CONTENTS	PAGE
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
Maintenance Schedule — Vehicles with Gasoline Engines	100-03-1
General Maintenance Information	100-03-1
Special Operating Condition Requirements	100-03-1
Checks and Services	100-03-2
Normal Schedule	100-03-2
Exceptions To Normal Schedule	100-03-6

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

~~Maintenance Schedule~~ Vehicles with Gasoline Engines

The maintenance schedule is designed to protect against major repairs resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and to prolong the life of the vehicle.

General Maintenance Information

NOTE: This is a generic maintenance schedule for all Ford, Lincoln and Mercury vehicles. There may be items listed that do not apply to all vehicles.

The Normal Schedule applies to operation of the vehicle under typical, everyday driving conditions. The maintenance frequency in this schedule typifies what the vast majority of vehicles will require. The listed services should be carried out at specified mileage intervals. There are, however, additional services required that only the noted vehicles require.

If the vehicle is operated in one or more of the following special operating conditions, those additional services will be required. The special operating conditions are:

- towing or carrying heavy loads.
- extensive idling and/or driving at low speeds for long distances.
- driving in dusty conditions.
- off-road operation.

There are also exceptions to the Normal Operating Schedule which will require more frequent maintenance for some components. Those exceptions are:

- natural gas and propane vehicles — fuel tank intervals.
- normal vehicle axle — maintenance and lubrication.
- police and taxi vehicles — maintenance and lubrication.
- engine oil and yellow coolant — time and mileage-based interval.

Special Operating Condition Requirements

When towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier:

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter every 4,800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months.

- Change transfer case fluid every 96,000 km (60,000 miles).
- Change manual transmission fluid as required.
- Inspect and lubricate U-joints as required.

During extensive idling and/or low speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery:

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter, lube front lower control arm and steering linkage ball joints with zerk fittings (if equipped) every 4,800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months.
- Inspect brake system and check battery electrolyte level (Patrol cars) every 8,000 km (5,000 miles).
- Install a new fuel filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
- Change automatic transmission fluid, lubricate 4x2 wheel bearings, install new grease seals and adjust bearings every 48,000 km (30,000 miles).
- Install new spark plugs and change transfer case fluid every 96,000 km (60,000 miles).
- Install a new cabin air filter as required.

When operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads:

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter every 4,800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months.
- Install a new fuel filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
- Change automatic transmission fluid every 48,000 km (30,000 miles).
- Change transfer case fluid every 96,000 km (60,000 miles).
- Install a new engine air filter as required.
- Install a new cabin air filter as required.

When operating in off-road conditions:

- Change automatic transmission fluid every 48,000 km (30,000 miles).
- Change transfer case fluid every 96,000 km (60,000 miles).
- Install a new cabin air filter as required.
- Inspect and lubricate U-joints.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage ball joints with zerk fittings.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Checks and Services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be carried out at specified intervals. Any recognized adverse condition should be corrected as soon as possible.

Maximum Oil Change Interval (Normal Schedule)

- 8,000 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months, whichever occurs first.

Maximum Oil Change Interval (Special Operating Conditions)

- 4,800 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months.

Monthly Checks

Check each of the following items every month:

- All interior and exterior lights.
- Tires for wear and correct air pressure.
- Engine oil fluid level.
- Windshield washer solvent fluid level.
- Check and drain fuel/water separator.

Six Month Checks

Check each of the following items at least every six months:

- Lap/shoulder belts and seat latches for wear and function.
- Spare tire air pressure.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Parking brake for correct operation.
- Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, air bag, safety belt) for correct operation.
- Coolant system fluid level and correct strength.
- Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
- Clutch fluid level, if equipped.
- Windshield washer spray, wiper operation, clean all wiper blades.
- Lubricate all hinges, latches and outside locks. Inspect for correct operation.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips. Inspect for excessive wear.
- Clean body and door drain holes. Inspect for clogs and obstructions.

Special Checks (Mustang Only)

Carry out the following check every 8,000 km (5,000 miles):

- Adjust clutch by lifting pedal (manual transmission Mustang only, as described in owner guide).

Normal Schedule

The following checks or procedures should be carried out for all cars, minivans, light trucks, sport utilities, vans, 4x4s, natural gas and propane vehicles.

8,000 Km (5,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.

16,000 Km (10,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

24,000 Km (15,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- If equipped, inspect automatic transmission fluid level with dipstick.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.

32,000 Km (20,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

40,000 Km (25,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.
- Drain coalescent fuel filter and replace filter (NGV).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**48,000 Km (30,000 Miles)**

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new engine air filter.
- Install a new fuel filter. (See **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION** below.)
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- Change automatic transmission/transaxle fluid on all vehicles equipped with AX4S, 4F50N, 4R100, 4F27E. Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick on all other vehicles, if equipped.
- If equipped, install new climate controlled seat filters (Navigator, Lincoln LS and Aviator).

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board (CARB) has determined that failure to install a new fuel filter at this interval will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to completion of the vehicle's useful life. It is, however, recommended that maintenance checks be carried out and recorded at the indicated intervals.

Natural gas and propane vehicles also require checking the fuel tanks and installing a new filter (propane vehicles).

56,000 Km (35,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

64,000 Km (40,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

72,000 Km (45,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick, if equipped.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- If filled with green engine coolant, change coolant.

80,000 Km (50,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.
- Drain coalescent fuel filter and replace filter (NGV).

88,000 Km (55,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

96,000 Km (60,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new engine air filter.
- Install a new fuel filter. (See **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION** below.)
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

- Change automatic transmission/transaxle fluid on all vehicles equipped with AX4S, 4F50N, 4R100, 4F27E. Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick on all other vehicles, if equipped.
- If equipped, install new climate controlled seat filters (Navigator, Lincoln LS and Aviator).

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board (CARB) has determined that failure to install a new fuel filter at this interval will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to completion of the vehicle's useful life. It is, however, recommended that maintenance checks be carried out and recorded at the indicated intervals.

Additional checks for natural gas and propane vehicles at this interval include inspecting fuel tanks, as well as draining coalescent fuel filter and installing a new filter.

104,000 Km (65,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

112,000 Km (70,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

120,000 Km (75,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.

Install a new cabin air filter.

Drain coalescent fuel filter and replace filter (V).

• Add green engine coolant, if equipped.

128,000 Km (80,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

136,000 Km (85,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

144,000 Km (90,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new engine air filter.
- Install a new fuel filter.
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- Change automatic transmission/transaxle fluid on all vehicles equipped with AX4S, 4F50N, 4R100, 4F27E. Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick on all other vehicles, if equipped.
- If equipped, install new climate controlled seat filters (Navigator, Lincoln LS and Aviator).

Additional services for natural gas and propane vehicles include inspecting fuel tanks, as well as draining coalescent fuel filter bowl and installing a new filter.

152,000 Km (95,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

160,000 Km (100,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect accessory drive belt(s).
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install new spark plugs.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

- If filled with yellow coolant, change coolant or at 5 years, whichever comes first.
- Install a new PCV on all cars and light trucks under 6,000 pounds Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW).
- Drain coalescent fuel filter and replace filter (NGV).

168,000 Km (105,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level if equipped with dipstick.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine coolant system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- If filled with green engine coolant, change coolant.

176,000 Km (110,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

184,000 Km (115,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

192,000 Km (120,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new engine air filter.

- Install a new fuel filter. (See ADDITIONAL INFORMATION below.)
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- Install new accessory drive belt(s) (Escort).
- Install a new PCV valve on all cars and light trucks over 6,000 Gross Vehicle Weight.
- Change automatic transmission/transaxle fluid on all vehicles equipped with AX4S, 4F50N, 4R100, 4F27E. Inspect automatic transmission fluid level using dipstick on all other vehicles, if equipped.
- Install a new camshaft belt on all 2.0L, 4-cylinder engines (Escort, Focus, ZX2 and Escape).
- If equipped, install new climate controlled seat filters (Navigator, Lincoln LS and Aviator).

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Additional services for natural gas and propane vehicles include inspecting fuel tanks, as well as draining coalescent fuel filter bowl and installing a new filter.

200,000 Km (125,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.
- Drain coalescent fuel filter and replace filter (NGV).

208,000 Km (130,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

216,000 Km (135,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- If equipped, inspect automatic transmission fluid level with dipstick.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new cabin air filter.
- If filled with green engine coolant, change coolant.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**224,000 Km (140,000 Miles)**

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

232,000 Km (145,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect tires for wear. Rotation recommended for optimal tire life.

240,000 Km (150,000 Miles)

- Change engine oil and install a new oil filter.
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines, hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect wheel ends for end play and noise.
- Inspect engine cooling system and hoses.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.
- Inspect steering linkage, suspension and (if equipped) driveshaft and ball joints.
- Rotate tires and inspect for wear.
- Install a new engine air filter.
- Install a new fuel filter. (See ADDITIONAL INFORMATION below.)
- If equipped, install a new cabin air filter.
- If filled with yellow engine coolant, change coolant or at 8 years, whichever comes first.
- Change automatic transmission/transaxle fluid and filter.
- Change rear axle lubricant on all rear wheel (RWD) vehicles.
- Install a new accessory drive belt(s) (if a new belt has not been installed within the last 100,000 miles).
- If equipped, install new climate controlled seat filters (Navigator, Lincoln LS and Aviator).

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board (CARB) has determined that failure to install a new fuel filter at this interval will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to completion of the vehicle's useful life. It is, however recommended that maintenance checks be carried out and recorded at the indicated intervals.

Additional checks for natural gas and propane vehicles include inspecting fuel tanks, as well as draining and installing a new filter.

Exceptions To Normal Schedule**Yellow Coolant**

- Change coolant at 5 years or 160,000 km (100,000 miles) of the vehicle's life, whichever comes first.
- After the initial change, change coolant every 3 years or 80,000 km (50,000 miles) thereafter.

Natural Gas and Propane Vehicles

- Inspect NGV fuel tanks from the date of tank manufacture every 3 years.
- Inspect propane fuel tanks from vehicle build date every 5 years.
- Install new NGV fuel tanks from the date of tank manufacture every 15 years.

Normal Vehicle Axle Maintenance

Rear axles and power take off (PTO) units containing synthetic lubricant and light duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life. These lubricants are not to be checked or changed unless service is required, or if a leak is suspected, or the axle assembly has been submerged in water.

The axle and PTO should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water. Non-synthetic rear axle lubricants should be replaced every 4,800 km (3,000 miles) or three months, whichever occurs first, during extended trailer tow operation above 21°C (70°F) ambient and wide open throttle for extended periods above 45 mph.

The 3,000 mile lube change interval may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear lubricant meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number F1TZ-19B546-B or equivalent. Add four ounces of additive friction modifier C8AZ-19B546-A (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles.

The axle lubricant should be changed anytime an axle has been submerged in water.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Police and Taxi Vehicle Axle Maintenance**

Replace rear axle lubricant every 160,000 km (100,000 miles). Rear axle lubricant change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear lubricant meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces of additive friction modifier C8AZ-19B546-A (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles.

The axle lubricant should be changed anytime an axle has been submerged in water.

Manual Table of Contents

SECTION 100-04 Noise, Vibration and Harshness

CONTENTS	PAGE
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH).....	100-04-1
Acceptable Noise, Vibration and Harshness	100-04-1
Diagnostic Theory.....	100-04-1
Glossary of Terms.....	100-04-1
Tools and Techniques.....	100-04-6
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH).....	100-04-9
1: Customer Interview	100-04-13
2: Pre-Drive Check.....	100-04-13
3: Preparing for the Road Test	100-04-13
4: Verify the Customer Concern	100-04-13
5: Road Test.....	100-04-14
6: Check OASIS/TSBs/Repair History	100-04-16
7: Diagnostic Procedure.....	100-04-16
NVH Condition and Symptom Categories	100-04-17
Symptom Charts.....	100-04-18
Pinpoint Tests.....	100-04-56
Component Tests	100-04-69
GENERAL PROCEDURES	
Brake Disc Machining	100-04-75
Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing	100-04-76
Exhaust System Neutralizing.....	100-04-76
Wheel Bearing Check.....	100-04-77

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH)

Noise is any undesirable sound, usually unpleasant in nature. Vibration is any motion, shaking or trembling, that can be felt or seen when an object moves back and forth or up and down. Harshness is a ride quality issue where the vehicle's response to the road transmits sharply to the customer. Harshness normally describes a firmer than usual response from the suspension system. Noise, vibration and harshness (NVH) is a term used to describe these conditions, which result in varying degrees of dissatisfaction. Although, a certain level of NVH caused by road and environmental conditions is normal. This section is designed to aid in the diagnosis, testing and repair of NVH concerns.

Acceptable Noise, Vibration and Harshness

All internal combustion engines and drivelines produce some noise and vibration; operating in a real world environment adds noise that is not subject to control. Vibration isolators, mufflers and dampers reduce these to acceptable levels. A driver who is unfamiliar with a vehicle can think that some sounds are abnormal when actually the sounds are normal for the vehicle type. For example, Traction-Lok® differentials produce a slight noise on slow turns after extended highway driving. This is acceptable and has no detrimental effect on the locking axle function. As a technician, it is very important to be familiar with vehicle features and know how they relate to NVH concerns and their diagnosis. For example, if the vehicle has automatic overdrive, it is important to test drive the vehicle both in and out of overdrive mode.

Diagnostic Theory

The shortest route to an accurate diagnosis results from:

- system knowledge, including comparison with a known good system.
- system history, including repair history and usage patterns.
- condition history, especially any relationship to repairs or sudden change.
- knowledge of possible sources.
- using a systematic diagnostic method that divides the system into related areas.

The diagnosis and correction of noise, vibration and harshness concerns requires:

- a road or system test to determine the exact nature of the concern.
- an analysis of the possible causes.
- testing to verify the cause.
- repairing any concerns found.
- a road test or system test to make sure the concern has been corrected or brought back to within an acceptable range.

Glossary of Terms

Acceleration-Light

An increase in speed at less than half throttle.

Acceleration-Medium

An increase in speed at half to nearly full throttle, such as 0-97 km/h (0-60 mph) in approximately 30 seconds.

Acceleration-Heavy

An increase in speed at one-half to full throttle, such as 0-97 km/h (0-60 mph) in approximately 20 seconds.

Ambient Temperature

The surrounding or prevailing temperature.

Amplitude

The quantity or amount of energy produced by a vibrating component (G force). An extreme vibration has a high amplitude. A mild vibration has a low amplitude.

Backlash

Gear teeth clearance.

Boom

Low frequency or low pitched noise often accompanied by a vibration. Also refer to Drumming.

Bound Up

An overstressed isolation (rubber) mount that transmits vibration/noise instead of absorbing it.

Brakes Applied

When the service brakes are applied with enough force to hold the vehicle against movement with the transmission in gear.

Buffet/Buffering

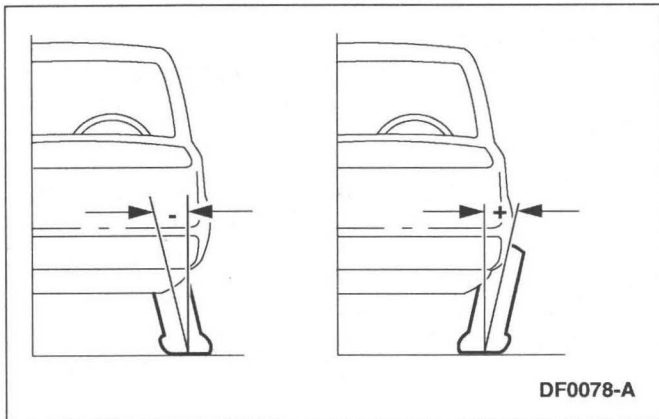
Strong noise fluctuations (less than 1000 Hz) caused by gusting winds. An example would be wind gusts against the side glass.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Buzz**

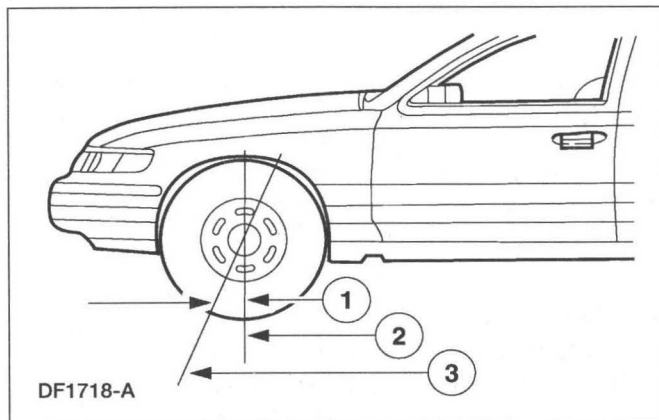
A low-pitched sound like (200-5000 Hz) that from a bee. Often a metallic or hard plastic humming sound. Also describes a high frequency (200-800 Hz) vibration. Vibration feels similar to an electric razor.

Camber

The angle of the wheel in relation to the true vertical as measured looking from the front of the vehicle. Camber is positive when the wheel angle is offset so that the top of the wheel is positioned away from the vehicle.

**Caster**

The angle of the steering knuckle in relation to the true vertical as measured looking from the side of the vehicle.



Item	Description
1	Positive caster
2	True vertical
3	Steering axis

Chatter

A pronounced series of rapidly repeating rattling or clicking sounds.

Chirp

A short-duration high-pitched noise associated with a slipping drive belt.

Chuckle

A repetitious low-pitched sound. A loud chuckle is usually described as a knock.

Click

A sharp, brief, non-resonant sound, similar to actuating a ball point pen.

Clonk

A hydraulic knocking sound. Sound occurs with air pockets in a hydraulic system. Also described as hammering.

Clunk/Driveline Clunk

A heavy or dull, short-duration, low-frequency sound. Occurs mostly on a vehicle that is accelerating or decelerating abruptly. Also described as a thunk.

Coast/Deceleration

Releasing the accelerator pedal at cruise, allowing the engine to reduce vehicle speed without applying the brakes.

Coast/Neutral Coast

Placing the transmission range selector in NEUTRAL (N) or depressing the clutch pedal while at cruise.

Constant Velocity (CV) Joint

A joint used to absorb vibrations caused by driving power being transmitted at an angle.

Controlled Rear Suspension Height

The height at which a designated vehicle element must be when driveline angle measurements are made.

Coupling Shaft

The shaft between the transfer case and the front drive axle or, in a two-piece rear driveshaft, the front section.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**CPS**

Cycles per second. Same as hertz (Hz).

Cracks

A mid-frequency sound, related to squeak. Sound varies with temperature conditions.

Creak

A metallic squeak.

Cruise

Constant speed on level ground; neither accelerating nor decelerating.

Cycle

The process of a vibrating component going through a complete range of motion and returning to the starting point.

Decibel

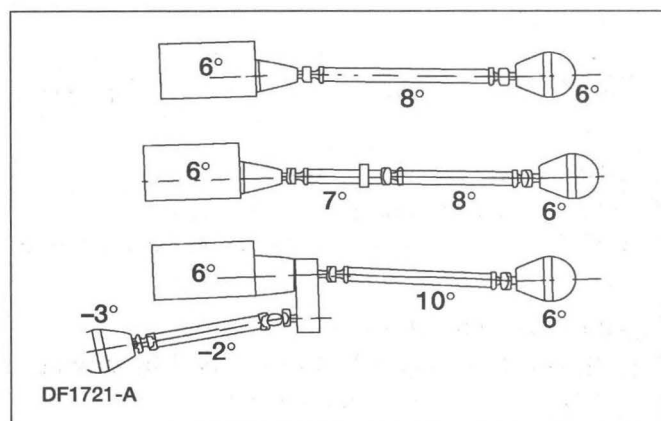
A unit of measurement, referring to sound pressure level, abbreviated dB.

Drive Engine Run-Up (DERU) Test

The operation of the engine through the normal rpm range with the vehicle standing still, the brakes applied and the transmission engaged. This test is used for noise and vibration checks.

Driveline Angles

The differences of alignment between the transmission output shaft, the driveshaft, and the rear axle pinion centerline.

**Driveshaft**

The shaft that transmits power to the rear axle input shaft (pinion shaft). In a two-piece driveshaft, it is the rearmost shaft.

Drivetrain

All power transmitting components from the engine to the wheels; includes the clutch or torque converter, the transmission, the transfer case, the driveshaft, and the front or rear drive axle.

Drivetrain Damper

A weight attached to the engine, the transmission, the transfer case, or the axle. It is tuned by weight and placement to absorb vibration.

Drone

A low frequency (100-200 Hz) steady sound, like a freezer compressor. Also described as a moan.

Drumming

A cycling, low-frequency (20-100 Hz), rhythmic noise often accompanied by a sensation of pressure on the ear drums. Also described as a low rumble, boom, or rolling thunder.

Dynamic Balance

The equal distribution of weight on each side of the centerline, so that when the wheel and tire assembly spins, there is no tendency for the assembly to move from side-to-side (wobble). Dynamically unbalanced wheel and tire assemblies can cause wheel shimmy.

Engine Imbalance

A condition in which an engine's center mass is not concentric to the rotation center, causing excessive motion.

Engine Misfire

When combustion in one or more cylinders does not occur or occurs at the wrong time.

Engine Shake

An exaggerated engine movement or vibration that directly increases in frequency as the engine speed increases. It is caused by non-equal distribution of mass in the rotating or reciprocating components.

Flexible Coupling

A flexible joint.

Float

A drive mode on the dividing line between cruise and coast where the throttle setting matches the engine speed with the road speed.

Flutter

Mid to high (100-2000 Hz) intermittent sound due to air flow. Similar to a flag flapping in the wind.

Frequency

The rate at which a cycle occurs within a given time.

Gravelly Feel

A grinding or growl in a component, similar to the feel experienced when driving on gravel.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Grind

An abrasive sound, similar to using a grinding wheel, or rubbing sand paper against wood.

Hiss

Steady high frequency (200-800 Hz) noise. Vacuum leak sound.

Hoot

A steady low frequency tone (50-500 Hz), sounds like blowing over a long neck bottle.

Howl

A mid-range frequency (200-800 Hz) noise between drumming and whine. Also described as a hum.

Hum

Mid-frequency (200-800 Hz) steady sound, like a small fan motor. Also described as a howl.

Hz

Hertz; a frequency measured in cycles per second.

Imbalance

Out of balance; heavier on one side than the other. In a rotating component, imbalance often causes vibration.

Inboard

Toward the centerline of the vehicle.

Intensity

The physical quality of sound that relates to the strength of the vibration (measured in decibels). The higher the sound's amplitude, the higher the intensity and vice versa.

Isolate

To separate the influence of one component to another.

Knock

A heavy, loud, repetitious sound, like a knock on the door.

Moan

A constant, low-frequency (100-200 Hz) tone. Also described as a hum.

Neutral Engine Run-Up (NERU) Test

The operation of the engine through the normal rpm range with the vehicle standing still and the transmission disengaged. This test is used to identify engine related vibrations.

Neutralize/Normalize

To return to an unstressed position. Used to describe mounts. Refer to Bound Up.

Outboard

Away from the centerline of the vehicle.

Ping

A short duration, high-frequency sound, which has a slight echo.

Pinion Shaft

The input shaft in a driving axle that is usually a part of the smaller driving or input hypoid gear of a ring and pinion gearset.

Pitch

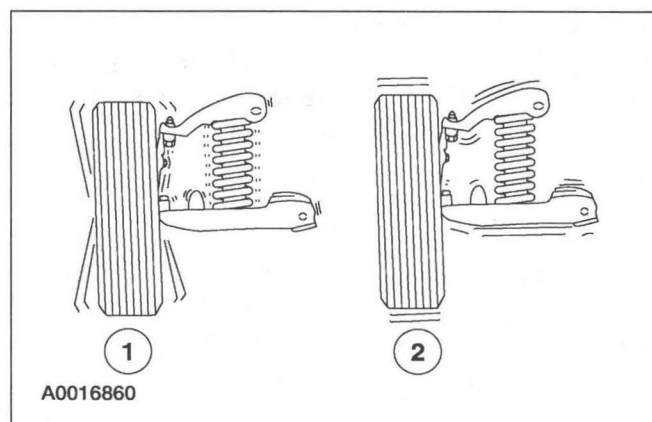
The physical quality of sound that relates to its frequency. Pitch increases as frequency increases and vice versa.

Pumping Feel

A slow, pulsing movement.

Radial/Lateral

Radial is in the plane of rotation; lateral is at 90 degrees to the plane of rotation.



Item	Description
1	Lateral runout
2	Radial runout

Rattle

A random and momentary or short duration noise.

Ring Gear

The large, circular, driven gear in a ring and pinion gearset.

Road Test

The operation of the vehicle under conditions intended to produce the concern under investigation.

Roughness

A medium-frequency vibration. A slightly higher frequency (20 to 50 Hz) than a shake. This type of vibration is usually related to drivetrain components.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Runout**

Lateral runout means measuring the movement or “wobble” of a wheel or tire at the sidewall. Radial runout means measuring the out-of-round at the tread surface.

Rustling

Intermittent sound of varying frequency (100-2000 Hz), sounds similar to shuffling through leaves.

Shake

A low-frequency vibration (5-20 Hz), usually with visible component movement. Usually relates to tires, wheels, brake drums or brake discs if it is vehicle speed sensitive, or engine if it is engine speed sensitive. Also referred to as a shimmy or wobble.

Shimmy

An abnormal vibration or wobbling, felt as a side-to-side motion of the steering wheel in the driveshaft rotation. Also described as waddle.

Shudder

A low-frequency vibration that is felt through the steering wheel or seat during light brake application.

Slap

A resonance from flat surfaces, such as safety belt webbing or door trim panels.

Slip Yoke/Slip Spline

The driveshaft coupling that allows length changes to occur while the suspension articulates and while the driveshaft rotates.

Squeak

A high-pitched transient sound, similar to rubbing fingers against a clean window.

Squeal

A long-duration, high-pitched noise.

Static Balance

The equal distribution of weight around the wheel. Statically unbalanced wheel and tire assemblies can cause a bouncing action called wheel tramp. This condition will eventually cause uneven tire wear.

Tap

A light, rhythmic, or intermittent hammering sound, similar to tapping a pencil on a table edge.

Thump

A dull beat caused by two items striking together.

Tick

A rhythmic tap, similar to a clock noise.

Tip-In Moan

A light moaning noise heard during light vehicle acceleration, usually between 40-100 km/h (25-65 mph).

TIR

The acronym for total indicated runout is TIR.

Tire Deflection

The change in tire diameter in the area where the tire contacts the ground.

Tire Flat Spots

A condition commonly caused by letting the vehicle stand while the tires cool off. This condition can be corrected by driving the vehicle until the tires are warm. Also, irregular tire wear patterns in the tire tread resulting from wheel-locked skids.

Tire Force Vibration

A tire vibration caused by variations in the construction of the tire that is noticeable when the tire rotates against the pavement. This condition can be present on perfectly round tires because of variations in the inner tire construction. This condition can occur at wheel rotation frequency or twice rotation frequency.

Transient

A noise or vibration that is momentary, a short duration.

Two-Plane Balance

Radial and lateral balance.

Vibration

Any motion, shaking or trembling, that can be felt or seen when an object moves back and forth or up and down.

Whine

A constant, high-pitched noise. Also described as a screech.

Whistle

High-pitched noise (above 500 Hz) with a very narrow frequency band. Examples of whistle noises are a turbocharger or airflow around an antenna.

Wind Noise

Any noise caused by air movement in, out or around the vehicle.

WOT

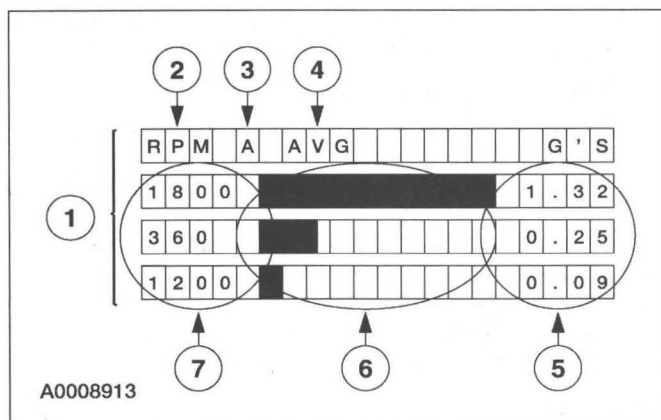
The acronym for wide open throttle is WOT.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Tools and Techniques

Electronic Vibration Analyzer (EVA)

The EVA is a hand-held electronic diagnostic tool which will assist in locating the source of unacceptable vibrations. The vibration sensor can be remotely mounted anywhere in the vehicle for testing purposes. The unit displays the three most common vibration frequencies and their corresponding amplitudes simultaneously. A bar graph provides a visual reference of the relative signal strength (amplitude) of each vibration being displayed and its relative G force. The keypad is arranged to make the EVA simple to program and use. Some of the functions include the ability to average readings as well as record, play back and freeze readings. The EVA has a strobe balancing function that can be used to detect imbalance on rotating components such as a driveshaft or engine accessories.



Item	Description
1	EVA screen
2	Frequency mode displayed in rpm or Hz
3	Active sensor input (A or B)
4	Current active mode
5	G force indicators or the strongest frequencies in descending strength of each vibration
6	Strength of each vibration
7	Frequency in rpm/Hz of each vibration

The EVA allows for a systematic collection of information that is necessary to accurately diagnose and repair NVH problems. For the best results, carry out the test as follows:

- Test drive the vehicle with the vibration sensor inside the vehicle.
- Place the sensor in the vehicle according to feel.
 - If the condition is felt through the steering wheel, the source is most likely in the front of the vehicle.
 - A vibration that is felt in the seat or floor only will most likely be found in the driveline, drive axle or rear wheels and tires.
- Record the readings. Also note when the condition begins, when it reaches maximum intensity, and if it tends to diminish above/below a certain speed.
 - Frequencies should be read in the “average” mode.
 - Frequencies have a range of plus or minus 2. A reading of 10 Hz can be displayed as an 8 Hz through 12 Hz.
- Place the vibration sensor on or near the suspect area outside the vehicle.
- Continue the road test, driving the vehicle at the speed the symptom occurs, and take another reading.
- Compare the readings.
 - A match in frequency indicates the problem component or area.
 - An unmatched test could indicate the concern is caused by the engine, torque converter, or engine accessory. Use the EVA in the rpm mode and check if concern is rpm related.
 - Example: A vibration is felt in the seat. Place the sensor on the console. Record the readings. Place the vibration sensor on the rear axle. Compare the readings. If the frequencies are the same, the axle is the problem component.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Vibrate Software®**

Vibrate Software® (Rotunda tool number 215-00003) is a diagnostic aid which will assist in pinpointing the source of unacceptable vibrations. The engine's crankshaft is the point of reference for vibration diagnosis. Every rotating component will have an angular velocity that is faster, slower, or the same as the engine's crankshaft. Vibrate Software® calculates the angular velocity of each component and graphically represents these velocities on a computer screen and on a printed vibration worksheet. The following steps outline how Vibrate Software® helps diagnose a vibration concern:

- Enter the vehicle information. Vibrate will do all the calculations and display a graph showing tire, driveshaft and engine vibrations.
- Print a Vibration Worksheet graph. The printed graph is to be used during the road test.
- Road test the vehicle at the speed where the vibration is most noticeable. Record the vibration frequency (rpm) and the engine rpm on the worksheet graph. The point on the graph where the vibration frequency (rpm) reading and the engine rpm reading intersect indicates the specific component group causing the concern.
 - An EVA or equivalent tool capable of measuring vibration frequency and engine rpm will be needed.
- Provide pictures of diagnostic procedures to aid in testing components.

Combination EngineEAR/ChassisEAR

An electronic listening device used to quickly identify noise and the location under the chassis while the vehicle is being road tested. The ChassisEARs can identify the noise and location of damaged/worn wheel bearings, CV joints, brakes, springs, axle bearings or driveshaft carrier bearings.

EngineEAR Basic Unit

An electronic listening device used to detect even the faintest noises. The EngineEARs can detect the noise of damaged/worn bearings in generators, water pumps, A/C compressors and power steering pumps. They are also used to identify noisy lifters, exhaust manifold leaks, chipped gear teeth and for detecting wind noise. The EngineEAR has a sensing tip, amplifier, and headphones. The directional sensing tip is used to listen to the various components. Point the sensing tip at the suspect component and adjust the volume with the amplifier. Placing the tip in direct contact with a component will reveal structure-borne noise and vibrations, generated by or passing through, the component. Various volume levels can reveal different sounds.

Ultrasonic Leak Detector

The Ultrasonic Leak Detector is used to detect wind noises caused by leaks and gaps in areas where there is weather-stripping or other sealing material. It is also used to identify A/C leaks, vacuum leaks and evaporative emission noises. The Ultrasonic Leak Detector includes a multi-directional transmitter (operating in the ultrasonic range) and a hand-held detector. The transmitter is placed inside the vehicle. On the outside of the vehicle, the hand-held detector is used to sweep the area of the suspected leak. As the source of the leak is approached, a beeping sound is produced which increases in both speed and frequency.

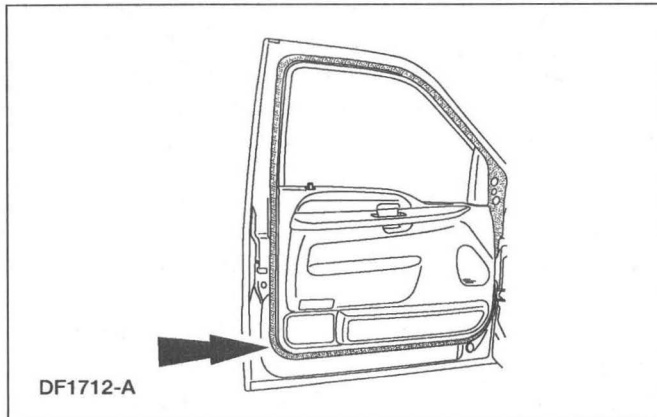
Squeak and Rattle Repair Kit

The squeak and rattle repair kit (Rotunda tool number 164-R4900) contains lubricants and self-adhesive materials that can be used to eliminate interior and exterior squeaks and rattles. The kit consists of the following materials:

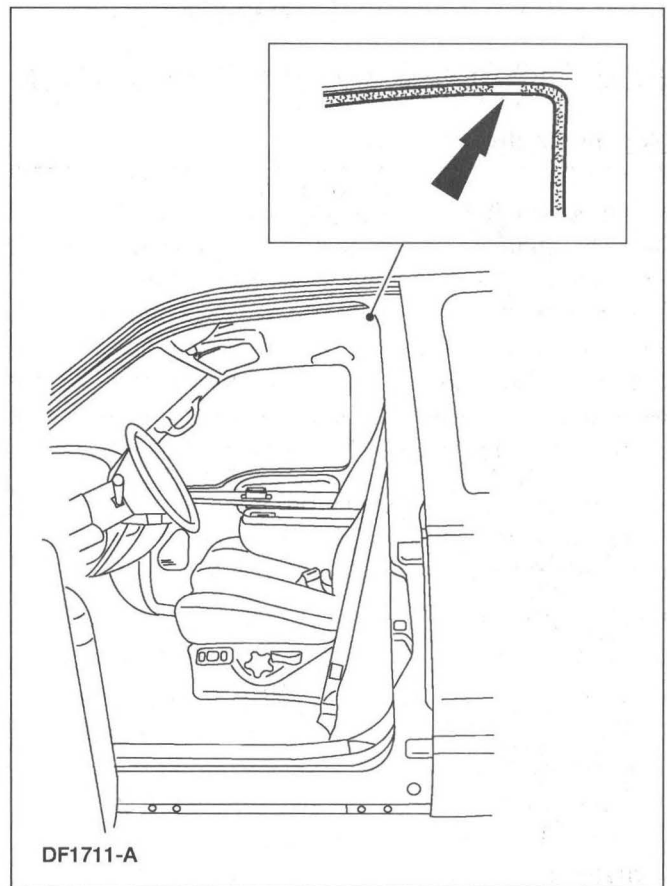
- PVC (soft foam) tape
- Urethane (hard foam) tape
- Flocked (black fuzzy) tape
- UHMW (frosted) tape
- Squeak and rattle oil tube
- Squeak and rattle grease tube

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Tracing Powder**

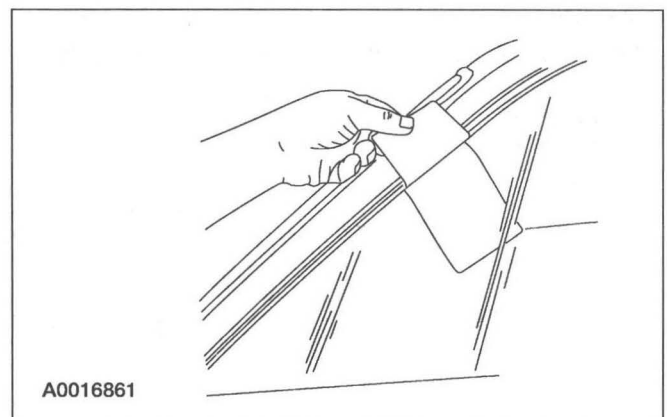
Tracing powder is used to check both the uniformity of contact and the tension of a seal against its sealing surface. These tests are usually done when a suspected air leak/noise appears to originate from the seal area or during the alignment and adjustment of a component to a weatherstrip. Tracing powder can be ordered from Crest Industries as ATR Leak Trace. Carry out the tracing powder test as follows:



- Clean the weatherstrip.
- Spray the tracing powder on the mating surface only.
- Close the door completely. Do not slam the door.
- Open the door. An imprint is made where the weatherstrip contacted the mating surface seal. Gaps or a faint imprint will show where there is poor contact with the weatherstrip.

**Index Card**

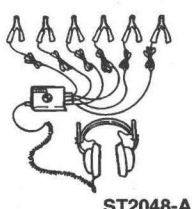

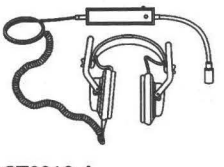

Place an index card or a piece of paper between the weatherstrip and the sealing surface, then close the door. Slowly withdraw the index card or paper after the door is closed and check the amount of pressure on the weatherstrip. There should be a medium amount of resistance as it is withdrawn. Continue around the entire seal area. If there is little or no resistance, this indicates insufficient contact to form a good seal. At these points, the door, the glass, or the weatherstrip is out of alignment.



DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH)


Special Tool(s)

 ST2048-A	ChassisEAR 107-R2102 or equivalent
 ST2311-A	Electronic Vibration Analyzer 100-F027 (014-00344) or equivalent
 ST2312-A	EngineEAR 107-R2100 or equivalent
 ST2314-A	Ultrasonic Leak Detector 134-R0135 or equivalent

To assist the service advisor and the technician, a Write-up Job Aid and an NVH Diagnostic Guide are included with this material. The Write-up Job Aid serves as a place to record all important symptom information. The NVH Diagnostic Guide serves as a place to record information reported on the Write-up Job Aid as well as data from the testing to be carried out.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

To begin a successful diagnosis, fill out the NVH Diagnostic Guide, record the reported findings, then proceed to each of the numbered process steps to complete the diagnosis.




"WRITE-UP" JOB AID


REPAIR ORDER # _____
 CUSTOMER CONCERN # _____


SPECIFIC SENSE IDENTIFICATION AND LOCATION ON VEHICLE OF CUSTOMER SYMPTOM(S)


INSTRUCTIONS: Check below sense affected and location of concern on the generic vehicle illustration (darken the vehicle area). Plus circle appropriate responses to the right.

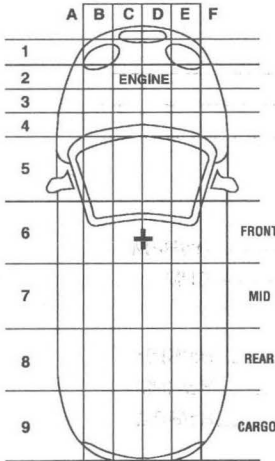
NOTE: Shaded backgrounds indicate caution areas. Selection of two or more caution areas "flag" difficult repairs. In general, shaded areas are the more difficult to verify and repair, and require all applicable columns to be completed.


SEE
 YES ☐


FEEL
 YES ☐


HEAR
 YES ☐


SMELL
 YES ☐



VEHICLE SYMPTOM AREA	HOW OFTEN?	VEHICLE OPERATING MODE	VEHICLE CONDITIONS	VEHICLE SPEED(mph)	WHEN VEHICLE IS?	AMBIENT CONDITION
Front of Vehicle	Always	Start Up	Accessories On (define below)	0	Turning Left	_____° Below Zero
Engine Compartment	Daily [A.M.] [P.M.]	Idle	Windows Open	1-9	Turning Right	Below Freezing (0°-19°)
Dash	Conditional	Gear Selection	4x4	10-19	Over Bumps	Below Freezing (20°-32°)
Steering Wheel	Weekly	Accel Light	Hauling	20-29	Up Hills	33°-49°
Accelerator Pedal	Monthly	Accel Moderate	Towing	30-39	Down Hills	50°-69°
Brake Pedal	Intermittent	Accel Heavy	Snow Plowing	40-49	Shifting	70°-89°
Clutch Pedal	Unknown	Steady Speed	Other (define below)	50-59	Parked	90°+
Seat		Deceleration		60-69	In Traffic	Sunny
Rear of Vehicle		Neutral		70+		Dry
Top of Vehicle		Reverse		ENGINE		Windy
Floor Pan		Stopping/Braking		TEMP		Wet/Humid
Under Vehicle				Cold		Rain
Other (define below)				Normal		Snow
				Hot		Ice

DEALER VERIFICATION

	YES	NO
SERVICE ADVISOR	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
SHOP FOREMAN	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
SERVICE MANAGER	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
QC MANAGER	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
TECHNICIAN	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VERIFIED WITH CUSTOMER	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

WHAT THE CUSTOMER SAID

OASIS SYMPTOM CODE(S)

VIN NUMBER

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

A0017007

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**NVH DIAGNOSTIC GUIDE**

Dealer: _____ Date: _____

P.A. Code: _____ Order No. _____ Technician: _____

Owner's Name: _____ Address: _____

Phone No. Home: _____ Work: _____

Vehicle Make: _____ Model: _____ Year: _____

VIN: _____ Mileage: _____ Engine: _____ Trans: _____ Axle: _____

OWNER'S DESCRIPTION OF COMPLAINT:Did Condition Exist When Vehicle Was New? **Yes / No** (circle one)How Did Condition Begin? Gradually ☐ Suddenly ☐

At What Mileage Did It Occur Or Begin Occuring? _____

Which Driving Conditions Affect The Vehicle?

Light Accel <input type="checkbox"/>	Closed Throttle Decel <input type="checkbox"/>	Brakes Applied/Released <input type="checkbox"/>
Medium Accel <input type="checkbox"/>	Coast (Float) <input type="checkbox"/>	Driving The Vehicle: Straight <input type="checkbox"/>
Heavy Accel <input type="checkbox"/>	Constant Speed <input type="checkbox"/>	Cornering <input type="checkbox"/>

Is Vibration Noticed? If So, Where:

Seat ☐ Steering Wheel ☐ Instrument Panel ☐ Floor ☐ Body Panels ☐ Ft/Rr of Vehicle ☐Is There Sound Or Sensation Of Sound? **Yes / No** (circle one)

If So, Describe The Sound :

Boom <input type="checkbox"/>	Hum <input type="checkbox"/>	Whine <input type="checkbox"/>	Growl <input type="checkbox"/>	Other: _____
Drone <input type="checkbox"/>	Tip-In-Moan <input type="checkbox"/>	Squeak <input type="checkbox"/>	Rattle <input type="checkbox"/>	

PREDRIVE CHECKS

Tire Condition/Pressure: _____

Vehicle Body Damage? _____

Other: _____

ROAD TEST:

Vibration/Noise Occurs:

Vehicle Speed _____	Accel _____	Vibration Frequency _____	Hz/RPM
Gear Range _____	Decel/Coast _____	Engine Speed _____	RPM

ENGINE RUN-UP TESTSNeutral Engine Run-Up (NERU) **Yes / No** Engine RPM _____ Vibration/Frequency _____ Hz/RPMDrive Engine Run-Up (DERU) **Yes / No** Engine RPM _____ Vibration/Frequency _____ Hz/RPMDrivetrain Run-Up (DTRU) **Yes / No** Engine RPM _____ Vibration/Frequency _____ Hz/RPM

Indicate Suspected Area of Concern:

Tire/Wheel/Brakes <input type="checkbox"/>	Engine/Accessory <input type="checkbox"/>	Rear <input type="checkbox"/>
Driveline/Axle <input type="checkbox"/>	Susp/Steering <input type="checkbox"/>	Right <input type="checkbox"/>
Body <input type="checkbox"/>	Front <input type="checkbox"/>	Left <input type="checkbox"/>
Other _____		

Equipment Used:

Reed Tachometer <input type="checkbox"/>	Electronic Noise Detector <input type="checkbox"/>	Tape <input type="checkbox"/>
Engine Tachometer <input type="checkbox"/>	Ultrasonic Leak Detector <input type="checkbox"/>	Other _____

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**WHEEL/TIRE/BRAKES CHECK:**Balance Check **Yes / No**

Maximum Runout Allowed:

Wheel: Radial _____ Lateral _____

Tire: Radial _____ Lateral _____

Measured Runout:

Tire/Wheel Radial: LF _____ LR _____ RF _____ RR _____

Lateral: LF _____ LR _____ RF _____ RR _____

Wheel Only Radial: LF _____ LR _____ RF _____ RR _____

Lateral: LF _____ LR _____ RF _____ RR _____

SUSPENSION INSPECTION:Can Cause: Shimmy ☐ Clunk ☐ Squeak ☐ Harshness ☐Suspension Bushings: Loose ☐ Worn ☐ Missing ☐ OK ☐Front Upper Control Arm ☐ Stabilizer (sway bar) ☐ Rear Lower Control Arm ☐Front Lower Control Arm ☐ Rear Upper Control Arm ☐ Rear Upper Control Arm ☐

Other _____

Suspension/Steering Components:

Loose Worn Missing OK

Ball Joints ☐ Idler Arm ☐ Pitman Arm ☐Shock Absorbers F/R ☐ Center Link ☐ Steering Gear ☐Springs F/R ☐ Tie Rod Ends/Sleeve ☐ Steering Coupler ☐**DRIVESHAFT CONDITION:**Noise ☐Vibration ☐Balance Weights Missing/Other Visual Defects? **Yes / No**

Maximum Allowable Runout: _____

Actual Runout: Front _____ Middle _____ Rear _____

Two-Piece Driveshaft Runout: Front _____ Rear _____

Middle Support Bearing: Loose ☐ Damaged ☐ Worn ☐ Other _____

Suspect Driveshaft Balanced?

Yes / No**Pinion Angle:**

Engine Height: Specification _____ Actual _____

Pinion Angle: Specification _____ Actual _____

Driveline Angle - Truck:

Specification _____ Actual _____

ENGINE/ACCESSORY CHECK:

Visual Inspection for Damage or Grounded Condition:

Powertrain Mounts ☐ Fuel Lines ☐ A/C Lines ☐ Power Steering/Cooler Lines ☐Air Intake ☐ Accessories ☐ Exhaust ☐ Radiator/Condensor ☐**BODY (NOISE/RATTLE)**Indicate Suspected Area of Concern: Doors ☐ Windows ☐ Dash Panel ☐ Other _____

Tests Used to Isolate

NVH Concern: Vacuum/Leak Detector ☐ Ultrasonic Leak Detector ☐ Tracing Powder ☐Electronic Noise Detector ☐ Other _____**ROAD/ENGINE RUN-UP TESTS:**

Improved?

Yes / No

Vehicle Acceptable?

Yes / No

Comments: _____

A0008914

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

1: Customer Interview

The diagnostic process starts with the customer interview. The service advisor must obtain as much information as possible about the problem and take a test drive with the customer. There are many ways a customer will describe NVH concerns and this will help minimize confusion arising from descriptive language differences. It is important that the concern is correctly interpreted and the customer descriptions are recorded. During the interview, ask the following questions:

- When was it first noticed?
- Did it appear suddenly or gradually?
- Did any abnormal occurrence coincide with or proceed its appearance?

Use the information gained from the customer to accurately begin the diagnostic process.

2: Pre-Drive Check

It is important to do a pre-drive check before road testing the vehicle. A pre-drive check verifies that the vehicle is relatively safe to drive and eliminates any obvious faults on the vehicle.

The pre-drive check consists of a brief visual inspection. During this brief inspection, take note of anything that will compromise safety during the road test and make those repairs/adjustments before taking the vehicle on the road.

3: Preparing for the Road Test

Observe the following when preparing for the road test:

- Review the information recorded on the NVH Diagnostic Guide. It is important to know the specific concern the customer has with the vehicle.
- Do not be misled by the reported location of the noise/vibration. The cause can actually be some distance away.

- Remember that the vibrating source component (originator) may only generate a small vibration. This small vibration can in turn cause a larger vibration/noise to emanate from another receiving component (reactor), due to contact with other components (transfer path).
- Conduct the road test on a quiet street where it is safe to duplicate the vibration/noise. The ideal testing route is an open, low-traffic area where it is possible to operate the vehicle at the speed in which the condition occurs.
- If possible, lower the radio antenna in order to minimize turbulence. Identify anything that could potentially make noise or be a source of wind noise. Inspect the vehicle for add-on items that create vibration/noise. Turn off the radio and the heating and cooling system blower.
- The engine speed is an important factor in arriving at a final conclusion. Therefore, connect an accurate tachometer to the engine, even if the vehicle has a tachometer. Use a tachometer that has clearly defined increments of less than 50 rpm. This ensures an exact engine speed reading.

4: Verify the Customer Concern

Verify the customer concern by carrying out a road test, an engine run-up test, or both.

The decision to carry out a road test, an engine run-up test, or both depends on the type of NVH concern. A road test may be necessary if the symptom relates to the suspension system or is sensitive to torque. A drive engine run-up (DERU) or a neutral engine run-up (NERU) test identifies noises and vibrations relating to engine and drivetrain rpm. Remember, a condition will not always be identifiable by carrying out these tests, however, they will eliminate many possibilities if carried out correctly.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

5: Road Test

NOTE: It may be necessary to have the customer ride along or drive the vehicle to point out the concern. During the road test, take into consideration the customer's driving habits and the driving conditions. The customer's concern just may be an acceptable operating condition for that vehicle.

The following is a brief overview of each test in the order in which it appears. A review of this information helps to quickly identify the most appropriate process necessary to make a successful diagnosis. After reviewing this information, select and carry out the appropriate test(s), proceeding to the next step of this process.

- The Slow Acceleration Test is normally the first test to carry out when identifying an NVH concern, especially when a road test with the customer is not possible.
- The Heavy Acceleration Test helps to determine if the concern is torque-related.
- The Neutral Coast Down Speed Test helps to determine if the concern is vehicle speed-related.
- The Downshift Speed Test helps to determine if the concern is engine speed-related.
- The Steering Input Test helps to determine how the wheel bearings and other suspension components contribute to a vehicle speed-related concern.
- The Brake Test helps to identify vibrations or noise that are brake related.
- The Road Test Over Bumps helps isolate a noise that occurs when driving over a rough or bumpy surface.
- The Engine Run-Up Tests consist of the Neutral Run-Up Test and the Engine Load Test. These tests help to determine if the concern is engine speed-related.
- The Neutral Run-Up Test is used as a follow-up test to the Downshift Speed Test when the concern occurs at idle.
- The Engine Load Test helps to identify vibration/noise sensitive to engine load or torque. It also helps to reproduce engine speed-related concerns that cannot be duplicated when carrying out the Neutral Run-Up Test or the Neutral Coast Down Test.
- The Engine Accessory Test helps to locate faulty belts and accessories that cause engine speed-related concerns.
- The Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure helps to identify concerns occurring during initial start-up and when an extended time lapse occurs between vehicle usage.

Slow Acceleration Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Slowly accelerate to the speed where the reported concern occurs. Note the vehicle speed, the engine rpm and, if possible, determine the vibration frequency.
- Attempt to identify from what part of the vehicle the concern is coming.
- Attempt to identify the source of the concern.
- Proceed as necessary.

Heavy Acceleration Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Accelerate hard from 0-64 km/h (0-40 mph).
- Decelerate in a lower gear.
- The concern is torque related if duplicated while carrying out this test.
- Proceed as necessary.

Neutral Coast Down Speed Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Drive at a higher rate of speed than where the concern occurred when carrying out the Slow Acceleration Test.
- Place the transmission in NEUTRAL and coast down past the speed where the concern occurs.
- The concern is vehicle speed-related if duplicated while carrying out this test. This eliminates the engine and the torque converter as sources.
- If the concern was not duplicated while carrying out this test, carry out the Downshift Speed Test to verify if the concern is engine speed related.
- Proceed as necessary.

Downshift Speed Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Shift into a lower gear than the gear used when carrying out the Slow Acceleration Test.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

- Drive at the engine rpm where the concern occurs.
- The concern is engine speed related if duplicated while carrying out this test. This eliminates the tires, wheels, brakes and the suspension components as sources.
- If necessary, repeat this test using other gears and NEUTRAL to verify the results.
- Proceed as necessary.

Steering Input Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Drive at the speed where the concern occurs, while making sweeping turns in both directions.
- If the concern goes away or gets worse, the wheel bearings, hubs, U-joints (contained in the axles of 4WD applications), and tire tread wear are all possible sources.
- Proceed as necessary.

Brake Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Warm the brakes by slowing the vehicle a few times from 80-32 km/h (50-20 mph) using light braking applications. At highway speeds of 89-97 km/h (50-60 mph), apply the brake using a light pedal force.
- Accelerate to 89-97 km/h (55-60 mph).
- Lightly apply the brakes and slow the vehicle to 30 km/h (20 mph).
- A brake vibration noise can be felt in the steering wheel, seat or brake pedal. A brake noise can be heard upon brake application and diminish when the brake is released.

Road Test Over Bumps

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Drive the vehicle over a bump or rough surface one wheel at a time to determine if the noise is coming from the front or the back and the left or the right side of the vehicle.
- Proceed as necessary.


Neutral Engine Run-Up (NERU) Test


To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- Install a tachometer.
- Increase the engine rpm up from an idle to approximately 4000 rpm while in PARK on front wheel drive vehicles with automatic transmissions, or NEUTRAL for all other vehicles. Note the engine rpm and, if possible, determine the vibration frequency.
- Attempt to identify what part of the vehicle the concern is coming from.
- Attempt to identify the source of the concern.
- Proceed as necessary.

Drive Engine Run-Up (DERU) Load Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

-  **WARNING: Block the front and rear wheels, and apply the parking brake and the service brake, or injury to personnel can result.**

 **CAUTION: Do not carry out the Engine Load Test for more than five seconds or damage to the transmission or transaxle can result.**
Block the front and rear wheels.

- Apply the parking brake and the service brake.
- Install a tachometer.
- Shift the transmission into DRIVE, and increase and decrease the engine rpm between an idle to approximately 2000 rpm. Note the engine rpm and, if possible, determine the vibration frequency.
- Repeat the test in REVERSE.
- If the vibration/noise is duplicated when carrying out this test, inspect the engine and transmission or transaxle mounts.
- If the concern is definitely engine speed-related, carry out the Engine Accessory Test to narrow down the source.
- Proceed as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Engine Accessory Test

To carry out this test, proceed as follows:

- **⚠ WARNING:** Block the front and rear wheels, and apply the parking brake and the service brake, or injury to personnel can result.

⚠ CAUTION: Limit engine running time to one minute or less with belts removed or serious engine damage will result.

NOTE: A serpentine drive belt decreases the usefulness of this test. In these cases, use a electronic vibration analyzer, such as the electronic vibration analyzer (EVA), to pinpoint accessory vibrations. An electronic listening device, such as an EngineEAR, will also help to identify noises from specific accessories.

Remove the accessory drive belts.

- Increase the engine rpm to where the concern occurs.
- If the vibration/noise is duplicated when carrying out this test, the belts and accessories are not sources.
- If the vibration/noise was not duplicated when carrying out this test, install each accessory belt, one at a time, to locate the source.

Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure

To carry out this procedure, proceed as follows:

- Test preparations include matching customer conditions (if known). If not known, document the test conditions: gear selection and engine rpm. Monitor the vibration/noise duration with a watch for up to three minutes.
- Park the vehicle where testing will occur. The vehicle must remain at or below the concern temperature (if known) for 6-8 hours.
- Before starting the engine, conduct a visual inspection under the hood.
- Turn the key on, but do not start the engine. Listen for the fuel pump, anti-lock brake system (ABS) and air suspension system noises.
- Start the engine.

- **⚠ CAUTION:** Never probe moving parts.

Isolate the vibration/noise by carefully listening. Move around the vehicle while listening to find the general location of the vibration/noise. Then, search for a more precise location by using a stethoscope or EngineEAR.

- Refer to Idle Noise/Vibration in the Symptom Chart to assist with the diagnosis.

6: Check OASIS/TSBs/Repair History

After verifying the customer concern, check for OASIS reports, TSBs and the vehicle repair history for related concerns. If information relating to a diagnosis/repair is found, carry out the procedure(s) specified in that information.

If no information is available from these sources, carry out the vehicle preliminary inspection to eliminate any obvious faults.

7: Diagnostic Procedure

Qualifying the concern by the particular sensation present can help narrow down the concern. Always use the “symptom” to “system” to “component” to “cause” diagnosis technique. This diagnostic method divides the problem into related areas to correct the customer concern.

- Verify the “symptom”.
- Determine which “system(s)” can cause the “symptom”.
 - If a vibration concern is vehicle speed related, the tire and wheel rpm/frequency or driveshaft frequency should be calculated.
 - If a vibration concern is engine speed related, the engine, engine accessory or engine firing frequencies should be calculated.
- After determining the “system”, use the diagnostic tools to identify the worn or damaged “components”.
- After identifying the “components”, try to find the “cause” of the failure.

Once the concern is narrowed down to a symptom/condition, proceed to NVH Condition and Symptom Categories.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

NVH Condition and Symptom Categories

A good diagnostic process is a logical sequence of steps that lead to the identification of a causal system. Use the condition and symptom categories as follows:

- Identify the operating condition that the vehicle is exhibiting.
- Match the operating condition to the symptom.
- Verify the symptom.
- Identify which category or system could cause the symptom.
- Refer to the diagnostic symptom chart that is referred to.

Operating Condition—Vehicle is Not Moving

1. Static operation
 - Noise occurs during component/system functioning. GO to Symptom Chart - Squeak and Rattle.
2. While cranking
 - 1 Grinding or whine, differential ring gear or starter motor pinion noise. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - 2 Rattle. Exhaust hanger, exhaust heat shield or A/C line noise. GO to Symptom Chart - Squeak and Rattle.
 - 3 Vibration. Acceptable condition.
3. At idle
 - Idle noise. GO to Symptom Chart - Idle Noise/Vibration.
 - Idle vibration or shake. GO to Symptom Chart - Idle Noise/Vibration.
4. During Gear Selection
 - 1 Vehicle parked on a steep incline. Acceptable noise.
 - 2 Vehicle parked on a flat surface. GO to Symptom Chart - Driveline Noise/Vibration.
 - 3 Vehicle with a manual transmission. GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration.

Operating Condition—Vehicle is Moving

1. Depends more on how the vehicle is operated
 - 1 Speed related
 - Related to vehicle speed
 - Pitch increases with vehicle speed. GO to Symptom Chart - Tire Noise/Vibration.
 - Noise occurs at specific vehicle speed. A high-pitched noise (whine). GO to Symptom Chart - Driveline Noise/Vibration.
 - Loudness proportional to vehicle speed. Low-frequency noise at high speeds, noise and loudness increase with speed. GO to Symptom Chart - Driveline Noise/Vibration.
 - A low-pitched noise (drumming). GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - Vibration occurs at a particular speed (mph) regardless of acceleration or deceleration. GO to Symptom Chart - Tire Noise/Vibration.
 - Noise varies with wind/vehicle speed and direction. GO to Symptom Chart - Air Leak and Wind Noise.
 - Related to engine speed.
 - Noise varies with engine rpm. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - Vibration occurs at a particular speed (mph) regardless of engine speed (rpm).
 - 2 Acceleration
 - Wide open throttle (WOT)
 - Engine induced contact between components. Inspect and repair as necessary.
 - Noise is continuous throughout WOT. Exhaust system or engine ground out. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - Light/moderate acceleration
 - Tip-in moan. Engine/exhaust noise. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

- Knock-type noise. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - Driveline shudder. GO to Symptom Chart - Driveline Noise/Vibration.
 - Engine vibration. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
3. Turning noise GO to Symptom Chart - Steering Noise/Vibration.
4. Braking
- Clicking sound is signaling ABS is active. Acceptable ABS sound.
 - A continuous grinding/squeal. GO to Symptom Chart - Brake Noise/Vibration.
 - Brake vibration/shudder. GO to Symptom Chart - Brake Noise/Vibration.
5. Clutching
- A noise occurring during clutch operation. GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration.
 - Vibration. GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration.
6. Shifting
- Noise or vibration condition related to the transmission (automatic). GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration.
 - Noise or vibration related to the transmission (manual). GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration.
7. Engaged in four-wheel drive. GO to Symptom Chart - Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration.
8. Cruising speeds
- Accelerator pedal vibration. GO to Symptom Chart - Engine Noise/Vibration.
 - Driveline vibration. GO to Symptom Chart - Driveline Noise/Vibration.
 - A shimmy or shake. GO to Symptom Chart - Tire Noise/Vibration.
9. Driving at low/medium speeds
- A wobble or shudder. GO to Symptom Chart - Tire Noise/Vibration.
2. Depends more on where the vehicle is operated
1. Bump/pothole, rough road or smooth road. GO to Symptom Chart - Suspension Noise/Vibration.
- Noise is random or intermittent occurring from road irregularities. GO to Symptom Chart - Squeak and Rattle.
 - Noise or vibration changes from one road surface to another. Normal sound changes.
 - Noise or vibration associated with a hard/firm ride. GO to Symptom Chart - Suspension Noise/Vibration.

Symptom Charts**Symptom Chart — Air Leak and Wind Noise**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak around door perimeter 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose fit seal. Seal installed incorrectly. Door misaligned. Scuff plate installed incorrectly. Seal or seal push pins damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PINCH the seal carrier to improve retention on the seal flange. REINSTALL the seal. REALIGN the door. CHECK door gaps and fit in the door opening and ADJUST as necessary. REINSTALL the scuff plate. INSTALL a new seal.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Air Leak and Wind Noise (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak around glass run 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Door glass misaligned. Glass run installed incorrectly. Leak path behind glass run. Glass run channel spread wide. Blow-out clip bent or contacting door glass. Glass run damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the door glass. ADJUST the glass run. INSERT foam in the glass run carrier. INSTALL foam rope behind the glass run. PINCH the glass run channel to reduce the size of the opening. ADJUST the blow-out clip or INSTALL a new glass run/blow-out clip molding assembly. INSTALL a new glass run.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak at inner belt line 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Belt line seal installed incorrectly on flange. Belt line seal integrated with door trim installed incorrectly (no glass contact). No contact with side glass. No contact with glass runs at both ends of belt line seal. Belt line seal damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the seal. (Do not bend the flange.) REINSTALL the door trim. ADJUST the door glass. ADJUST the belt line seal or ADD foam at the seal ends. INSTALL a new seal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak at outer belt line 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Belt line seal installed incorrectly on flange (no glass contact). Belt line seal does not contact the glass. No contact with glass runs at both ends of belt line seal. Belt line seal damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the seal. ADJUST the door glass. ADJUST the belt line seal/ADD foam at the seal ends. INSTALL a new seal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Draft at inner door handle/speaker opening 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hole in watershield. Watershield misaligned. Exterior door handle seal misaligned/damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SEAL the hole with a suitable tape. REALIGN the watershield. INSTALL a new watershield if the pressure sensitive adhesive fails. REALIGN or INSTALL a new seal as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Air Leak and Wind Noise (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise from side view mirror 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outside mirror housing misaligned. Mirror sail gasket folded/misaligned. Mirror housing trim cap installed incorrectly. Air leak through mirror housing hinge. Inner sail trim installed incorrectly. Inner sail gasket/barrier installed incorrectly. Air path through wiring bundle/fastener access holes. Exposed fastener access hole on mirror housing/sail. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REALIGN with the edges shingled correctly and no gaps. REINSTALL with the gasket unfolded and aligned correctly. REINSTALL with the edges shingled to the air flow. Fully ENGAGE the mirror into its operating position/USE foam to block the air path through the hinge. REINSTALL the sail trim/ADJUST the door trim. REINSTALL the trim cover with the gasket/barrier aligned correctly. BLOCK the air path(s) with foam/tape. INSTALL a new cap if it is missing.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak around perimeter of fixed glass 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gaps in the sealant bead. Air traveling up windshield molding along A-pillar. Windshield/backlite misaligned or not installed correctly. Rear hood seal at base of windshield misaligned/damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> APPLY approved sealant. INSTALL foam rope the full length of the A-pillar. REINSTALL the windshield/backlite. REALIGN or INSTALL a new seal as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak at cowl 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cowl gasket misaligned/damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REALIGN or INSTALL a new seal as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak around liftgate perimeter 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose fit seal. Seal misaligned. Liftgate misaligned. Scuff plate misaligned. Seal or seal push pins damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PINCH the seal carrier to improve retention on the seal flange or INSERT foam in the carrier. REINSTALL the seal. REALIGN the liftgate. CHECK the liftgate fit in the body opening and ADJUST as necessary. REINSTALL the scuff plate. INSTALL a new seal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak around the liftgate flip window perimeter 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose fit seal. Seal misaligned. Glass misaligned. Seal damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PINCH the seal carrier to improve the retention to the seal flange. REINSTALL the seal. REALIGN the glass. INSTALL a new seal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise from antenna 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shape of antenna. Air leak around antenna cable access hole. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL an antenna boot or a spiral antenna. INSPECT the antenna access hole grommet. REPAIR as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Air Leak and Wind Noise (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak from closed roof opening panel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seal installed incorrectly. Roof opening panel glass/door misaligned. Roof opening panel damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REINSTALL the seal. REALIGN the roof opening panel glass/door. INSTALL a new roof opening panel.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buffeting from an open roof opening panel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind deflector inoperative/damaged. Wind deflector height incorrect. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new wind deflector as necessary. ADJUST the wind deflector higher.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise created by airflow over or behind body panels 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fender splash shield misaligned. Body panel misaligned (exposed edge). Hood misaligned (front margin). Front grille edge noise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REALIGN the fender splash shield. REALIGN the appropriate body panel. CHECK hood gaps and fit. ADJUST the hood as necessary. APPLY foam in the hollow areas behind the louvers.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise created by grille opening panel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grille relationship to leading edge on hood. Sharp edges due to material imperfections. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the grille opening panel forward to eliminate wind noise. REMOVE the sharp edges (no damage to visible surface).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise from air extractor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air extractor housing seated incorrectly. Air extractor housing or flaps damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REINSTALL the air extractor housing. INSTALL a new air extractor.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak at top of A-pillar — vehicles with a convertible top 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seal at windshield header installed incorrectly. Seal pinched. Gap between side rail and header seal at A-pillar. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REINSTALL the seal. FILL the seal with foam to reshape it. ADJUST the J-hook/vinyl top.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak at rear quarter glass (division bar) — vehicles with a convertible top 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No contact between front side glass and quarter glass division bar. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the front side glass regulator and the rear quarter glass regulator.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak or wind noise from top of side glass — vehicles with a convertible top 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gap between side rail and vinyl top. Seal at windshield header installed incorrectly. Seal damaged between side rail and vinyl top. Vinyl top damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADD additional foam tape to seal between the side rail and the vinyl top. REINSTALL the seal. INSTALL a new seal. INSPECT the vinyl top. INSTALL a new vinyl top as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air leak or wind noise at windshield header — vehicles with a convertible top 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vinyl top not flush with header. Seal at windshield header installed incorrectly. Header seal not flush with header. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST the J-hook to lower the top to achieve a flush condition. REINSTALL the seal. REINSTALL the seal.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Air Leak and Wind Noise (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Convertible top flapping with the top up 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vinyl top contacting interior headliner. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Working from front to back, INSTALL a 6.35 mm (0.25 in) foam sheet between the headliner and the vinyl top at the suspected area. Allow a clearance of 50 mm (2 in) - 75 mm (3 in) away from the roof bows and the side rails.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noise from roof rack 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Roof rack rails or crossbars loose. Roof rack fasteners missing. Roof rack crossbars installed backward. Roof rack rub strips partially lifting from roof. Roof rack gaskets loose or misaligned. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> TIGHTEN the fasteners. INSTALL the approved fasteners. REINSTALL the crossbars. REAPPLY adhesive or fasteners or INSTALL new rub strips as necessary. REINSTALL the gasket.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wind noise from bug shield/exterior windshield sun visor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turbulence created by location and shape. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REMOVE per customer direction if it is a dealer installed option.

Symptom Chart—Brake Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rattling noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Caliper mounting bolts loose. Damaged or worn caliper pins or retainers. Missing or damaged anti-rattle clips or springs. Loose brake disc shield. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the caliper bolts. TIGHTEN to specifications. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes. CHECK the caliper pins and retainers for lubrication and correct fit. LUBRICATE or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes. CHECK the brake pads for missing clips or broken springs. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes. TIGHTEN the brake disc shield bolts to specification. REFER to Section 206-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clicking noise—with brakes applied with ABS brakes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ABS hydraulic control unit. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squealing noise—occurs on first (morning) brake application 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pads. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition. Caused by humidity and low disc brake pad temperature.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Brake Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squealing noise—a continuous squeal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pads or linings worn below minimum thickness. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL new disc brake pads. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squealing noise—an intermittent squeal brought on by cold, heat, water, mud or snow 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pad. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Groaning noise—occurs at low speeds with brake lightly applied (creeping) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pads. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grinding noise—continuous 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pads or linings worn below minimum thickness. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the disc brake pads, brake discs/drums and attaching hardware for damage. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moaning noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brake linings contaminated with grease or oil. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the brake pads and shoes for contamination. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brake vibration/shudder—occurs when brakes are applied 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Uneven disc or drum wear. Uneven disc brake pad or lining transfer. Suspension components. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test A.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brake vibration/shudder—occurs when the brake pedal is released 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brake drag. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the disc brake pads or linings for premature wear. REPAIR or INSTALL a new caliper or wheel cylinder as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Axle howling or whine—front or rear axle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Axle lubricant low. Axle housing damage. Damaged or worn wheel bearings or axle bearings. Damaged or worn differential ring and pinion. Damaged or worn differential side or pinion bearings. Damaged or worn differential side gears and pinion gears. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the lubricant level. FILL the axle to specification. INSPECT the axle housing for damage. REPAIR or INSTALL a new axle as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. CHECK for abnormal wheel bearing play or roughness. REFER to Wheel Bearing Check in this section. ADJUST or INSTALL new wheel bearings as necessary. INSPECT the ring and pinion ring for abnormal wear patterns or broken teeth. INSTALL a new ring and pinion as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. CHECK for abnormal bearing play or roughness. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. DISASSEMBLE the differential carrier. INSPECT the side and pinion gears for abnormal wear patterns or broken teeth. INSTALL new gears as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Driveline clunk—loud clunk when shifting from reverse to drive 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incorrect axle lubricant level. • Excessive backlash in the axle or transmission. • Damaged or worn pinion bearings. • Damaged or worn universal joints (U-joints). • Loose suspension components. • Broken powertrain mounts. • Idle speed too high. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHECK the lubricant level. FILL the axle to specification. • CARRY OUT a total backlash check. REFER to Section 205-00. • CHECK for abnormal bearing play or roughness. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. • INSPECT the U-joints for wear or damage. INSTALL new U-joints as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • INSPECT the suspension for damage or wear. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. • INSPECT the powertrain mounts. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. INSTALL new mounts as necessary. • CHECK for the correct idle speed.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Driveline clunk—occurs as the vehicle starts to move forward following a stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Worn or galled driveshaft slip-yoke splines. • Worn or galled driveshaft and coupling shaft splines. • Loose rear leaf spring U-bolts. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CLEAN and INSPECT the splines of the yoke for a worn or galled condition. INSTALL a new yoke as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • CLEAN and INSPECT the splines of the driveshaft and coupling shaft for a worn or galled condition. INSTALL a new driveshaft assembly as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • CHECK the U-bolts for loose nuts. TIGHTEN to specification. REFER to Section 204-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Driveline clunk (FWD vehicles)—occurs during acceleration or from cruise to coast/deceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Damaged or worn inboard constant velocity (CV) joint. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INSPECT the inboard CV joint and boot. REPAIR or INSTALL a new CV joint as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Driveline clunk (4WD vehicles)—occurs during shift-on-the-fly engagement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clutch relay. • Shift motor. • Transfer case. • GEM. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHECK the 4WD engagement system. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07A and Section 308-07B.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clicking, popping or grinding—occurs while vehicle is turning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inadequate or contaminated lubrication in the (CV) joints. • Another component contacting the halfshaft. • Brake components. • Steering components. • Suspension components. • Damaged or worn wheel bearings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHECK the CV boots and joints for wear or damage. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 205-04. • CHECK the halfshafts and the area around the halfshafts. REPAIR as necessary. • INSPECT the front brakes for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03. • INSPECT the drag link, inner and outer tie-rods or idler arm for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 211-03. • INSPECT the upper and lower ball joints for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles. • CHECK for abnormal wheel bearing play or roughness. REFER to Wheel Bearing Check in this section. ADJUST or INSTALL new wheel bearings as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clicking or snapping—occurs when accelerating around a corner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Damaged or worn outboard CV joint. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INSPECT the outboard CV joint and boot. REPAIR or INSTALL a new CV joint as necessary. REFER to Section 205-04.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High pitched chattering—noise from the rear axle when the vehicle is turning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect or contaminated lubricant. Damaged or worn differential (differential side gears and pinion gears). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the vehicle by driving in tight circles (5 clockwise, 5 counterclockwise). FLUSH and REFILL with the specified rear axle lubricant and friction modifier as necessary. DISASSEMBLE the differential assembly. INSPECT the differential case, pin and gears for wear or damage. REPAIR or INSTALL a new differential as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buzz—buzzing noise is the same at cruise or coast/deceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn tires. Incorrect driveline angles. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for abnormal tire wear or damage. INSTALL new tire(s) as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04. CHECK for correct driveline angles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rumble or boom—noise occurs at coast/deceleration, usually driveshaft speed related and noticeable over a wide range of speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Driveshaft is out-of-balance. U-joints binding or seized. Excessive pinion flange runout. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the driveshaft for damage, missing balance weights or undercoating. CHECK the driveshaft balance. CARRY OUT a driveline vibration test. REFER to Section 205-00. ROTATE the driveshaft and CHECK for rough operation or seized U-joints. INSTALL new U-joints as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. CARRY OUT a runout check. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grunting—normally associated with a shudder experienced during acceleration from a dead stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Driveshaft slip yoke binding. Loose rear spring U-bolts. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CLEAN and LUBRICATE the male and female splines. INSPECT the rear suspension. TIGHTEN the U-bolt nuts to specification. REFER to Section 204-02.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Howl—can occur at various speeds and driving conditions. Affected by acceleration and deceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect ring and pinion contact, incorrect bearing preload or gear damage. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the ring and pinion and bearings for damage. INSPECT the ring and pinion wear pattern. REFER to Checking Tooth Contact Pattern and Condition of the Ring and Pinion component test in this section. ADJUST or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chuckle—heard at coast/deceleration. Also described as a knock 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect ring and pinion contact or by damaged teeth on the coast side of the ring and pinion. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the ring and pinion for damage. INSPECT the ring and pinion wear pattern. REFER to Checking Tooth Contact Pattern and Condition of the Ring and Pinion component test in this section. ADJUST or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knock—noise occurs at various speeds. Not affected by acceleration or deceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gear tooth damage to the drive side of the ring and pinion. Excessive axle shaft end play. (Vehicles with integral axles). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the differential case and ring and pinion for damage. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. CHECK the axle end play using a dial indicator. INSTALL a new axle shaft or side gears as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scraping noise—a continuous low pitched noise starting at low speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged pinion bearings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the pinion bearings. INSTALL new pinion bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Driveline shudder—occurs during acceleration from a slow speed or stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rear drive axle assembly mispositioned. Loose rear spring U-bolts. Incorrect or high CV joint operating angle. Damaged or worn front suspension components. Driveline angles out of specification. U-joints binding or seized. Binding, damaged or galled splines on the driveshaft slip-yoke. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the axle mounts and the rear suspension for damage or wear. REPAIR as necessary. INSPECT the U-bolts. TIGHTEN the U-bolt nuts to specification. REFER to Section 204-02. CHECK vehicle ride height is within limits. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK for a loose stabilizer bar, damaged or loose strut/strut bushings or loose or worn ball joints. INSPECT the steering linkage for wear or damage. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. CHECK for correct driveline angles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00. ROTATE the driveshaft and CHECK for rough operation or seized U-joints. INSTALL new U-joints as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. CLEAN and INSPECT the splines of the slip-yoke, driveshaft and coupling shaft for a worn, damaged or galled condition. INSTALL a new slip-yoke or driveshaft assembly as necessary. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Driveline Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Driveline vibration—occurs at cruising speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • U-joints are worn. • Worn or damaged driveshaft center bearing support. • Loose axle pinion flange bolts. • Excessive axle pinion flange runout. • Driveshaft is out-of-balance. • Binding or damaged splines on the driveshaft slip-yoke. • Driveshaft runout. • Incorrect lateral and radial tire/wheel runout. • Driveline angles out of specification. • Incorrectly seated CV joint in the front wheel hub. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHECK for wear or incorrect seating. INSTALL new U-joints as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • CHECK the insulator for damage or wear. ROTATE the driveshaft and CHECK for rough operation. INSTALL a new center bearing support as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • INSPECT the axle pinion flange. TIGHTEN the pinion flange bolts to specification. REFER to Section 205-01. • CARRY OUT a Runout Check. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. • CHECK the driveshaft for damage, missing balance weights or undercoating. CHECK driveshaft balance. CARRY OUT a driveline vibration test. REFER to Section 205-00. REPAIR as necessary. • CLEAN and INSPECT the splines of the slip-yoke, driveshaft and coupling shaft for wear or damage. INSTALL a new slip-yoke or driveshaft assembly as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. REPAIR as necessary. • CARRY OUT a Runout Check. REFER to Section 205-00. REPAIR as necessary. • INSPECT the tire and wheels. MEASURE tire runouts. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04. • CHECK for correct driveline angles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00. • CHECK the outer CV joint for correct seating into the hub. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-04.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grinding noise—occurs during engine cranking 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect starter motor mounting. Starter motor. Incorrect starter motor drive engagement. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the starter motor for correct mounting. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 303-06. CHECK the starter motor. REPAIR or INSTALL a new starter motor as necessary. REFER to Section 303-06. INSPECT the starter motor drive and flexplate/flywheel for wear or damage. INSTALL a new starter motor drive or flexplate/flywheel as necessary. REFER to Section 303-06.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine ticking noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fuel injector. Fuel line. Oil pump. Valve lifter. Belt tensioner. Water pump. Obstruction of cooling fan. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test B.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine drumming noise—normally accompanied by vibration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Powertrain mount. Damaged or misaligned exhaust system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing in this section. INSPECT the exhaust system for loose or broken clamps and brackets. CARRY OUT Exhaust System Neutralizing in this section.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whistling noise—normally accompanied with poor idle condition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air intake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the air intake ducts, air cleaner, throttle body and vacuum hoses for leaks and correct fit. REPAIR or ADJUST as necessary. REFER to Section 303-12.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clunking noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Water pump has excessive end play or imbalance. Generator has excessive end play. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the water pump for excessive end play. INSPECT the water pump with the drive belt off for imbalance. INSTALL a new water pump as necessary. REFER to Section 303-03A for standard cooling or Section 303-03B for supercharger cooling. CHECK the generator for excessive end play. REPAIR or INSTALL a new generator. REFER to Section 414-02.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pinging noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust system leak. Gasoline octane too low. Knock sensor operation. Incorrect spark timing. High operating temperature. Foul-out spark plug. Catalytic converter. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the exhaust system for leaks. REPAIR as necessary. VERIFY with customer the type of gasoline used. CORRECT as necessary. CHECK the knock sensor. INSTALL a new knock sensor as necessary. REFER to Section 303-14. CHECK the spark timing. REPAIR as necessary. INSPECT cooling system for leaks. CHECK the coolant level. REFILL as necessary. CHECK the coolant for the correct mix ratio. DRAIN and REFILL as needed. CHECK engine operating temperature is within specifications. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK the spark plugs. REPAIR or INSTALL new spark plugs as necessary. Acceptable noise.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knocking noise—light knocking noise, also described as piston slap. Noise is most noticeable when engine is cold with light to medium acceleration. Noise disappears as engine warms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive clearance between the piston and the cylinder wall. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine cold and at high idle. Using an EngineEAR, pull a spark plug or fuel injector connector until the noise goes away. CARRY OUT a cylinder bore clearance to piston check. INSTALL a new piston. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knocking noise—light double knock or sharp rap sound. Occurs mostly with warm engine at idle or low speeds in DRIVE. Increases in relation to engine load. Associated with poor lubrication history 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive clearance between the piston and the piston pin. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new piston or piston pin. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knocking noise—light knocking noise is most noticeable when engine is warm. Noise tends to decrease when vehicle is coasting or in neutral 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive clearance between the connecting rod bearings and the crankshaft. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine warm and at idle. Using an EngineEAR, PULL a spark plug or fuel injector connector until the noise goes away. INSTALL new bearings. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knocking—deep knocking noise. Noise is most noticeable when engine is warm, at lower rpm and under a light load and then at float 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged crankshaft main bearings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT Drive Engine Run-Up (DERU) Test. CHECK for noise with vehicle at operating temperature, during medium to heavy acceleration. CHECK at idle with injector disconnected, noise does not change. INSTALL new main bearings. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knocking noise—occurs mostly with warm engine at light/medium acceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spark plugs. Carbon accumulation in combustion chamber. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the spark plugs for damage or wear. INSTALL new spark plugs as necessary. REMOVE carbon from combustion chamber.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whine or moaning noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air intake system. Generator electrical field or bearings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the air cleaner and ducts for correct fit. INSPECT the air intake system for leaks or damage. REPAIR as necessary. CARRY OUT generator load test. REPAIR or INSTALL a new generator as necessary. REFER to Section 414-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drone type noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust system. A/C compressor. Powertrain mounts. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT the Exhaust System Neutralizing in this section. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK for noise with vehicle at constant speeds. CYCLE the compressor on and off and listen for a change in pitch. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 412-03. CARRY OUT the Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing in this section.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sputter type noise—noise worse when cold, lessens or disappears when vehicle is at operating temperature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn exhaust system components. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the exhaust system for leaks or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 309-00.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rattling noise—noise from the upper engine (valve train). Worse when engine is cold 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low oil level. Thin or diluted oil. Low oil pressure. Worn rocker arms/fulcrums or followers. Worn valve guides. Excessive runout of valve seats on the valve face. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK oil level. FILL as necessary. INSPECT the oil for contamination. If oil is contaminated, CHECK for the source. REPAIR as necessary. CHANGE the oil and filter. CARRY OUT an oil pressure test. If not within specifications, REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engine. CARRY OUT a valve train analysis. INSTALL new valve train components as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. CARRY OUT a valve train analysis. INSTALL new valve guides as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. CARRY OUT a valve seat runout test. INSPECT the valve face and seat. INSTALL new valves as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rattling noise—from the bottom of the vehicle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose muffler shields or catalytic converter shields. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the exhaust system for loose shields. REPAIR as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Thumping noise—from the bottom of the vehicle, worse at acceleration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust pipe/muffler grounded to chassis. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the exhaust system to chassis clearance. CHECK the exhaust system hangers for damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 309-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whoosh—occurs during light vehicle acceleration. Heard inside the vehicle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Throttling late, creating turbulence transmitted through the plastic manifold. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for leaks or missing seal in the dash panel.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine vibration—increases intensity as engine rpm is increased 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine out-of-balance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT Neutral Engine Run-Up (NERU) Test. ROTATE the torque converter, 120° for 3 bolt and 180° for 4 bolt. INSPECT the torque converter pilot outer diameter to crankshaft pilot inner diameter. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine vibration—is felt with increases and decreases in engine rpm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strain on exhaust mounts. Damaged or worn powertrain/drivetrain mounts. Engine or transmission grounded to chassis. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT the Exhaust System Neutralizing in this section. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK the powertrain/drivetrain mounts for damage. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. REPAIR as necessary. INSPECT the powertrain/drivetrain for correct clearances. REPAIR as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine vibration—vibration felt at all times 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive engine pulley runout. Damaged or worn accessory component. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT Engine Accessory Test. INSTALL a new engine pulley as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. CARRY OUT Engine Accessory Test. REPAIR or INSTALL a new component as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accelerator pedal vibration—felt through the pedal as a buzz 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Throttle cable loose or misrouted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the throttle cable. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 310-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine vibration—mostly at coast/neutral coast. Condition improves with vehicle accelerating 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Combustion instability. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the ignition system. INSTALL new components as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart — Engine Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine vibration or shudder—occurs with light to medium acceleration above 56 km/h (35 mph) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged spark plugs. Plugged fuel injector. Damaged spark plug wire. Contaminated fuel. Worn or damaged torque converter. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the spark plugs for cracks, high resistance or broken insulator. INSTALL a new spark plug(s) as necessary. REPAIR or INSTALL a new injector as necessary. INSPECT the spark plug wires for damage. INSTALL a new spark plug wire(s) as necessary. INSPECT the fuel for contamination. DRAIN the fuel system and refill. CHECK the torque converter. INSTALL a new torque converter as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions. REFER to Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.

Symptom Chart—Idle Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Idle air control (IAC) valve moan — occurs on throttle tip-out 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> IAC valve is contaminated with oil. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Component Tests in this section.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessory drive belt chirp — occurs at idle or high idle, cold or hot. Most common occurrence is during humid weather 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessory drive belt worn, or pulley is misaligned or loose. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT for loose or misaligned pulleys. CHECK the drive belt for wear or damage. INSTALL new pulley(s)/accessory drive components or drive belt, as necessary. REFER to Section 303-05.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessory drive bearing hoot — occurs at idle or high idle in cold temperatures of approximately +4°C (+40°F) or colder at first start of the day 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessory drive idler or tensioner pulley bearing is experiencing stick/slip between ball bearings and bearing race. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test C.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering moan — occurs at high idle and possibly at idle during the first cold start of the day in temperatures of approximately -18°C (0°F) or colder. Noise can even be a severe screech for less than one minute in very cold temperatures of approximately -29°C (-20°F) or colder 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High fluid viscosity, or plugged reservoir screen in power steering reservoir starves pump causing cavitation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test D.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Idle Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Generator whine — during high electrical loads at idle or high idle, a high pitch whine or moan is emitted from the generator 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Generator electrical field noise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using an EngineEAR, PROBE near the generator housing. LISTEN for changes in the noise level while changing electrical loads (such as rear defrost, headlamps, etc.). CARRY OUT a generator load test. If the system passes the load test, the noise is from the generator bearings. INSTALL new bearings. If the system fails the load test, INSTALL a new generator. REFER to Section 414-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine-driven cooling fan moan — occurs during the first start of the day. It is most objectionable near idle speeds up to 2000 rpm. The noise increases with rpm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The viscous cooling fan clutch engages until the fluid in the clutch reaches normal operating temperature, causing the fan to fully engage. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test E.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drumming noise — occurs inside the vehicle during idle or high idle, hot or cold. Very low-frequency drumming is very rpm dependent 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust system vibration excites the body resonances inducing interior noise. Engine vibration excites the body resonances inducing interior noise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test F.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hissing noise — occurs during idle or high idle that is apparent with the hood open 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vacuum leak or idle air control (IAC) valve flow noise. Vehicles with a plastic intake manifold. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the Ultrasonic Leak Detector/EngineEAR to locate the source. Scan the air intake system from the inlet to each cylinder intake port. DISCARD the leaking parts, and INSTALL a new component. Acceptable condition. Some plastic manifolds exhibit this noise, which is the effect of the plastic manifold.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatic transmission buzz or hiss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect driveline angles. Worn or damaged main control solenoids or valves. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for correct driveline angles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00. Using a transmission tester, activate the solenoids to duplicate sound. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions. REFER to Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manual Transmission Clutch throw-out bearing whine. A change in noise pitch or loudness while depressing the clutch pedal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn throw-out bearing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new throw-out bearing. REFER to Section 308-01.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Idle Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Heating, vacuum and air conditioning (HVAC) system chirp — most audible inside the vehicle. Listen for a change in noise pitch or loudness while changing the HVAC system blower speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn HVAC blower bearing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new blower motor. REFER to Section 412-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air conditioning (A/C) clutch ticking — occurs when the compressor clutch engages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable noise. Incorrect air gap. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> LISTEN to the clutch to determine if the noise occurs with clutch engagement. A small amount of noise is acceptable. If the noise is excessive, CHECK the A/C clutch air gap. INSPECT the A/C clutch for wear or damage. INSTALL a new clutch as necessary. REFER to Section 412-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intermittent rattle, or scraping/rubbing noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose exhaust heat shield(s). Wiring, hose or other part interfering with accessory drive, drive belt or pulley. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the exhaust system for loose parts using a glove or clamps to verify cause. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 309-00. INSPECT accessory drive system closely verifying there is adequate clearance to all rotating components. REPAIR as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine ticking or knocking noise — occurs during idle or high idle during the first cold start of the day 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Piston noise or valvetrain noise (bled down lifter/lash adjuster). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test G.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A continuous, speed-dependent rattle from the engine — occurs during idle or high idle during the first cold start of the day and disappears as the engine warms up 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Piston noise or valvetrain noise (bled down lifter/lash adjuster). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test G.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Idle vibration—a low-frequency vibration (5-20 Hz) or mild shake that is felt through the seat/floorpan 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cylinder misfire. Engine or torque converter out of balance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using a scan tool, CHECK the ignition system. CARRY OUT a cylinder power test. REFER to Section 303-00. VERIFY the torque converter to crankshaft pilot clearance is correct, REPAIR as necessary. RE-INDEX the torque converter on the flex plate by 120° on a 3 bolt converter or 180° for a 4 bolt converter. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions. REFER to Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. RETEST the vehicle.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Idle Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Idle vibration—a high-frequency vibration (20-80 Hz) or buzz, that is felt through the steering wheel or seat 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust system mounts bound up. Body mounts loose. Power steering lines grounded out. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> VERIFY concern occurs at engine firing frequency. CHECK that the exhaust system vibrates at the same frequency as the engine. ADD 9-14 km (20-30 lb.) to the tail pipe to test. CARRY OUT Exhaust System Neutralizing in this section. INSPECT the body mounts. REPAIR as necessary. INSPECT that the power steering lines are not contacting the chassis or each other. REPAIR as necessary.

Symptom Chart—Squeak and Rattle

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—heard inside the vehicle when closing/opening the door 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insufficient lubrication on the door hinge or check strap. Internal door components loose, rubbing or misaligned. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> LUBRICATE the hinge or check strap. CHECK the inside of the door. TIGHTEN or ALIGN as necessary. USE the Squeak and Rattle Repair Kit to isolate any rubbing components.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—heard inside the vehicle when closing/opening the window 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged glass run/channel. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new glass run/channel. REFER to Section 501-11.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—heard outside of vehicle when closing/opening the door 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhaust shield rubbing against the chassis or exhaust pipe. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the exhaust system. REPAIR as necessary. Section 309-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—occurs with initial brake pedal application 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disc brake pads. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Under certain conditions, asbestos free pads can generate a squeak noise. This noise is normal and does not indicate a concern.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—a constant noise that occurs with brake pedal applications 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn disc brake pads. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the pads for oil, grease or brake fluid contamination. CHECK for glazed linings. A brake disc with hard spots will also cause a squeak type noise. REPAIR or INSTALL new pads as necessary. REFER to Section 206-03 for front disc brakes or Section 206-04 for rear disc brakes.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Squeak and Rattle (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak—noise occurs over bumps or when turning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn control arm bushings. Worn or damaged shock absorber/strut. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the control arm bushings. Spray with lubricant and CARRY OUT a “bounce test” to determine which bushing. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles. INSPECT the shock absorber for damage. CARRY OUT a “bounce test” to isolate the noise. INSTALL a new shock absorber/strut as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles and Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles front shock absorber/strut or Section 204-02 for the rear shock absorber/strut.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rattle—heard when closing/opening the door or window 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose internal door mechanism, bracket or attachment. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPEAT the motion or CARRY OUT a “tap test” to duplicate the noise. INSPECT the door for loose components. TIGHTEN loose components or USE the Rotunda Squeak and Rattle Kit to isolate any rattling components.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak or rattle—heard inside the vehicle over rough roads/bumps 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Misaligned glove compartment door/hinge. Instrument panel trim loose or misaligned. Loose interior component or trim. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ALIGN the glove compartment door. INSPECT the instrument panel trim for missing or loose clips or screws. REPAIR as necessary. CARRY OUT a “touch test”. ELIMINATE the noise by pressing or pulling on interior trim and components. USE the Rotunda Squeak and Rattle Kit to isolate any rattling/squeaking components.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Squeak and Rattle (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak or rattle—noise with a vibration concern 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn body mounts. Damaged or worn sub-frame mounts. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the upper and lower absorbers and washers for damage or wear. CHECK the body mount brackets for damage. CHECK the nuts and bolts are tightened to specifications. TIGHTEN as necessary. INSPECT the upper and lower absorbers for damage or wear. CHECK the sub-frame for damage. CHECK the nuts and bolts are tightened to specifications. TIGHTEN as necessary.

Symptom Chart—Steering Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering grunt or shudder — occurs when turning into or out of a turn at low speeds (temperature sensitive) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering gear or power steering hoses. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Steering Gear Grunt/Shudder Test component test in this section.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering System clonk—hydraulic knocking sound 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Air in the steering hydraulic system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for leaks in the system. PURGE the air from the system. REFER to Section 211-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump moan — loud humming noise occurs when the steering wheel is rotated to the stop position. Produces a 120-600 Hz frequency that changes with rpm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering hose grounded out to chassis. Aerated fluid. Steering gear isolators. Low fluid. Power steering pump brackets loose or misaligned. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the power steering hoses. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK for leaks in the system. PURGE the air from the system. REFER to Section 211-00. INSPECT the isolators for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK the fluid level. REFILL as necessary. CHECK bolts, brackets and bracket alignment. TIGHTEN bolts to specification. REPAIR or INSTALL new brackets as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering gear clunk — occurs only while cornering over a bump (can be temperature sensitive) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering gear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the steering gear for loose mounting bolts. TIGHTEN as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Steering Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Feedback (rattle, chuckle or knocking noise in the steering gear) — a condition where roughness is felt in the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven over rough surfaces 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Column intermediate/flexible shaft joints damaged or worn. Loose, damaged or worn tie-rod ends. Steering gear insulators or mounting bolts loose or damaged. Steering column intermediate shaft bolts are loose. Steering column damaged or worn. Loose suspension bushings, bolts or ball joints. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new intermediate/flexible shaft. REFER to Section 211-04. TIGHTEN the nuts to specification or INSTALL new tie-rod ends as necessary. REFER to Section 211-03. TIGHTEN the bolts or INSTALL new bolts as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02. TIGHTEN the bolts to specification. REFER to Section 211-04. REPAIR or INSTALL a new steering column as necessary. REFER to Section 211-04. INSPECT the suspension system. TIGHTEN or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Feedback (nibble at the steering wheel) — a condition where slight rotational movement is felt in the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven over rough or grooved surfaces 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lateral runout in the tire or wheel. Yoke spring in the steering gear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test H. CHECK TSBs for revised yoke spring for applicable vehicles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessory drive belt squeal/chirp—when rotating the steering wheel from stop to stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose or worn accessory drive belt. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADJUST or INSTALL a new accessory belt as necessary. REFER to Section 303-05.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering gear hiss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering column intermediate/flexible shaft-to-steering gear is binding or misaligned. Grounded or loose steering column boot at the dash panel. Damaged or worn steering gear input shaft and valve. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new intermediate/flexible shaft as necessary. REFER to Section 211-04. REPAIR as necessary. REPAIR or INSTALL a new steering gear as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Steering Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering column rattle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose bolts or attaching brackets. Loose, worn or insufficiently lubricated column bearings. Steering shaft insulators damaged or worn. Intermediate/flexible shaft compressed or extended. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> TIGHTEN the bolts to specifications. LUBRICATE or INSTALL new steering column bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 211-04. INSTALL new insulators. REFER to Section 211-04. INSPECT the rubber spider coupling for damage. INSTALL a new intermediate/flexible shaft. REFER to Section 211-04.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering column squeak or cracks 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insufficient lubricated steering shaft bushings. Loose or misaligned steering column shrouds. Steering wheel rubbing against steering column shrouds. Insufficient lubricated speed control slip ring. Upper or lower bearing sleeve out of position. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> LUBRICATE the steering shaft and shaft tube seals. TIGHTEN or ALIGN the steering column shrouds. REPOSITION the steering column shrouds. LUBRICATE the speed control slip ring. REPOSITION the bearing sleeves.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump noisy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect assembly of components. Imperfections on the outside diameter or end surface of the power steering pump rotor. Damaged or worn power steering pump rotor splines. A crack on the inner surface of the power steering pump cam. Interference between the power steering pump rotor and cam. Damaged or worn power steering pump rotor and pressure plates. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new power steering pump as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump swish noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering fluid flow into the bypass valve of the pump valve housing with fluid temperature below 54°C (130°F). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump whine noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aerated fluid. Damaged power steering pump cam. Damaged valve cover O-ring seal. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for a leak in the system. PURGE the air from the system. REFER to Section 211-00. REPAIR or INSTALL a new power steering pump as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02. REPAIR or INSTALL a new power steering pump as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Steering Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump clicking (mechanical) noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump rotor slippers too long, excessive rotor slipper-to-slot clearance or damaged or worn rotor assembly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new power steering pump as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power steering pump clatter noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged corners on the outside diameter or the power steering rotor or distorted rotor slipper ring. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL a new power steering pump as necessary. REFER to Section 211-02.

Symptom Chart—Suspension Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Squeak or grunt—noise from the front suspension, occurs more in cold ambient temperatures. More noticeable over rough roads or when turning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front stabilizer bar insulators. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Under these conditions, the noise is acceptable. CHECK TSBs for applicable vehicle.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clunk—noise from the front suspension, occurs in and out of turns 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose front struts or shocks. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT for loose nuts or bolts. TIGHTEN to specifications. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clunk—noise from the rear suspension, occurs when shifting from reverse to drive 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose rear suspension components. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT for loose or damaged rear suspension components. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click or pop—noise from the front suspension. More noticeable over rough roads or over bumps 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged ball joints. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT a ball joint inspection. INSTALL new ball joints or control arms as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click or pop (FWD vehicles)—noise occurs when vehicle is turning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged ball joints. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT a ball joint inspection. INSTALL new ball joints or control arms as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click or snap—occurs when accelerating around a corner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn outboard CV joint. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the outboard CV joint and boot. REPAIR or INSTALL a new CV joint as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01B.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Suspension Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front suspension noise—a squeak, creak or rattle noise. Occurs mostly over bumps or rough roads 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Steering components. Loose or bent front struts or shock absorbers. Damaged spring or spring mounts. Damaged or worn control/radius arm bushings. Worn or damaged stabilizer bar bushings or links. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test H.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rear suspension noise—a squeak, creak or rattle noise. Occurs mostly over bumps or rough roads 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose or bent rear shock absorbers. Damaged spring or spring mounts. Damaged or worn control arm bushings. Worn or damaged stabilizer bar bushings or links. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test I.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shudder—occurs during acceleration from a slow speed or stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rear drive axle assembly mispositioned. Incorrect or high CV joint operating angle. Damaged or worn front suspension components. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the axle mounts and the rear suspension for damage or wear. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK vehicle ride height is within limits. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK for a loose stabilizer bar, damaged or loose strut/strut bushings or loose or worn ball joints. INSPECT the steering linkage for wear or damage. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shimmy—most noticeable on coast/deceleration. Also hard steering condition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive positive caster. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the caster alignment angle. CORRECT as necessary. REFER to Section 204-00.

Symptom Chart—Tire Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tire noise—hum/moan at constant speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal wear patterns. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SPIN the tire and CHECK for tire wear. INSTALL new tire(s) as necessary. INSPECT for damaged/worn suspension components. CARRY OUT wheel alignment.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tire noise—noise tone lowers as the vehicle speed is lowered 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Out-of-balance tire. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> BALANCE the tire and road test. INSTALL a new tire as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tire noise — ticking noise, changes with speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nail puncture or stone in tire tread. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the tire. REPAIR as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Tire Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wheel and tire—vibration and noise concern is directly related to vehicle speed and is not affected by acceleration, coasting or decelerating 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Damaged or worn tire. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GO to Pinpoint Test J.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire wobble or shudder — occurs at lower speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Damaged wheel bearings. • Damaged wheel. • Damaged or worn suspension components. • Loose wheel nuts. • Damaged or uneven tire wear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SPIN the tire and CHECK for abnormal wheel bearing play or roughness. ADJUST or INSTALL new wheel bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive vehicles or Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive vehicles. • INSPECT the wheel for damage. INSTALL a new wheel as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04. • INSPECT the suspension components for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. • CHECK the wheel nuts. TIGHTEN to specification. REFER to Section 204-04. • SPIN the tire and CHECK for abnormal tire wear or damage. INSTALL a new tire as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Tire Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tire shimmy or shake—occurs at lower speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel/tire out of balance. Uneven tire wear. Excessive radial runout of wheel or tire. Worn or damaged wheel studs or elongated stud holes. Excessive lateral runout of the wheel or tire. Foreign material between the brake disc and hub or in the brake disc fins. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> BALANCE the wheel/tire assembly. CHECK for abnormal tire wear. INSTALL a new tire as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04. CARRY OUT a radial runout test of the wheel and tire. INSTALL a new tire as necessary. REFER to Section 204-04. INSPECT the wheel studs and wheels. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive front wheels, Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive front wheels and Section 204-02 for all rear wheels. CARRY OUT a lateral runout test of the wheel and tire. CHECK the wheel, tire and hub. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. CLEAN the mounting surfaces of the brake disc and hub. CHECK the brake disc fins for material.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High speed shake or shimmy—occurs at high speeds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive wheel hub runout. Damaged or worn tires. Damaged or worn wheel bearings. Worn or damaged suspension or steering linkage components. Brake disc or drum imbalance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test K.

Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch rattling noise—occurs with clutch engaged, noise changes/disappears with clutch pedal depressed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flywheel bolts, clutch housing bolts or clutch pressure plate bolts loose. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> TIGHTEN the bolts to specifications. CHECK the bolts for damage.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch squeaking noise—noise is heard when the clutch is operated. Vehicle moves slowly or creeps when the clutch is disengaged. Can also be difficult to shift into first and reverse gear 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pilot bearing seized or damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new pilot bearing. REFER to Section 308-01.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch squeaking noise—occurs with clutch pedal depressed/released 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn clutch pedal shaft or bushings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the clutch pedal for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-02.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch whirring/rattle noise—occurs when clutch pedal is depressed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn, damaged or misaligned clutch release bearing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new clutch release bearing. REFER to Section 308-01.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch grating/grinding noise—occurs when clutch pedal is depressed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch pressure plate fingers bent or worn. Contact surface of clutch release bearing worn or damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the clutch pressure plate release fingers. INSTALL a new pressure plate as necessary. REFER to Section 308-01. INSTALL a new clutch release bearing. REFER to Section 308-01.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch chatter—a small amount of noise when clutch pedal is released at initial take-off 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch engagement. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable operating condition.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch chatter/grabs—in some cases a shudder is felt. Occurs with clutch pedal depressed/released 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn powertrain/driveline mounts. Binding or dragging plunger of the clutch master cylinder or slave cylinder. Grease or oil on the clutch disc facing. Clutch disc surface glazed or damaged. Damaged or worn clutch pressure plate. Flywheel surface damaged or glazed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the powertrain/drivetrain mounts. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. INSTALL new mounts as necessary. CHECK the master and slave cylinder operation. INSPECT the components for damage or wear. INSTALL a new master or slave cylinder as necessary. REFER to Section 308-02. CHECK the input shaft seal and rear main oil seal. REPAIR as necessary. INSTALL a new clutch disc. REFER to Section 308-01. INSPECT the clutch disc surface for a glazed, hardened or damage condition. CARRY OUT a disc check. INSTALL a new clutch disc as necessary. REFER to Section 308-01. INSPECT the clutch pressure plate for wear or damage. INSTALL a new clutch pressure plate as necessary. REFER to Section 308-01. INSPECT the flywheel for damage or wear. CARRY OUT a flywheel runout check. INSTALL a new flywheel as necessary. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch chatter noise—noise when clutch pedal is released at initial take-off. Clutch is hard to engage and disengage 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pilot bearing worn, damaged or not correctly aligned in bore. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the clutch pressure plate release fingers for uneven wear, clutch components burnt or a seized pilot bearing. INSTALL a new pilot bearing as necessary. REFER to Section 308-01.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch vibration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose flywheel bolts. Damaged or loose clutch pressure plate. Excessive flywheel runout. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test L.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission rattling/clattering noise—noise at idle or on light acceleration from a stop. Gear selection difficult 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gearshift lever joint worn or damaged. Gearshift lever loose. Gearshift linkage rods worn or damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSTALL a new gearshift lever. REFER to Section 308-03. TIGHTEN the bolts to specification. REFER to Section 308-03. CHECK the linkage bushings for wear. INSTALL new linkage rods as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission rattling/clattering noise—occurs in neutral or in gear, at idle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect fluid level or fluid quality. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK that the transmission is filled to the correct level and with the specified fluid. REFER to Section 308-00.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission rattling/clattering noise—noise at idle in neutral 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or rough reverse idler gear. Rough running engine, cylinder misfire. Excessive backlash in gears. Worn countershaft gears. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the reverse idler gear. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03. CHECK the ignition system. CARRY OUT a cylinder power test. REFER to Section 303-00. CHECK the gear backlash. ADJUST as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission whine—a mild whine at extreme speeds or high rpm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rotating gears/geartrain. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable noise.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission whine—a high pitched whine, also described as a squeal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission gears are worn (high mileage vehicle). Mismatched gear sets. Damaged or worn transmission bearing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Result of normal gear wear. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03. INSPECT the gear sets for an uneven wear pattern on the face of the gear teeth. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-00. INSPECT the transmission bearings. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to the Section 308-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission growling/humming—noise occurs in the forward gears. The noise is more prominent when the gear is loaded. The problem gear can be located as the noise occurs in a specific gear position 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gear is cracked, chipped or rough. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the transmission gears for damage or wear. INSTALL new gears as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission hissing—noise in neutral or in forward gears. As bearings wear or break up, the noise changes to a thumping noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn bearings. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the transmission bearings. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission knocking/thudding—noise at low speeds in forward gears 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bearings with damaged balls or rollers or with pitted and spalled races. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the transmission bearings. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission rumble/growl—noise at higher speeds in forward gears, more pronounced in a coast/deceleration condition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect driveline angle. Driveshaft out of balance or damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the driveline angle. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00. CHECK the driveshaft for damage, missing balance weights or undercoating. Using the electronic vibration analyzer (EVA), CHECK the driveshaft balance. CARRY OUT a driveline vibration test. For additional information, REFER to Section 205-00. REPAIR as necessary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission rumble/growl—noise at all speeds in forward gears, more pronounced in a heavy acceleration condition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn transmission bearing or gears (high mileage vehicles). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK transmission fluid for excessive metal particles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-03.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case whine—noise at all ranges 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect fluid level or fluid quality. Worn oil pump. Under-inflated or oversized tires. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK that the transfer case is filled to the correct level and with the specified fluid. REFER to Section 308-07B. DISASSEMBLE the transfer case. CHECK the oil pump for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07B. CONFIRM that the tires and wheels are correct for the vehicle. CHECK that the tire inflation pressures are correct.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case growl/rumble—noise at all ranges (A small amount of planetary noise can be heard when the transfer case is operated in low range.) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn bearings or planetary gear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DISASSEMBLE the transfer case. CHECK the bearings or planetary gear for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07B.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case scraping/grating—noise at all ranges 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessively stretched drive chain hitting the case. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DISASSEMBLE the transfer case. CHECK the drive chain for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07B.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case howl/hum—noise at all ranges or high range only 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged sun (input) gear, clutch pack (intermediate) gear or output shaft gear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DISASSEMBLE the transfer case. CHECK the gears for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07B.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Manual) and Transfer Case Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case howl/hum—noise at low range only 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worn or damaged intermediate gear and sliding gears (clutch pack). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DISASSEMBLE the transfer case. CHECK the gears for wear or damage. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 308-07B.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case vibration—vibration felt with vehicle in 4WD 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfer case mounting. Driveshaft out of balance. Excessive pinion flange runout. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GO to Pinpoint Test M.

Symptom Chart—Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rattle—occurs at idle or at light acceleration from a stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged engine or transmission mounts. A loose front pipe heat shield. Loose inspection plate or dust cover plate. Loose flexplate to converter nuts. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the powertrain/drivetrain mounts for damage. CARRY OUT Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing in this section. REPAIR or INSTALL a new heat shield as necessary. CHECK for loose bolts. TIGHTEN to specifications. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CHECK for loose nuts. TIGHTEN to specifications. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whine—pitch increases with vehicle speed. Starts in first and second gear, decreases or goes away at higher gears 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged or worn low one-way clutch. Damaged or worn intermediate one-way clutch. Friction elements. Damaged or worn planetary or sun gear. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the transmission for wear or damage. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whine—the pitch changes with engine speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A worn or damaged accessory drive component. Incorrect fluid level. Partially blocked filter. Worn or damaged torque converter. Worn or damaged front pump. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT the Engine Accessory Test. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. CHECK that the transmission is filled to the correct level. ADD fluid as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. INSPECT the filter. CLEAN or INSTALL a new filter as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CARRY OUT the torque converter service and replacement check. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. INSPECT the front pump. INSTALL a new front pump as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whine—pitch changes with vehicle speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Speedometer cable or gears. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR or INSTALL new cables or gears as necessary.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whine/moan type noise—pitch increases or changes with vehicle speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged engine or transmission mount. U-joints worn or damaged. Damaged or worn differential ring and pinion. Planetary gears nicked or chipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the powertrain/drivetrain mounts for damage. CARRY OUT Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing in this section. INSPECT the U-joints for wear or damage. INSTALL new U-joints as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. INSPECT the differential ring and pinion for damage. CARRY OUT the Checking Tooth Contact Pattern and Condition of the Ring and Pinion component test in this section. REPAIR or INSTALL a new differential ring and pinion as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. CHECK the planetary gears for damage. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whistle—noise is high pitched, constant. Changes in pitch with throttle position 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hydraulic pressure in the main control. Incorrect band/clutch apply pressure. Worn or damaged torque converter. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the main control. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CARRY OUT the line pressure tests. REPAIR or INSTALL components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CARRY OUT the torque converter service and replacement check. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clunk—occurs when shifting from PARK to a drive or reverse position 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged powertrain mounts. Damaged or worn pinion bearings. Worn or galled driveshaft slip yoke splines. Worn friction elements or excessive clutch pack end plate play. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> INSPECT the powertrain mounts for damage. INSTALL new mounts as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CHECK for abnormal bearing play or roughness. INSTALL new bearings as necessary. REFER to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles. CLEAN and INSPECT the splines of the yoke. INSTALL a new slip yoke as necessary. REFER to Section 205-01. INSPECT the transmission for wear. CHECK that all end play and clearances are within specification. REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bump—occurs when shifting from PARK to a drive or reverse position. Similar to Clunk but with no sound 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initial gear engagement. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acceptable condition.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buzz or hiss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incorrect driveline angles. Worn or damaged main control solenoids or valves. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK for correct driveline angles. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 205-00. Using a transmission tester, ACTIVATE the solenoids to duplicate sound. INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart—Transmission (Automatic) Noise/Vibration (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vibration—a high frequency (20-80 Hz) that is felt through the seat or gear shifter. Changes with engine speed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transmission cooler lines grounded out. Flexplate to torque converter nuts loose. Fluid filler tube grounded out. Shift cable incorrectly routed, grounded out or loose. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CHECK the transmission cooler lines. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK the flexplate. TIGHTEN to specification. REFER to Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions or Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions. CHECK the fluid filler tube. REPAIR as necessary. CHECK the shift cable. REPAIR as necessary. REFER to Section 307-05.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shutter or chatter—occurs with light to medium acceleration from low speeds or a stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Electrical inputs/outputs. Vehicle wiring harness. Incorrect inputs/outputs from the powertrain control module (PCM), digital transmission range (TR) sensor, brake pedal position (BPP) sensor, throttle position (TP) sensor, transmission speed sensor (TSS), output speed shaft (OSS) sensor or the torque converter clutch (TCC). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CARRY OUT a Torque Converter Clutch Operation Test. RUN on-board diagnostics or self-test. REFER to Section 307-01A for 4R100 transmissions or Section 307-01B for 4R70W transmissions. CLEAR the DTC's, road test and rerun on-board diagnostics or self-test.

Pinpoint Tests


The pinpoint tests are a step-by-step diagnostic process designed to determine the cause of a condition. It may not always be necessary to follow a pinpoint test to its conclusion. Carry out only the steps necessary to correct the condition. Then, test the system for normal operation. Sometimes, it is necessary to remove various vehicle components to gain access to the component requiring testing. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section for removal and installation procedures. Reinstall all components after verifying system operation is normal.

PINPOINT TEST A: BRAKE VIBRATION/SHUDDER

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
A1	ROAD TEST THE VEHICLE—LIGHT BRAKING	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that the wheel and tires are correct for the vehicle. Inspect the tires for abnormal wear patterns.• Road test the vehicle. Warm the brakes by slowing the vehicle a few times from 80-32 km/h (50 to 20 mph) using light braking applications. At highway speeds of 89-97 km/h (55-60 mph), apply the brake using a light pedal force.• Is there a vibration/shudder felt in the steering wheel, seat or brake pedal?		<p>Yes GO to A4.</p> <p>No GO to A2.</p>


(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST A: BRAKE VIBRATION/SHUDDER (Continued)**

Test Step	Result / Action to Take
A2 ROAD TEST THE VEHICLE—MODERATE TO HEAVY BRAKING	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Road test the vehicle. At highway speeds of 89-97 km/h (55-60 mph), apply the brake using a moderate to heavy pedal force. Is there a vibration/shudder? 	<p>Yes For vehicles with ABS, GO to A3. For vehicles with standard brakes, GO to A4.</p> <p>No Vehicle is OK. VERIFY condition with customer. TEST the vehicle for normal operation.</p>
A3 NORMAL ACTUATION OF THE ABS SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During moderate to heavy braking, noise from the hydraulic control unit (HCU) and pulsation in the brake pedal can be observed. Pedal pulsation coupled with noise during heavy braking or on loose gravel, bumps, wet or snowy surfaces is acceptable and indicates correct functioning of the ABS system. Pedal pulsation or steering wheel nibble (frequency is proportioned to the vehicle speed) indicates a concern with a brake or suspension component. Is the vibration/shudder vehicle speed sensitive? 	<p>Yes GO to A5.</p> <p>No The brake system is operating correctly.</p>
A4 APPLICATION OF THE PARKING BRAKE	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Begin at the front of the vehicle unless the vibration or shudder has been isolated to the rear. This test is not applicable to vehicles with drum-in-hat type parking brakes. For vehicles with drum-in-hat parking brakes, proceed to the next test. For all other vehicles, apply the parking brake to identify if the problem is in the front or rear brake. At highway speeds of 89-97 km/h (55-60 mph), lightly apply the parking brake until the vehicle slows down. Release the parking brake immediately after the test. Is there a vibration/shudder? 	<p>Yes GO to A8.</p> <p>No GO to A5.</p>
A5 CHECK THE FRONT WHEEL BEARINGS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the front wheel bearings. Refer to Wheel Bearing Check in this section. Are the wheel bearings OK? 	<p>Yes GO to A6.</p> <p>No INSPECT the wheel bearings. ADJUST or REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>
A6 CHECK THE FRONT SUSPENSION	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the front suspension for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Broken or loose bolts. Damaged springs. Worn or damaged upper and lower control arm bushings. Loose or rough front bearings. Uneven tire wear. Are all the suspension components in satisfactory condition? 	<p>Yes GO to A7.</p> <p>No REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>
A7 RESURFACE THE FRONT BRAKE DISCS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">  CAUTION: Do not use a bench lathe to machine brake discs. NOTE: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to machine the brake discs. After machining, make sure the brake disc meets the thickness specification. Resurface the front brake discs or drums. Refer to Brake Disc Machining in this section. Road test the vehicle. Is the vibration/shudder present? 	<p>Yes GO to A8.</p> <p>No Vehicle is OK.</p>

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST A: BRAKE VIBRATION/SHUDDER (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
A8	CHECK THE REAR SUSPENSION	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the rear suspension for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Broken or loose bolts. Damaged or worn springs or spring bushings. Worn or damaged upper and lower control arm bushings. Worn or damaged trailing arms. Loose or rough rear bearings. Uneven tire wear. Are all the suspension components in satisfactory condition? 	Yes GO to A9 . No REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.
A9	RESURFACE THE REAR BRAKE DISC OR DRUM	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  CAUTION: Do not use a bench lathe to machine brake discs. NOTE: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to machine the brake discs. After machining, make sure the brake disc meets the thickness specification. Resurface the front brake discs. Refer to Brake Disc Machining in this section. Road test the vehicle. Is the vibration/shudder present? 	Yes CHECK the front suspension for wear or damage. RESURFACE the front brake discs. TEST the system for normal operation. No Vehicle is OK.

PINPOINT TEST B: ENGINE TICKING NOISE

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
B1	CHECK FOR TICKING NOISE AT THE FUEL RAIL	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnect the first fuel line clip. Is the ticking noise gone? 	Yes CHECK for TSB for applicable vehicle. REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to B2 .
B2	CHECK FOR TICKING NOISE AT THE FUEL INJECTOR	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using an EngineEAR, listen at the fuel injectors by placing a probe on each injector. To isolate the faulty injector, disconnect the injector electrical connector and listen for the noise. Is the fuel injector the source of the ticking noise? 	Yes INSTALL a new fuel injector. REFER to Section 303-04A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-04B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to B3 .
B3	CHECK THE BELT TENSIONER FOR TICKING NOISE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the accessory drive. Check for the belt tensioner bottoming at end of travel or not at end of stroke. Using an EngineEAR, listen at the belt tensioner. Is the belt tensioner the source of the noise? 	Yes INSTALL a new belt tensioner. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to B4 .
B4	CHECK THE WATER PUMP FOR TICKING NOISE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using an EngineEAR, listen at the water pump for ticking noise. Is the water pump the source of the noise? 	Yes INSTALL a new water pump. REFER to Section 303-03A for standard cooling or Section 303-03B for supercharger cooling. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to B5 .

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST B: ENGINE TICKING NOISE (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
B5	CHECK FOR AN OBSTRUCTION OF THE COOLING FAN	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the cooling fan for obstructions. Check the cooling fan and shroud for wear or damage. Was there an obstruction or does the cooling fan show signs of damage? 	<p>Yes REPAIR or INSTALL a new cooling fan. REFER to Section 303-03A for standard cooling or Section 303-03B for supercharger cooling. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to B6.</p>
B6	CHECK THE OIL PUMP FOR TICKING NOISE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the oil pump using EngineEARs and probe at the oil filter adapter to verify the oil pump as a source. Is the oil pump the source of the noise? 	<p>Yes INSTALL a new oil pump. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to B7.</p>
B7	CHECK VALVE LIFTERS OR LASH ADJUSTERS FOR CORRECT OPERATION	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check valve lifter/lash adjuster for correct operation, using EngineEARs. Are the valve lifters/lash adjusters operating correctly? 	<p>Yes VERIFY customer concern. CONDUCT a diagnosis of other suspect components.</p> <p>No INSTALL a new valve lifter/lash adjuster(s). TEST the system for normal operation.</p>

PINPOINT TEST C: ACCESSORY DRIVE BEARING HOOT

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
C1	CHECK THE ACCESSORY DRIVE IDLER AND TENSIONER PULLEY BEARINGS	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure in this section. Key in START position. Place an EngineEAR probe directly on the pulley center post or bolt to verify which bearing is making the noise. Key in OFF position. Is either bearing making the noise? 	<p>Yes INSTALL a new pulley/idler. CARRY OUT the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure and TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect accessory drive components.</p>

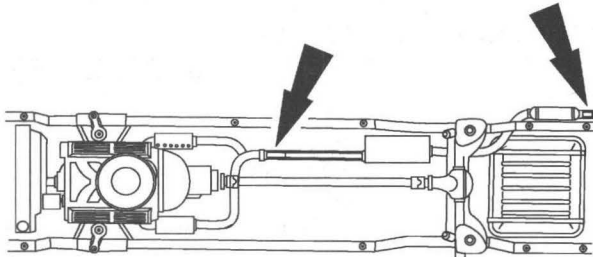
PINPOINT TEST D: POWER STEERING MOAN

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
D1	CHECK THE POWER STEERING SYSTEM	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure in this section. Key in START position. Turn the steering wheel while the noise is occurring and listen for changes in sound pitch or loudness. Key in OFF position. Does the sound pitch or loudness change while turning the steering wheel? 	<p>Yes GO to D2.</p> <p>No CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect accessory drive components.</p>
D2	VERIFY THE SOURCE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Place an EngineEAR probe near the power steering pump/reservoir while the noise is occurring. While an assistant turns the steering wheel, listen for changes in sound pitch or loudness. Key in OFF position. Does the sound pitch or loudness change while turning the steering wheel? 	<p>Yes VERIFY that the supply tube to the pump is unobstructed. CHECK the fluid condition and level. DRAIN the fluid and REFILL. REFER to Section 211-02. CARRY OUT the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure and TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No Normal system operation.</p>

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST E: ENGINE DRIVEN COOLING FAN MOAN**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
E1	CHECK THE ENGINE DRIVEN COOLING FAN AFTER A COLD SOAK	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure in this section. Key in START position. Assess the airflow. Raise the engine speed to 1500 rpm while listening for the moan to increase in proportion to the airflow. Key in OFF position. Does the moan increase in proportion to the airflow? 	<p>Yes TEST the fan for normal operation. If the fan tests normal, GO to E2. Otherwise, REPAIR as necessary.</p> <p>No Normal system operation.</p>
E2	CHECK THE ENGINE DRIVEN COOLING FAN AT NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Run the engine to normal operating temperature while listening for the moan to stop. Key in OFF position. Does the moan stop? 	<p>Yes Normal clutch operation.</p> <p>No INSTALL a new fan clutch. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>


PINPOINT TEST F: DRUMMING NOISE

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
F1	CHECK THE EXHAUST SYSTEM	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Increase the engine rpm until the noise is the loudest. Note the engine rpm. Key in OFF position. Add approximately 9 kg (20 lb) of weight to the exhaust system. First place the weight at the tail pipe and test, then place it at the front pipe.  <p>DF1768-A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Increase the engine rpm and listen for the drumming noise. Note the engine rpm if the noise occurs. Key in OFF position. Using an electronic vibration analyzer (EVA), determine the amount of vibration that occurs with the drumming noise. Is the noise/vibration reduced or eliminated, or does the noise/vibration occur at a different rpm? 	<p>Yes CARRY OUT Exhaust System Neutralizing in this section. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to F2.</p>
F2	POWERTRAIN/DRIVETRAIN MOUNT NEUTRALIZING	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing in this section. Test the system for normal operation. Is the noise reduced or eliminated? 	<p>Yes Vehicle OK. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No CONDUCT diagnosis of other suspect components.</p>

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST G: ENGINE TICKING, KNOCKING OR CONTINUOUS RATTLE**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
G1	CHECK FOR NOISE AT THE VALVE COVERS AND THE FRONT COVERS (OHC ENGINES)	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carry out the Vehicle Cold Soak Procedure in this section. Key in START position. NOTE: For a short-duration ticking noise, multiple engine starts may be necessary. <p>Using an EngineEAR, listen closely at the valve covers and the front covers (OHC engines) by placing the probe near the surface of the valve cover and then on the surface front cover.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in OFF position. Is the noise source apparent? 	<p>Yes REMOVE the appropriate cover and INSPECT for loose, worn/broken components. REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to G2.</p>
G2	CHECK FOR NOISE AT THE CYLINDER BLOCK	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Using an EngineEAR, listen closely at the cylinder block by placing a probe on or near each freeze plug. Key in OFF position. Is the noise source apparent? 	<p>Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary.</p> <p>No GO to G3.</p>
G3	CHECK FOR NOISE WHILE DISCONNECTING EACH FUEL INJECTOR ELECTRICAL CONNECTOR, ONE AT A TIME	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Key in START position. Disconnect each fuel injector electrical connector, one at a time, to decrease piston force and listen for the noise. Key in OFF position. Is the noise reduced or eliminated? 	<p>Yes INSTALL a new fuel injector. REFER to Section 303-04A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-04B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No INSPECT accessory drive or the transmission as a possible source.</p>

PINPOINT TEST H: FRONT SUSPENSION NOISE


Test Step		Result / Action to Take
H1	ROAD TEST THE VEHICLE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Test drive the vehicle. NOTE: An assistant will be needed for this road test. <p>During the road test, drive the vehicle over a rough road. Using ChassisEARS, determine from which area/component the noise is originating.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is there a squeak, creak or rattle noise? 	<p>Yes GO to H2.</p> <p>No The suspension system is OK. CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect systems.</p>
H2	INSPECT THE STEERING SYSTEM	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  WARNING: The electrical power to the air suspension system must be shut off prior to hoisting, jacking or towing an air suspension vehicle. This can be accomplished by turning off the air suspension switch. Failure to do so can result in unexpected inflation or deflation of the air springs, which can result in shifting of the vehicle during these operations. <p>Raise and support the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the steering system for wear or damage. Carry out a steering linkage test. Refer to Section 211-00. Inspect the tire wear pattern. Refer to Tire Wear Chart in Tire Wear Patterns and Frequency Calculations in this section. Are the steering components worn or damaged? 	<p>Yes REPAIR the steering system. INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to H3.</p>
H3	FRONT SHOCK ABSORBER/STRUT CHECK	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the front shock absorbers/strut mounts for loose bolts or nuts. Check the front shock absorbers/struts for wear or damage. Carry out a "bounce test" Are the front shock absorbers/struts loose or damaged? 	<p>Yes TIGHTEN to specifications if loose. INSTALL new front shock absorbers/struts if damaged. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to H4.</p>

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST H: FRONT SUSPENSION NOISE (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
H4	CHECK THE FRONT SPRINGS	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to H5.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the front spring and front spring mounts/brackets for wear or damage. Are the front springs or spring mounts/brackets worn or damaged? 	
H5	CHECK THE CONTROL ARMS/RADIUS ARMS	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to H6.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the control arm bushings for wear or damage. Inspect for twisted or bent control arms/radius arms. Are the control arms/radius arms damaged or worn? 	
H6	CHECK THE STABILIZER BAR/TRACK BAR	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No Suspension system OK. CONDUCT diagnosis on other suspect systems.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the stabilizer bar/track bar bushings and links for damage or wear. Check the stabilizer bar/track bar for damage. Check for loose or damaged stabilizer bar isolators or brackets. Are the stabilizer bar/track bar components loose, worn or damaged? 	

PINPOINT TEST I: REAR SUSPENSION NOISE

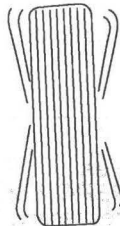
Test Step		Result / Action to Take
I1	ROAD TEST THE VEHICLE	Yes GO to I2. No The suspension system is OK. CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect systems.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Test drive the vehicle. NOTE: An assistant will be needed for this road test. During the road test, drive the vehicle over a rough road. Using ChassisEARS, determine from which area/component the noise is originating. Is there a squeak, creak or rattle noise? 	
I2	REAR SHOCK ABSORBER/STRUT CHECK	Yes TIGHTEN to specifications if loose. INSTALL new rear shock absorbers/struts if damaged. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to I3.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  WARNING: The electrical power to the air suspension system must be shut off prior to hoisting, jacking or towing an air suspension vehicle. This can be accomplished by turning off the air suspension switch. Failure to do so can result in unexpected inflation or deflation of the air springs, which can result in shifting of the vehicle during these operations. Raise and support the vehicle. Check the rear shock absorber/strut mounts for loose bolts or nuts. Check the rear shock absorbers/struts for damage. Carry out a shock absorber check. Are the rear shock absorbers/struts loose or damaged? 	
I3	CHECK THE REAR SPRINGS	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to I4.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the rear springs and rear spring mounts/brackets for wear or damage. Are the rear springs or spring mounts/brackets worn or damaged? 	
I4	CHECK THE CONTROL ARMS/TRAILING ARMS	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to I5.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the control arm/trailing arm bushings for wear or damage. Check for loose control arm/trailing arm bolts. Inspect for twisted or bent control arms/trailing arms. Are the control arms/trailing arms loose, damaged or worn? 	

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST I: REAR SUSPENSION NOISE (Continued)**

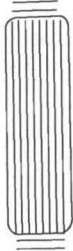
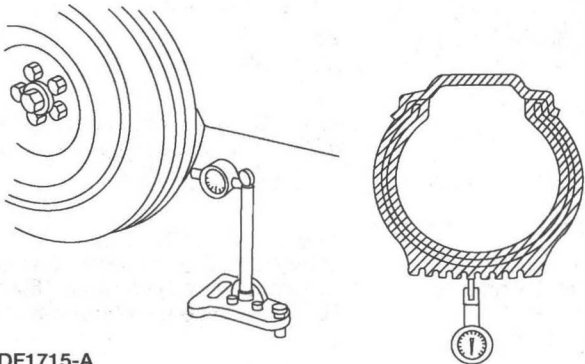
Test Step		Result / Action to Take
I5	CHECK THE STABILIZER BAR/TRACK BAR	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. Test the system for normal operation. No Suspension system OK. CONDUCT diagnosis on other suspect systems.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check the stabilizer bar/track bar bushings and links for damage or wear.• Check the stabilizer bar/track bar for damage.• Check for loose or damaged stabilizer bar isolators or brackets.• Are the stabilizer bar/track bar components loose, worn or damaged?		

PINPOINT TEST J: WHEEL AND TIRE

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
J1	ROAD TEST THE VEHICLE	Yes GO to J2. No The wheel and tires are OK. CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect systems.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">NOTE: Wheel or tire vibrations felt in the steering wheel are most likely related to the front wheel or tire. Vibration felt through the seat are most likely related to the rear wheel or tire. This may not always be true, but it can help to isolate the problem to the front or rear of the vehicle.Test drive the vehicle at different speed ranges.During the road test, if the vibration can be eliminated by placing the vehicle in neutral or is affected by the speed of the engine, the cause is not the wheels or tires.Is there a vibration and noise?		
J2	CHECK THE FRONT WHEEL BEARINGS	Yes GO to J3. No INSPECT the wheel bearings. ADJUST or REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Check the front wheel bearings. Refer to Wheel Bearing Check in this section.Are the wheel bearings OK?		
J3	INSPECT THE TIRES	Yes CORRECT the condition that caused the abnormal wear. INSTALL new tire(s). TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to J4.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Check the tires for missing weights.Check the wheels for damage.Inspect the tire wear pattern. Refer to the Tire Wear Patterns chart in this section.Do the tires have an abnormal wear pattern?		
J4	TIRE ROTATION DIAGNOSIS	Yes GO to J5. No CHECK the wheel and tire balance. CORRECT as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Spin the tires slowly and watch for signs of lateral runout. <div></div> <p>DF1713-A</p>		

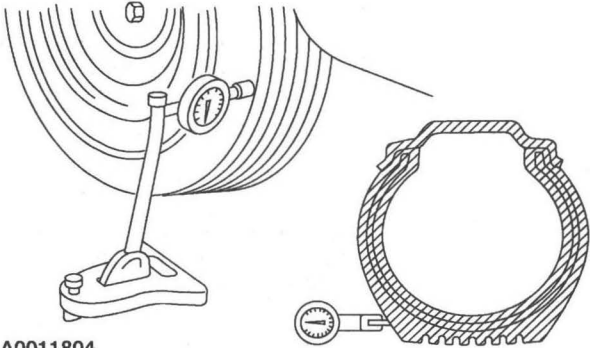
(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST J: WHEEL AND TIRE (Continued)**

	Test Step	Result / Action to Take
J4	TIRE ROTATION DIAGNOSIS (Continued)	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spin the tires slowly and watch for signs of radial runout.  <p>DF1714-A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are there signs of visual runout? 	
J5	RADIAL RUNOUT CHECK ON THE TIRE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the radial runout of the wheel and tire assembly. A typical specification for total radial runout is 1.14 mm (0.04 in).  <p>DF1715-A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the radial runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes GO to J8.</p> <p>No GO to J6.</p>
J6	RADIAL RUNOUT CHECK ON THE WHEEL	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the radial runout of the wheel. A typical specification for total radial runout is 1.14 mm (0.04 in). Is the radial runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes INSTALL a new tire. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to J7.</p>
J7	CHECK THE HUB/BRAKE DISC OR DRUM PILOT RUNOUT OR BOLT CIRCLE RUNOUT	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the pilot or bolt circle runout. A typical specification for radial runout is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pilot runout— less than 0.15 mm (0.006 inch). Bolt circle runout— less than 0.38 mm (0.015 inch). Is the radial runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes INSTALL a new wheel. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive front wheels, Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive front wheels or Section 204-02 for the rear wheels.</p>

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST J: WHEEL AND TIRE (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
J8	LATERAL RUNOUT CHECK ON THE TIRE	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the lateral runout of the wheel and tire assembly. A typical specification for total lateral runout is 1.14 mm (0.04 in).  <p>A0011804</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the lateral runout within specifications? 		<p>Yes Wheel and tires OK. CONDUCT diagnosis on other suspect systems.</p> <p>No GO to J9.</p>
J9	LATERAL RUNOUT CHECK ON THE WHEEL	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the lateral runout of the wheel. A typical specification for total radial runout is 1.14 mm (0.04 in). Is the lateral runout within specifications? 		<p>Yes INSTALL a new tire. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to J10.</p>
J10	CHECK THE FLANGE FACE LATERAL RUNOUT	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the flange face lateral runout. A typical specification for lateral runout is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hub/brake disc— less than 0.13 mm (0.005 inch). Axle shaft— less than 0.25 mm (0.010 inch). Is the lateral runout within specifications? 		<p>Yes INSTALL a new wheel. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. REFER to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive front wheels, Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive front wheels or Section 204-02 for the rear wheels.</p>

PINPOINT TEST K: HIGH SPEED SHAKE OR SHIMMY

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
K1	CHECK FOR FRONT WHEEL BEARING ROUGHNESS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chock the rear wheels. Raise and support the front end of the vehicle so that the front wheel and tire assemblies can spin. Spin the front tires by hand. Refer to Wheel Bearing Check in this section. Do the wheel bearings feel rough? 		<p>Yes INSPECT the wheel bearings. REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to K2.</p>
K2	CHECK THE END PLAY OF THE FRONT WHEEL BEARINGS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the end play of the front wheel bearings. Refer to Section 204-01A for 2-wheel drive front wheels, Section 204-01B for 4-wheel drive front wheels or Section 204-02 for the rear wheels. Is the end play OK? 		<p>Yes GO to K3.</p> <p>No ADJUST or REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>
K3	MEASURE THE LATERAL RUNOUT AND THE RADIAL RUNOUT OF THE FRONT WHEELS ON THE VEHICLE	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the lateral runout and the radial runout of the front wheels on the vehicle. GO to Pinpoint Test J. Are the measurements within specifications? 		<p>Yes GO to K4.</p> <p>No INSTALL new wheels as necessary and BALANCE the assembly. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>



(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST K: HIGH SPEED SHAKE OR SHIMMY (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
K4	MEASURE THE LATERAL RUNOUT OF THE FRONT TIRES ON THE VEHICLE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the lateral runout of the front tires on the vehicle. GO to Pinpoint Test J. Is the runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes GO to K5.</p> <p>No INSTALL new tires as necessary and BALANCE the assembly. TEST the system for normal operation.</p>
K5	MEASURE THE RADIAL RUNOUT OF THE FRONT TIRES ON THE VEHICLE	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the radial runout of the front tires on the vehicle. GO to Pinpoint Test J. Is the runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes BALANCE the front wheel and tire assemblies. If any tire cannot be balanced, INSTALL a new tire. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to K6.</p>
K6	MATCH MOUNT THE TIRE AND WHEEL ASSEMBLY	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mark the high runout location on the tire and also on the wheel. Break the assembly down and rotate the tire 180 degrees (halfway around) on the wheel. Inflate the tire and measure the radial runout. Is the runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes BALANCE the assembly. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No If the high spot is not within 101.6 mm (4 inches) of the first high spot on the tire, GO to K7.</p>
K7	MEASURE THE WHEEL FLANGE RUNOUT	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dismount the tire and mount the wheel on a wheel balancer. Measure the runout on both wheel flanges. Refer to Section 204-04. <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">DG0199-A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the runout within specifications? 	<p>Yes LOCATE and MARK the low spot on the wheel. INSTALL the tire, matching the high spot on the tire with the low spot on the wheel. BALANCE the assembly. TEST the system for normal operation. If the condition persists, GO to K8.</p> <p>No INSTALL a new wheel. CHECK the runout on the new wheel. If the new wheel is within limits, LOCATE and MARK the low spot. INSTALL the tire, matching the high spot on the tire with the low spot on the wheel. BALANCE the assembly. TEST the system for normal operation. If the condition persists, GO to K8.</p>
K8	CHECK FOR VIBRATION FROM THE FRONT OF THE VEHICLE	
	<p>⚠ WARNING: If only one drive wheel is allowed to rotate, speed must be limited to 55 km/h (34 mph) using the speedometer reading, since actual wheel speed will be twice that indicated on the speedometer. Exceeding a speed of 55 km/h (34 mph) or allowing the drive wheel to hang unsupported can result in tire disintegration or differential failure, which can cause serious personal injury and extensive vehicle damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spin the front wheel and tire assemblies with a wheel balancer while the vehicle is raised on a hoist. Feel for vibration in the front fender or while seated in the vehicle. Is the vibration present? 	<p>Yes SUBSTITUTE known good wheel and tire assemblies as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.</p> <p>No GO to K9.</p>

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST K: HIGH SPEED SHAKE OR SHIMMY (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
K9	CHECK FOR VIBRATION FROM THE REAR OF THE VEHICLE	Yes GO to K10. No TEST the system for normal operation.
	<p> WARNING: If only one drive wheel is allowed to rotate, speed must be limited to 55 km/h (34 mph) using the speedometer reading, since actual wheel speed will be twice that indicated on the speedometer. Exceeding a speed of 55 km/h (34 mph) or allowing the drive wheel to hang unsupported can result in tire disintegration or differential failure, which can cause serious personal injury and extensive vehicle damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chock the front wheels. • Raise and support the rear end of the vehicle so that the rear wheel and tire assemblies can spin. • Engage the drivetrain and carefully accelerate the drive wheels while checking for vibration. • Is the vibration present? 	
K10	CHECK THE DRIVETRAIN	Yes CHECK/TEST the drivetrain and driveline components. TEST the system for normal operation. No SUBSTITUTE known good wheel and tire assemblies as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation.
	<p> WARNING: If only one drive wheel is allowed to rotate, speed must be limited to 55 km/h (34 mph) using the speedometer reading, since actual wheel speed will be twice that indicated on the speedometer. Exceeding a speed of 55 km/h (34 mph) or allowing the drive wheel to hang unsupported can result in tire disintegration or differential failure, which can cause serious personal injury and extensive vehicle damage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove the rear wheel and tire assemblies. Refer to Section 204-04. • Secure the brake drums (if so equipped), by installing wheel hub bolt nuts, reversed. • Carefully accelerate the drivetrain while checking for vibration. • Is the vibration present? 	

PINPOINT TEST L: CLUTCH VIBRATION


Test Step		Result / Action to Take
L1	CHECK ENGINE COMPONENTS FOR GROUNDING	Yes REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to L2.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NOTE: Make sure the clutch is the cause of the vibration concern. The vibration should occur during clutch operation. The clutch can also be difficult to engage or disengage. Eliminate all related systems before checking the clutch components. • NOTE: Check the driveline angles and driveshaft runout before disassembling the clutch system. Refer to Section 205-00 for the correct driveline angle specifications. • Check the powertrain/drivetrain mounts, exhaust manifolds or other engine components for grounding on the chassis. • Are any mounts or engine components grounded? 	
L2	CHECK THE ACCESSORY DRIVE BELT	Yes DIAGNOSE the accessory drive components. No GO to L3.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove the accessory drive belt. • Does the vibration stop with the accessory drive belt removed? 	
L3	CHECK FOR LOOSE CLUTCH PRESSURE PLATE BOLTS	Yes TIGHTEN the bolts to specifications or if damaged, INSTALL a new clutch pressure plate. REFER to Section 308-01. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to L4.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for loose clutch pressure plate bolts. Inspect the clutch pressure plate for damage or for material between the pressure plate and flywheel. • Are there any loose bolts or damage? 	

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST L: CLUTCH VIBRATION (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
L4	CHECK THE CLUTCH DISC SPRINGS	Yes INSTALL a new clutch disc. REFER to Section 308-01. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to L5.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for worn, broken or loose clutch disc springs. Are the clutch springs worn, broken or loose? 	
L5	CHECK THE CLUTCH DISC SPLINES	Yes INSTALL a new clutch disc. REFER to Section 308-01. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to L6.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the clutch disc splines for damage or wear. Is there damage or wear? 	
L6	CHECK THE FLYWHEEL BOLTS	Yes TIGHTEN the bolts to specifications. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to L7.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for loose flywheel bolts. Are the bolts loose? 	
L7	CHECK THE FLYWHEEL SURFACE	Yes INSTALL a new flywheel. REFER to Section 303-01A for 4.2L engines or Section 303-01B for 4.6L and 5.4L engines. TEST the system for normal operation. No Clutch system normal. CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect systems.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the flywheel surface for wear or damage. Check the flywheel runout. Is there any damage or excessive wear? 	

PINPOINT TEST M: TRANSFER CASE VIBRATION

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
M1	INSPECT THE TRANSFER CASE	Yes TIGHTEN to specifications or INSTALL new bolts as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M2.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  WARNING: The electrical power to the air suspension system must be shut off prior to hoisting, jacking or towing an air suspension vehicle. This can be accomplished by turning off the air suspension switch. Failure to do so can result in unexpected inflation or deflation of the air springs, which can result in shifting of the vehicle during these operations. Inspect the transfer case for loose or missing mounting bolts. Check for fluid seepage between the transfer case and the transmission. Are the mounting bolts missing or loose? 	
M2	INSPECT THE REAR DRIVESHAFT	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL a new driveshaft as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M3.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Verify that the driveshaft and pinion flange index marks are aligned. Inspect the driveshaft for missing weights, damage or undercoating. Inspect the U-joints for freedom of movement. Check driveshaft runout and, if necessary, check the pinion flange runout. Is the driveshaft or U-joints worn or damaged or misaligned? 	

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**PINPOINT TEST M: TRANSFER CASE VIBRATION (Continued)**

Test Step		Result / Action to Take
M3	CHECK THE DRIVELINE ANGLES	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the rear driveshaft and pinion angles. Refer to Section 205-00. Measure the front driveshaft and pinion angles. Refer to the appropriate workshop manual for the service procedures. Are the driveline angles incorrect? 	Yes REPAIR as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M4.
M4	INSPECT THE FRONT DRIVESHAFT	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Verify that the driveshaft and pinion flange index marks are aligned. Inspect the front driveshaft for missing weights, damage or undercoating. Inspect the U-joints and slip yoke for freedom of movement. Check driveshaft runout and, if necessary, check the pinion flange runout. Refer to Section 205-00. Is the driveshaft or U-joints worn or damaged? 	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL a new driveshaft as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M5.
M5	ROAD TEST WITH THE FRONT DRIVESHAFT ONLY	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Index mark the driveshaft to the pinion flange and to the output shaft before removal. Remove the rear driveshaft. Plug the transfer case with an output shaft seal plug. NOTE: Shift the transfer case into 4WD high so the vehicle is driven by the front driveshaft only. Test drive the vehicle. Is the vibration gone? 	Yes INSTALL and BALANCE the rear driveshaft. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M6.
M6	ROAD TEST WITH THE REAR DRIVESHAFT ONLY	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Index mark the front driveshaft to the pinion flange. Remove the front driveshaft. Test drive the vehicle. Is the vibration gone? 	Yes INSTALL and BALANCE the front driveshaft. TEST the system for normal operation. No GO to M7.
M7	TRANSFER CASE TAIL SHAFT INSPECTION	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the splines of the output shaft for wear or damage. Inspect the splines of the driveshaft slip yoke for wear or damage. Are the splines worn or damaged? 	Yes REPAIR or INSTALL new components as necessary. TEST the system for normal operation. No The transfer case is OK. CONDUCT a diagnosis on other suspect systems.

Component Tests**Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve**


- Open the hood.
- NOTE:** Key symptom is elevated idle speed while noise is occurring.
NOTE: "Snapping" the throttle can induce the noise.
Verify the condition by operating the vehicle for a short time.
- Inspect the IAC valve. If physical evidence of contamination exists, install a new IAC valve.

- While the noise is occurring, either place an EngineEAR probe near the IAC valve and the inlet tube, or create a 6.35 mm (0.25 in)-12.7 mm (0.50 in) air gap between the inlet tube and the clean air tube. If the IAC valve is making the noise, install a new IAC valve.
- Test the vehicle for normal operation.

Steering Gear Grunt/Shudder Test

- Start and run the vehicle to operating temperature.
- Set engine idle speed to 1200 rpm.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

3.  **CAUTION: Do not hold the steering wheel against the stops for more than three to five seconds at a time. Damage to the power steering pump will occur.**

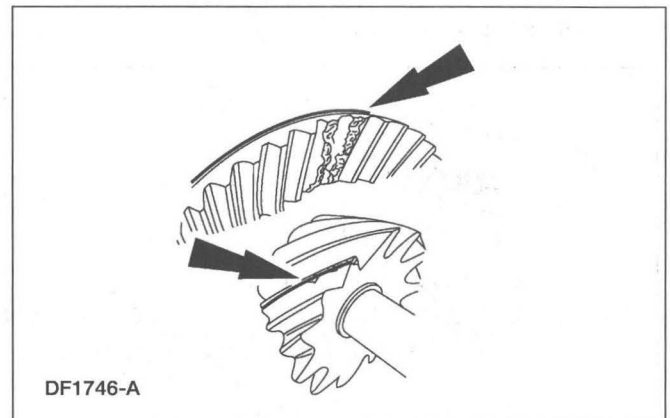
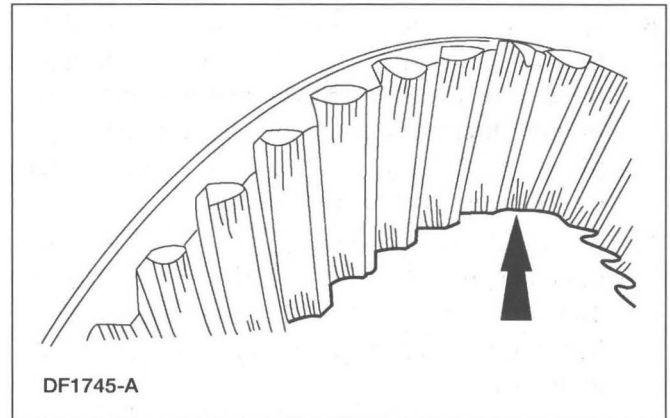
Rotate the steering wheel to the RH stop, then turn the steering wheel 90° back from that position. Turn the steering wheel slowly in a 15° to 30° arc.

4. Turn the steering wheel another 90°. Turn the steering wheel slowly in a 15° to 30° arc.
5. Repeat the test with power steering fluid at different temperatures.
6. If a light grunt is heard or a low (50-200 Hz) shudder is present, this is a normal steering system condition.
7. If a loud grunt is heard or a strong shudder is felt, fill and purge the power steering system.

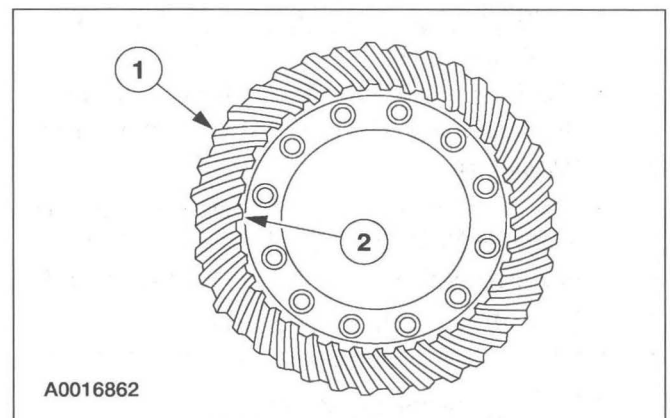
Checking Tooth Contact Pattern and Condition of the Ring and Pinion

There are two basic types of conditions that will produce ring and pinion noise. The first type is a howl or chuckle produced by broken, cracked, chipped, scored or forcibly damaged gear teeth and is usually quite audible over the entire speed range. The second type of ring and pinion noise pertains to the mesh pattern of the gear pattern. This gear noise can be recognized as it produces a cycling pitch or whine. Ring and pinion noise tends to peak in a narrow speed range or ranges, and will tend to remain constant in pitch.

1. Raise and support the vehicle. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
2. Drain the axle lubricant. Refer to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
3. Remove the carrier assembly or the axle housing cover depending on the axle type. Refer to Section 205-02A for Ford 8.8 rear axles, Section 205-02B for Ford 9.75 rear axles, Section 205-02C for Ford 10.25 rear axles or Section 205-03 for front axles.
4. Inspect the gear set for scoring or damage.



5. In the following steps, the movement of the contact pattern along the length is indicated as toward the "heel" or "toe" of the differential ring gear.



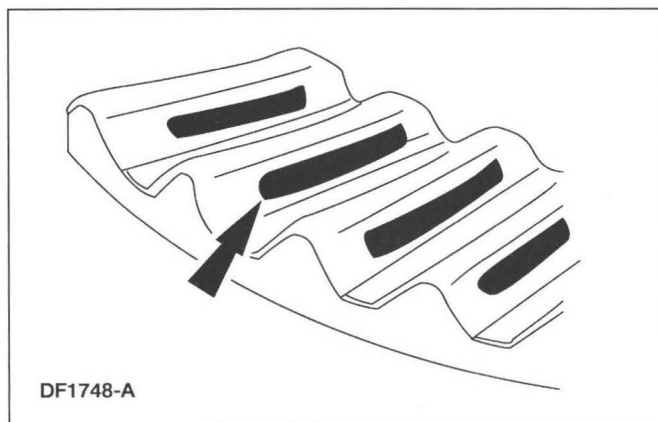
Item	Description
1	Heel
2	Toe

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

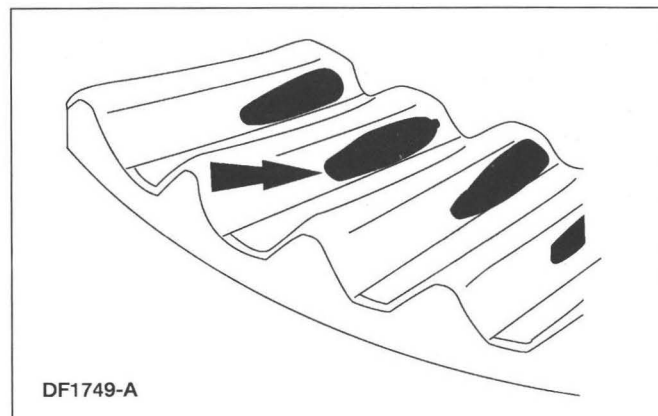
6. Apply a marking compound to a third of the gear teeth on the differential ring gear. Rotate the differential ring gear several complete turns in both directions until a good, clear tooth pattern is obtained. Inspect the contact patterns on the ring gear teeth.

7. A good contact pattern should be centered on the tooth. It can also be slightly toward the toe. There should always be some clearance between the contact pattern and the top of the tooth.

- Tooth contact pattern shown on the drive side of the gear teeth.

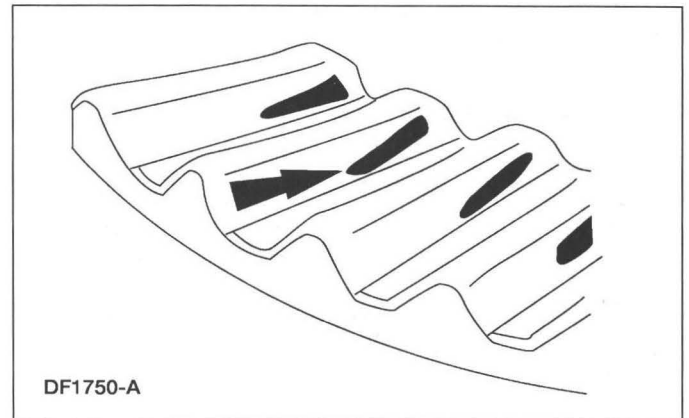


8. A high, thick contact pattern that is worn more toward the toe.
- Tooth contact pattern shown on the drive side of the gear teeth.
 - The high contact pattern indicates that the drive pinion is not installed deep enough into the carrier.
 - The differential ring gear backlash is correct, a thinner drive pinion shim is needed. A decrease will move the drive pinion toward the differential ring gear.



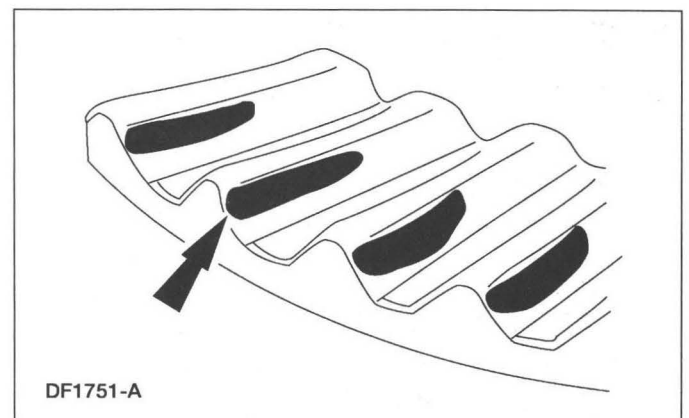
9. A high, thin contact pattern that is worn toward the toe.

- Tooth contact pattern shown on the drive side of the gear teeth.
- The drive pinion depth is correct. Increase the differential ring gear backlash.



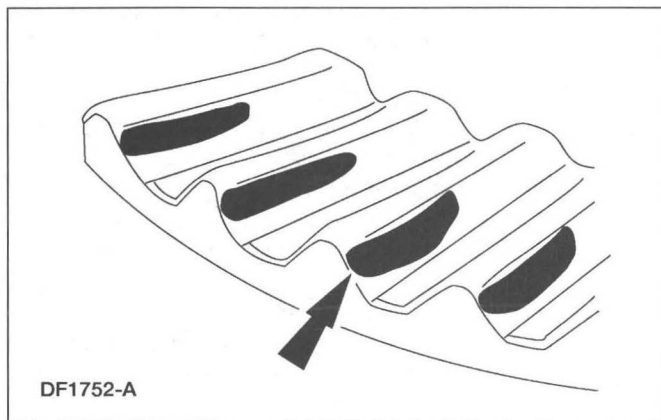
10. A contact pattern that is worn in the center of the differential ring gear tooth toward the heel.

- Tooth contact pattern shown on the drive side of the gear teeth.
- The low contact pattern indicates that the drive pinion is installed too deep into the carrier.
- The differential ring gear backlash is correct. A thicker drive pinion shim is needed.

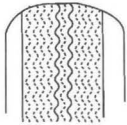
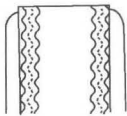
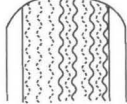
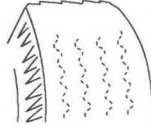

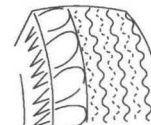
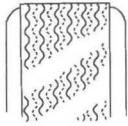
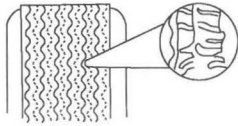


DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

11. A contact pattern that is worn at the top of the differential ring gear tooth toward the heel.
- Tooth contact pattern shown on the drive side of the gear teeth.
 - The pinion gear depth is correct. Decrease the differential ring gear backlash.



DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Tire Wear Patterns and Frequency Calculations****Tire Wear Chart**

TIRE WEAR	CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rapid wear at both shoulders. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tires underinflated. • Worn suspension components. • Excessive cornering speeds. • Lack of rotation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rapid wear at the center. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tires overinflated. • Lack of rotation. • Excessive toe on drive wheels. • Heavy acceleration on drive wheels.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wear at one shoulder. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toe adjustment out of specification. • Camber out of specification. • Damaged strut. • Damaged lower control arm.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Feather edges. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toe adjustment out of specification. • Damaged or worn tie rods. • Damaged spindle or knuckle.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bald spots or cupping. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unbalanced wheel. • Excessive radial runout. • Worn strut or shock absorber.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire scalloped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toe adjustment out of specification. • Camber out of specification. • Worn or damaged suspension components.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wear pattern - FWD vehicles. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive toe on non-drive wheels. • Lack of rotation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wear pattern - FWD vehicles. Edge of thread blocks worn. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive toe on non-drive wheels. • Lack of rotation.

DF1717-A

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Wheel and tire NVH concerns are directly related to vehicle speed and are not generally affected by acceleration, coasting or decelerating. Also, out-of-balance wheel and tires can vibrate at more than one speed. A vibration that is affected by the engine rpm, or is eliminated by placing the transmission in NEUTRAL is not related to the tire and wheel. As a general rule, tire and wheel vibrations felt in the steering wheel are related to the front tire and wheel assemblies. Vibrations felt in the seat or floor are related to the rear tire and wheel assemblies. This can initially isolate a concern to the front or rear.

Careful attention must be paid to the tire and wheels. There are several symptoms that can be caused by damaged or worn tire and wheels. Carry out a careful visual inspection of the tires and wheel assemblies. Spin the tires slowly and watch for signs of lateral or radial runout. Refer to the tire wear chart to determine the tire wear conditions and actions.

For a vibration concern, use the vehicle speed to determine tire/wheel frequency and rpm. Calculate tire and wheel rpm and frequency by carrying out and following:

- Measure the diameter of the tire.
 - Record the speed at which the vibration occurs.
 - Obtain the corresponding tire and wheel rpm and frequency from the Tire Speed and Frequency Chart.
- If the vehicle speed is not listed, divide the vehicle speed at which the vibration occurs by 16 km/h (10 mph). Multiply that number by 16 km/h (10 mph) tire rpm listed for that tire diameter in the chart. Then divide that number by 60. For example: a 40 mph vibration with 835 mm (33 in) tires. $40 \div 10 = 4$. Multiply 4 by 105 = 420 rpm. Divide 420 rpm by 60 seconds = 7 Hz at 40 mph.

Tire Speed and Frequency Chart

Tire Diameter	Tire RPM/Hz	Tire RPM/Hz	Tire RPM/Hz	Tire RPM/Hz
mm (inch)	@ 16 km/h (10 mph)	@ 80 km/h (50 mph)	@ 97 km/h (60 mph)	@ 113 km/h (70 mph)
483 (19)	182	910/15	1092/18	1274/21
508 (20)	173	865/14	1038/17	1211/20
533 (21)	165	825/14	990/16	1155/19
560 (22)	158	790/13	948/16	1106/18
585 (23)	151	755/13	906/15	1057/18
610 (24)	145	725/12	870/14	1015/17
635 (25)	139	695/12	834/14	973/16
660 (26)	134	670/11	804/13	938/16
685 (27)	129	645/11	774/13	903/15
710 (28)	124	620/10	744/12	868/14
735 (29)	119	595/10	714/12	833/14
760 (30)	115	575/10	690/11	805/13
785 (31)	111	555/9	666/11	777/13
810 (32)	108	540/9	648/11	756/13
835 (33)	105	525/9	630/10	735/12
864 (34)	102	510/8	612/10	714/12

Ford Motor Company

**TECHNICAL
SUPPORT OPERATIONS**
Ford Customer Service Division

DECEMBER 2002

LITHO IN U.S.A
AD-1888



FCS-12272-03-1

2003

Workshop Manual



License #84356800



F-150

VOLUME 2

Ford Motor Company

2003 F-150

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

GENERAL INFORMATION Volume 1

SERVICE INFORMATION

Identification Codes	100-01
Jacking and Lifting	100-02
Noise, Vibration and Harshness	100-04
Maintenance Schedule	100-03

CHASSIS Volume 1

SUSPENSION

Suspension System — General Information	204-00
Front Suspension — 4x2	204-01A
Front Suspension — 4x4	204-01B
Rear Suspension	204-02
Wheels and Tires	204-04

DRIVELINE

Driveline System — General Information	205-00
Driveshaft	205-01
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-02A
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
9.75-Inch Ring Gear	205-02B
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
10.25-Inch Ring Gear	205-02C
Front Drive Axle/Differential — Ford	
8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-03
Front Drive Halfshafts	205-04

BRAKE SYSTEM

Brake System — General Information	206-00
Drum Brake	206-02
Front Disc Brake	206-03
Rear Disc Brake	206-04
Parking Brake and Actuation	206-05
Hydraulic Brake Actuation	206-06
Power Brake Actuation	206-07
Anti-Lock Control — Rear	206-09A
Anti-Lock Control — 4-Wheel	206-09B

STEERING SYSTEM

Steering System — General Information	211-00
Power Steering	211-02
Steering Linkage	211-03
Steering Column	211-04
Steering Column Switches	211-05

POWERTRAIN Volume 2

ENGINE

Engine System — General Information	303-00
Engine — 4.2L	303-01A
Engine — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-01B
Engine Cooling	303-03A
Supercharger Cooling	303-03B
Fuel Charging and Controls — 4.2L	303-04A
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V)	303-04B
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
Natural Gas Vehicle	303-04C
Fuel Charging and Controls —	
Bi-Fuel Vehicles	303-04D
Accessory Drive	303-05
Starting System	303-06
Engine Ignition — 4.2L	303-07A
Engine Ignition — 4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V)	303-07B
Engine Emission Control	303-08
Intake Air Distribution and Filtering	303-12
Evaporative Emissions	303-13
Electronic Engine Controls	303-14

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Automatic Transmission — 4R100	307-01A
Automatic Transmission — 4R70W	307-01B
Transaxle/Transmission Cooling	307-02
Automatic Transaxle/Transmission	
External Controls	307-05

NOTE: The descriptions and specifications contained in this manual were in effect at the time this manual was approved for printing. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to discontinue models at any time, or change specifications or design without notice and without incurring any obligation.

PUBLICATIONS ORDERING INFORMATION

To obtain information about ordering additional copies of this publication or to order any other Ford or Lincoln/Mercury publications, call 1-800-782-4356. Available publications include workshop manuals, wiring diagrams, PC/ED Manuals and Owner Guides.

In addition, you can obtain a publications order form by writing to: Ford Publications, care of Helm Inc., P.O. Box 07150, Detroit, MI 48207.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company.



2003 F-150

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MANUAL TRANSMISSION, CLUTCH AND TRANSFER CASE

Manual Transaxle/Transmission and Clutch —	
General Information	308-00
Clutch	308-01
Clutch Controls	308-02
Manual Transaxle/Transmission	308-03
Transfer Case — General Information	308-07A
Transfer Case	308-07B

EXHAUST SYSTEM

Exhaust System	309-00
----------------------	--------

FUEL SYSTEM

Fuel System — General Information	310-00A
Fuel System — General Information —	
Natural Gas	310-00B
Fuel System — General Information —	
Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-00C
Fuel Tank and Lines	310-01A
Fuel Tank and Lines — Natural Gas	310-01B
Fuel Tank and Lines — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-01C
Acceleration Control	310-02
Speed Control	310-03

ELECTRICAL Volume 1

CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

Climate Control System — General Information	412-00
Air Distribution and Filtering	412-01
Heating and Ventilation	412-02
Air Conditioning	412-03
Control Components	412-04

INSTRUMENTATION AND WARNING SYSTEMS

Instrument Cluster and Panel Illumination	413-00
Instrument Cluster — Conventional	413-01A
Instrument Cluster — Natural Gas Vehicle	413-01B
Instrument Cluster — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	413-01C
Horn	413-06
Warning Devices	413-09

BATTERY AND CHARGING SYSTEM

Charging System — General Information	414-00
Battery, Mounting and Cables	414-01
Generator and Regulator	414-02

AUDIO SYSTEMS

Entertainment System — General Information	415-00
Audio Unit	415-01
Antenna	415-02
Speakers	415-03
Video System	415-07

LIGHTING

Exterior Lighting	417-01
Interior Lighting	417-02
Daytime Running Lamps	417-04

ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

Module Communications Network	418-00
Module Configuration	418-01

ELECTRONIC FEATURE GROUP

Anti-Theft — PATS	419-01
Remote Convenience	419-02
Multifunction Electronic Modules	419-10
Electronic Compass	419-11

BODY AND PAINT Volume 1

BODY

Body System — General Information	501-00
Front End Body Panels	501-02
Body Closures	501-03
Pickup Bed and Platform Body	501-04
Interior Trim and Ornamentation	501-05
Exterior Trim and Ornamentation	501-08
Rear View Mirrors	501-09
Seating	501-10
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms	501-11
Instrument Panel and Console	501-12
Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems	501-14
Wipers and Washers	501-16
Roof Opening Panel	501-17
Bumpers	501-19
Safety Belt System	501-20A
Supplemental Restraint System	501-20B

FRAME AND MOUNTING

Full Frame and Body Mounting	502-02
------------------------------------	--------

INDEX

INTRODUCTION

NOTE: The descriptions and specifications contained in this manual were in effect at the time this manual was approved for printing. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to discontinue models at any time, or change specifications or design without notice and without incurring any obligation.

IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICE

Appropriate service methods and procedures are essential for the safe, reliable operation of all motor vehicles as well as the personal safety of the individual doing the work. This manual provides general directions for performing service with tested, effective techniques. Following them will help assure reliability.

There are numerous variations in procedure, techniques, tools and parts for servicing vehicles, as well as in the skill of the individual doing the work. This manual cannot possibly anticipate all such variations and provide advice or cautions as to each. Accordingly, anyone who departs from the instructions provided in this manual must first establish that he compromises neither his personal safety nor the vehicle integrity by his choice of methods, tools or parts.

NOTES, CAUTIONS, AND WARNINGS

As you read through the procedures, you will come across **NOTES**, **CAUTIONS**, and **WARNINGS**. Each one is there for a specific purpose. **NOTES** give you added information that will help you to perform a particular procedure. **CAUTIONS** are given to prevent you from making an error that could damage the vehicle. **WARNINGS** remind you to be especially careful in those areas where carelessness can cause you personal injury. The following list contains some general **WARNINGS** that you should follow when you work on a vehicle.

- **ALWAYS WEAR SAFETY GLASSES FOR EYE PROTECTION.**
- **USE SAFETY STANDS WHENEVER A PROCEDURE REQUIRES YOU TO BE UNDER THE VEHICLE.**
- **MAKE SURE THAT THE IGNITION SWITCH IS ALWAYS IN THE OFF POSITION, UNLESS OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY THE PROCEDURE.**
- **SET THE PARKING BRAKE WHEN WORKING ON THE VEHICLE. IF YOU HAVE AN AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, SET IN PARK UNLESS INSTRUCTED OTHERWISE FOR A SPECIFIC OPERATION. IF YOU HAVE A MANUAL TRANSMISSION, IT SHOULD BE IN REVERSE (ENGINE OFF) OR NEUTRAL (ENGINE ON) UNLESS INSTRUCTED OTHERWISE FOR A SPECIFIC OPERATION. PLACE WOOD BLOCKS (4" X 4" OR LARGER) AGAINST THE FRONT AND REAR SURFACES OF THE TIRES TO HELP PREVENT THE VEHICLE FROM MOVING.**
- **OPERATE THE ENGINE ONLY IN A WELL-VENTILATED AREA TO AVOID THE DANGER OF CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING.**
- **KEEP YOURSELF AND YOUR CLOTHING AWAY FROM MOVING PARTS WHEN THE ENGINE IS RUNNING, ESPECIALLY THE DRIVE BELTS.**
- **TO PREVENT SERIOUS BURNS, AVOID CONTACT WITH HOT METAL PARTS SUCH AS THE RADIATOR, EXHAUST MANIFOLD, TAIL PIPE, THREE-WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER AND MUFFLER.**
- **DO NOT SMOKE WHILE WORKING ON A VEHICLE.**
- **TO AVOID INJURY, ALWAYS REMOVE RINGS, WATCHES, LOOSE HANGING JEWELRY AND LOOSE CLOTHING BEFORE BEGINNING TO WORK ON A VEHICLE.**
- **WHEN IT IS NECESSARY TO WORK UNDER THE HOOD, KEEP HANDS AND OTHER OBJECTS CLEAR OF THE RADIATOR FAN BLADES!**

Manual Table of Contents

SECTION 303-00 Engine System — General Information

CONTENTS	PAGE
SPECIFICATIONS	303-00-1
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
Engine	303-00-1
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
Engine	303-00-1
Inspection and Verification	303-00-2
Symptom Chart	303-00-3
Component Tests	303-00-6
Compression Test—Compression Gauge Check	303-00-7
Cylinder Leakage Detection	303-00-8
Oil Consumption Test	303-00-9
Intake Manifold Vacuum Test	303-00-10
Excessive Engine Oil Consumption	303-00-12
Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off—Valve Cover Removed	303-00-13
Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running	303-00-13
GENERAL PROCEDURES	
Sprockets	303-00-15
Rocker Arms — Cleaning	303-00-15
Rocker Arms — Inspection	303-00-16
Push Rods — Cleaning	303-00-16
Push Rods — Inspection	303-00-16
Camshaft Journal — Diameter	303-00-17
Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Push Rod Engines, Micrometer Method	303-00-17
Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Plastigage Method	303-00-17
Camshaft End Play — Push Rod Engines	303-00-18
Camshaft End Play — OHC Engines	303-00-18
Camshaft — Lobe Surface	303-00-19
Camshaft Lobe Lift	303-00-19
Camshaft Runout	303-00-19
Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Diameter	303-00-20
Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Taper	303-00-20
Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Clearance	303-00-21
Crankshaft End Play	303-00-21
Crankshaft Runout	303-00-22
Crankshaft — Connecting Rod Journal Taper, Out of Round	303-00-22
Cylinder Bore — Taper	303-00-23
Cylinder Bore — Out-of-Round	303-00-23
Piston Inspection	303-00-23
Piston — Pin to Bore Diameter	303-00-24
Piston — Diameter	303-00-24
Piston — to Cylinder Bore Clearance	303-00-24
Piston — Selection	303-00-24
Piston — Ring End Gap	303-00-25
Piston — Ring-to-Groove Clearance	303-00-25

CONTENTS**PAGE**

Piston — Pin Diameter	303-00-26
Connecting Rod — Cleaning	303-00-26
Connecting Rod — Large End Bore.....	303-00-27
Connecting Rod — Bushing Diameter	303-00-27
Connecting Rod — Bend	303-00-27
Connecting Rod — Twist.....	303-00-28
Connecting Rod — Piston Pin Side Clearance.....	303-00-28
Connecting Rod — Bearing Journal Clearance	303-00-28
Connecting Rod — Side Clearance	303-00-29
Roller Follower — Inspection.....	303-00-29
Valve Tappet — Inspection	303-00-30
Valve — Stem Diameter	303-00-30
Valve Stem to Valve Guide Clearance.....	303-00-30
Valve — Inspection	303-00-31
Valve — Guide Inner Diameter	303-00-31
Valve — Guide Reaming	303-00-32
Valve — Spring Installed Length	303-00-32
Valve — Spring Free Length	303-00-32
Valve — Spring Squareness	303-00-32
Valve Spring Strength	303-00-33
Valve — Seat Inspection	303-00-33
Valve — Seat Width	303-00-33
Valve — Seat Runout	303-00-34
Cylinder Head — Distortion	303-00-34
Cylinder Bore — Cleaning	303-00-34
Cylinder Block Core Plug Replacement	303-00-34
Spark Plug Hole Thread Repair	303-00-35
Spark Plug — Inspection	303-00-35
Exhaust Manifold — Inspection	303-00-37
Bearing — Inspection	303-00-38

SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

Item	Specification
Lubricants and Sealants	
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C153-H

General Specifications (Continued)

Item	Specification
Diesel engine oil	Refer to owner literature
Gasoline Engine Oil Dye 164-R3705	ESE-M99C103-B1
Threadlock® 262 E2FZ-19554-B	WSK-M2G351-A6

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

Engine

NOTE: This section contains information, steps and procedures that may not be specific to your engine.

This section covers general procedures and diagnosis and testing of the engine system, except for exhaust emission control devices, which are covered in the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis Manual.

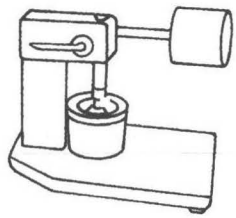

The engine incorporates the following features:

- a closed positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-08.
- an exhaust emission control system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-08.
- an evaporative emission control system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-13.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

Engine

Special Tool(s)

	Commercially Available Leakdown Tester —
	Quick Disconnect Compression Tester 134-R0212 or equivalent

(Continued)

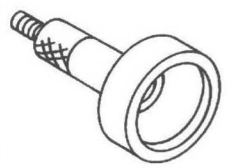

Some engines incorporate a fail-safe cooling system. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

The engine, fuel system, ignition system, emissions system and exhaust system all affect exhaust emission levels and must be maintained according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to the scheduled Maintenance Guide.

Correct engine identification is required to order parts. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

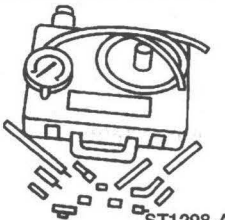



For complete vehicle and engine identification codes, refer to Section 100-01.

Special Tool(s)

	Dial Indicator Gauge Adapter 303-007 (TOOL-6565-AB) or equivalent
	Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture 100-002 (TOOL-4201-C) or equivalent

(Continued)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Special Tool(s)**

 ST1298-A	Engine Cylinder Leak Detection/Air Pressurization Kit 014-00708 or equivalent
 ST1296-A	Oil Pressure Gauge 303-088 (T73L-6600-A)
 ST1300-A	UV Leak Detector Kit 164-R0756 or equivalent
 ST1297-A	Vacuum/Pressure Tester 164-R0253 or equivalent

Material

Item	Specification
Gasoline Engine Oil Dye 164-R3705 or equivalent	ESE-M99C103-B1
Engine Oil	Refer to owner literature

Inspection and Verification

1. Verify the customer concern by operating the engine to duplicate the condition.
2. Visually inspect for obvious signs of mechanical damage. Refer to the following chart.

Visual Inspection Chart

Mechanical
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engine coolant leaks • Engine oil leaks • Fuel leaks • Damaged or severely worn parts • Loose mounting bolts, studs and nuts

3. If the inspection reveals obvious concerns that can be readily identified, repair as necessary.
4. If the concerns remain after the inspection, determine the symptoms and go to the Symptom Chart.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart****Symptom Chart**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Difficult starting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Damaged ignition system. • Damaged fuel system. • Damaged starting system. • Damaged charging system/battery. • Burnt valve. • Worn piston. • Worn piston rings. • Worn cylinder. • Damaged head gasket. • Damaged cooling system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • REFER to Section 414-00. • INSTALL a new valve. • INSTALL a new piston. • INSTALL new piston rings. • REPAIR or INSTALL a new cylinder block. • INSTALL a new head gasket. • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor idling 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vacuum leaks. • Malfunctioning or damaged ignition system. • Malfunctioning or damaged fuel system. • Damaged valve tappet or lash adjuster. • Damaged valve tappet guide or lash adjuster. • Incorrect valve-to-valve seat contact. • Damaged head gasket. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. • INSTALL a new valve tappet or lash adjuster. • INSTALL a new valve tappet guide or valve tappet. • REPAIR or INSTALL a new valve or valve seat. • INSTALL a new head gasket.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal combustion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Malfunctioning or damaged fuel system. Malfunctioning or damaged ignition system. Malfunctioning or damaged air intake system. Damaged valve tappet or lash adjuster. Damaged valve tappet guide or valve tappet. Burnt or sticking valve. Weak or broken valve spring. Carbon accumulation in combustion chamber. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. INSTALL a new valve tappet or lash adjuster. INSTALL a new valve tappet guide or valve tappet. REPAIR or INSTALL a new valve. INSTALL a new valve spring. ELIMINATE carbon buildup.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive oil consumption 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Leaking oil. Malfunctioning PCV system. Worn valve stem seal. Worn valve stem or valve guide. Sticking piston rings. Worn piston ring groove. Worn piston or cylinder. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR oil leakage. REPAIR or INSTALL new necessary components. INSTALL a new valve stem seal. INSTALL a new valve and valve guide. REPAIR or INSTALL new piston rings. INSTALL a new piston and piston pin. REPAIR or INSTALL a new piston or cylinder block.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Leaking exhaust system. Incorrect drive belt tension. Malfunctioning generator bearing. Malfunctioning water pump bearing. Malfunctioning or damaged cooling system. Malfunctioning or damaged fuel system. Loose timing chain/belt (6268). Damaged timing chain tensioner (6L266). Excessive main bearing clearance. Seized or heat damaged crankshaft main bearing. Excessive crankshaft end play. Excessive connecting rod bearing clearance. Heat damaged connecting rod bearing (6211). Damaged connecting rod bushing (6207). Worn cylinder. Worn piston (6108) or piston pin (6135). Damaged piston rings. Bent connecting rod. Malfunctioning valve tappet (6500) or lash adjuster. Excessive valve tappet or lash adjuster clearance. Broken valve spring (6513). Excessive valve guide clearance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> REPAIR exhaust leakage. REFER to Section 303-05. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 414 for the procedure. REFER to Section 303-03A. REFER to Section 303-03A. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. ADJUST or INSTALL a new timing chain/belt. INSTALL a new timing chain tensioner. ADJUST clearance or INSTALL a new crankshaft main bearing (6333). INSTALL a new crankshaft main bearing. INSTALL a new thrust bearing or crankshaft (6303). INSTALL a new connecting rod bearing or connecting rod (6200). INSTALL a new connecting rod bearing. INSTALL a new connecting rod bushing. REPAIR or INSTALL a new cylinder block (6010). INSTALL a new piston or piston pin. INSTALL new piston rings. INSTALL a new connecting rod. INSTALL a new valve tappet or lash adjuster. ADJUST clearance or INSTALL a new valve tappet guide or valve tappet. INSTALL a new valve spring. ADJUST clearance or INSTALL a new valve guide (6510) or valve.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Symptom Chart (Continued)**

Condition	Possible Sources	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insufficient power 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Malfunctioning or damaged ignition system. Malfunctioning or damaged fuel system. Malfunctioning or damaged air intake system. Damaged or plugged exhaust system. Incorrect tire size. Dragging brakes. Slipping transmission. Malfunctioning valve tappet or lash adjuster. Damaged valve tappet guide or valve tappet. Compression leakage at valve seat. Seized valve stem. Weak or broken valve spring. Worn or damaged camshaft. Damaged head gasket (6051). Cracked or distorted cylinder head. Damaged, worn or sticking piston ring(s). Worn or damaged piston. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure. REFER to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual. INSPECT exhaust system. REFER to Section 204-04. REFER to Section 206-00. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 307 for the procedure. INSTALL a new valve tappet or lash adjuster. INSTALL a new valve tappet guide or valve tappet. REPAIR or INSTALL a new valve, valve seat or cylinder head (6049). INSTALL a new valve. INSTALL a new valve spring. INSTALL a new camshaft. INSTALL a new head gasket. INSTALL a new cylinder head. REPAIR or INSTALL a new piston ring(s). INSTALL a new piston and piston pin.

Component Tests**Engine Oil Leaks**

NOTE: When diagnosing engine oil leaks, the source and location of the leak must be positively identified prior to repair.

Prior to carrying out this procedure, clean all sealing surface areas with a suitable solvent to remove all traces of oil.

Engine Oil Leaks—Fluorescent Oil Additive Method

Use the UV Leak Detector Kit to carry out the following procedure for oil leak diagnosis.

1. Add gasoline engine oil dye. Use a minimum 14.8 ml (0.5 ounce) to a maximum 29.6 ml (1 ounce) of fluorescent additive to all engines. If the oil is not premixed, fluorescent additive must first be added to crankcase.
2. Run the engine for 15 minutes. Stop the engine and inspect all seal and gasket areas for leaks using the UV Leak Detector Kit. A clear bright yellow or orange area will identify the leak. For extremely small leaks, several hours may be required for the leak to appear.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Leakage Points—Underhood

Examine the following areas for oil leakage:

- valve cover gaskets
- intake manifold gaskets
- cylinder head gaskets
- oil bypass filter
- oil filter adapter
- engine front cover
- oil filter adapter and filter body
- oil level indicator tube connection
- oil pressure sensor

Leakage Points—Under Engine—With Vehicle on Hoist

- oil pan gaskets (6710)
- oil pan sealer
- oil pan rear seal (6723)
- engine front cover gasket
- crankshaft front seal (6700)
- crankshaft rear oil seal (6701)
- crankshaft main bearing cap side bolts
- oil filter adapter and filter body
- oil cooler, if equipped

Leakage Points—With Transmission and Flywheel Removed

- crankshaft rear oil seal
- rear main bearing cap parting line
- rear main bearing cap and seals
- flywheel mounting bolt holes (with flywheel installed)
- camshaft rear bearing covers (6266) or pipe plugs at the end of oil passages

Oil leaks at crimped seams in sheet metal parts and cracks in cast or stamped parts can be detected when using the dye method.

Compression Test—Compression Gauge Check

1. Make sure the oil in the crankcase is of the correct viscosity and at the correct level and that the battery (10655) is correctly charged. Operate the vehicle until the engine is at normal operating temperature. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position, then remove all the spark plugs (12405).
2. Set the throttle plates in the wide-open position.
3. Install a compression gauge such as the Compression Tester in the No. 1 cylinder.
4. Install an auxiliary starter switch in the starting circuit. With the ignition switch in the OFF position, and using the auxiliary starter switch, crank the engine a minimum of five compression strokes and record the highest reading. Note the approximate number of compression strokes required to obtain the highest reading.
5. Repeat the test on each cylinder, cranking the engine approximately the same number of compression strokes.

Compression Test—Test Results

The indicated compression pressures are considered within specification if the lowest reading cylinder is at least 75 percent of the highest reading. Refer to the Compression Pressure Limit Chart.

Compression Pressure Limit Chart

Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure
924 kPa (134 psi)	696 kPa (101 psi)	1131 kPa (164 psi)	848 kPa (123 psi)	1338 kPa (194 psi)	1000 kPa (146 psi)	1544 kPa (224 psi)	1158 kPa (168 psi)
938 kPa (136 psi)	703 kPa (102 psi)	1145 kPa (166 psi)	855 kPa (124 psi)	1351 kPa (196 psi)	1014 kPa (147 psi)	1558 kPa (226 psi)	1165 kPa (169 psi)
952 kPa (138 psi)	717 kPa (104 psi)	1158 kPa (168 psi)	869 kPa (126 psi)	1365 kPa (198 psi)	1020 kPa (148 psi)	1572 kPa (228 psi)	1179 kPa (171 psi)

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Compression Pressure Limit Chart (Continued)**

Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure	Maximum Pressure	Minimum Pressure
965 kPa (140 psi)	724 kPa (106 psi)	1172 kPa (170 psi)	876 kPa (127 psi)	1379 kPa (200 psi)	1034 kPa (150 psi)	1586 kPa (230 psi)	1186 kPa (172 psi)
979 kPa (142 psi)	738 kPa (107 psi)	1186 kPa (172 psi)	889 kPa (129 psi)	1303 kPa (202 psi)	1041 kPa (151 psi)	1600 kPa (232 psi)	1200 kPa (174 psi)
933 kPa (144 psi)	745 kPa (109 psi)	1200 kPa (174 psi)	903 kPa (131 psi)	1407 kPa (204 psi)	1055 kPa (153 psi)	1055 kPa (153 psi)	1207 kPa (175 psi)
1007 kPa (146 psi)	758 kPa (110 psi)	1214 kPa (176 psi)	910 kPa (132 psi)	1420 kPa (206 psi)	1062 kPa (154 psi)	1627 kPa (154 psi)	1220 kPa (177 psi)
1020 kPa (148 psi)	765 kPa (111 psi)	1227 kPa (178 psi)	917 kPa (133 psi)	1434 kPa (208 psi)	1075 kPa (156 psi)	1641 kPa (238 psi)	1227 kPa (178 psi)
1034 kPa (150 psi)	779 kPa (113 psi)	1241 kPa (180 psi)	931 kPa (135 psi)	1448 kPa (210 psi)	1083 kPa (157 psi)	1655 kPa (240 psi)	1241 kPa (180 psi)
1048 kPa (152 psi)	786 kPa (114 psi)	1255 kPa (182 psi)	936 kPa (136 psi)	1462 kPa (212 psi)	1089 kPa (158 psi)	1669 kPa (242 psi)	1248 kPa (181 psi)
1062 kPa (154 psi)	793 kPa (115 psi)	1269 kPa (184 psi)	952 kPa (138 psi)	1476 kPa (214 psi)	1103 kPa (160 psi)	1682 kPa (244 psi)	1262 kPa (183 psi)
1076 kPa (156 psi)	807 kPa (117 psi)	1282 kPa (186 psi)	965 kPa (140 psi)	1489 kPa (216 psi)	1117 kPa (162 psi)	1696 kPa (246 psi)	1269 kPa (184 psi)
1089 kPa (158 psi)	814 kPa (118 psi)	1296 kPa (188 psi)	972 kPa (141 psi)	1503 kPa (218 psi)	1124 kPa (163 psi)	1710 kPa (248 psi)	1202 kPa (186 psi)
1103 kPa (160 psi)	827 kPa (120 psi)	1310 kPa (190 psi)	979 kPa (142 psi)	1517 kPa (220 psi)	1138 kPa (165 psi)	1724 kPa (250 psi)	1289 kPa (187 psi)
1110 kPa (161 psi)	834 kPa (121 psi)	1324 kPa (192 psi)	993 kPa (144 psi)	1631 kPa (222 psi)	1145 kPa (166 psi)	—	—

If one or more cylinders reads low, squirt approximately one tablespoon of engine oil on top of the pistons in the low-reading cylinders. Repeat the compression pressure check on these cylinders.

Compression Test—Interpreting Compression Readings

1. If compression improves considerably, piston rings are faulty.
2. If compression does not improve, valves are sticking or seating incorrectly.
3. If two adjacent cylinders indicate low compression pressures and squirting oil on each piston does not increase compression, the head gasket may be leaking between cylinders. Engine oil or coolant in cylinders could result from this condition.

Use the Compression Pressure Limit Chart when checking cylinder compression so that the lowest reading is within 75 percent of the highest reading.

Cylinder Leakage Detection

When a cylinder produces a low reading, use of the Engine Cylinder Leak Detection/Air Pressurization Kit will be helpful in pinpointing the exact cause.

The leakage detector is inserted in the spark plug hole, the piston is brought up to dead center on the compression stroke, and compressed air is admitted.

Once the combustion chamber is pressurized, a special gauge included in the kit will read the percentage of leakage. Leakage exceeding 20 percent is excessive.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

While the air pressure is retained in the cylinder, listen for the hiss of escaping air. A leak at the intake valve (6507) will be heard in the throttle body (9E926). A leak at the exhaust valve (6505) can be heard at the tail pipe. Leakage past the piston rings will be audible at the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) connection. If air is passing through a blown head gasket to an adjacent cylinder, the noise will be evident at the spark plug hole of the cylinder into which the air is leaking. Cracks in the cylinder block or gasket leakage into the cooling system may be detected by a stream of bubbles in the radiator (8005).

Oil Consumption Test

The following diagnostic procedure is used to determine the source of excessive internal oil consumption.

1. **NOTE:** Oil use is normally greater during the first 16,100 km (10,000 miles) of service. As mileage increases, oil use generally decreases. Vehicles in normal service should get at least 1,450 km per liter (900 miles per quart) after 16,000 km (10,000 miles) of service. High speed driving, towing, high ambient temperature and other factors may result in greater oil use.
Define excessive oil consumption, such as the number of miles driven per liter (quart) of oil used. Also determine customer's driving habits, such as sustained high speed operation, towing, extended idle and other considerations.
2. Verify that the engine has no external oil leak as described under Engine Oil Leaks in the Diagnosis and Testing portion of this section.
3. Verify that the engine has the correct oil level dipstick (6750).
4. Verify that the engine is not being run in an overfilled condition. Check the oil level at least five minutes after a hot shutdown with the vehicle parked on a level surface. In no case should the level be above MAX or the letter F in FULL. If significantly overfilled, carry out Steps 6a through 6d.
5. Verify the spark plugs are not oil saturated. If the spark plugs are oil saturated and compression is good it can be assumed the valve seals or valve guides are at fault.
6. Carry out an oil consumption test:
 - a. Drain the engine oil, remove the oil bypass filter (6714) and refill with one liter (quart) less than the recommended amount.
 - b. Run the engine for three minutes (10 minutes if cold), and allow the oil to drain back for at least five minutes with the vehicle on a level surface.
 - c. Remove oil level dipstick and wipe clean. (Do not wipe with anything contaminated with silicone compounds.) Reinstall the oil level dipstick, being sure to seat it firmly in the oil level indicator tube (6754). Remove the oil level dipstick and draw a mark on the back (unmarked) surface at the indicated oil level. This level should be about the same as the MIN or ADD mark on the face of the oil level dipstick.
 - d. Add one liter (quart) of oil. Restart the engine and allow to idle for at least two minutes. Shut off the engine and allow the oil to drain back for at least five minutes. Mark the oil level dipstick, using the procedure above.
 - e. Record the vehicle mileage.
 - f. Instruct the customer to drive the vehicle as usual and perform the following:
 - Check the oil level regularly at intervals of 160 to 240 km (100-150 miles).
 - Return to the service point when the oil level drops below the lower (MIN or ADD) mark on the oil level dipstick.
 - Add only full liters (quarts) of the same oil in an emergency. Note the mileage at which the oil is added.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

- g. Check the oil level under the same conditions and at the same location as in Steps 6c and 6d.
 - Measure the distance from the oil level to the UPPER mark on the oil level dipstick and record.
 - Measure the distance between the two scribe marks and record.
 - Divide the first measurement by the second.
 - Divide the distance driven during the oil test by the result. This quantity is the approximate oil consumption rate in kilometers per liter or in miles per quart.
- h. If the oil consumption rate is unacceptable, go to Step 7.
- 7. Check the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) system. Make sure the system is not plugged.
- 8. Check for plugged oil drain-back holes in the cylinder heads and cylinder block.
- 9. If the condition still exists after performing the above steps, go to Step 10.
- 10. Perform a cylinder compression test or perform a cylinder leak detection test with Engine Cylinder Leak Detection/Air Pressurization Kit. This can help determine the source of oil consumption such as valves, piston rings or other areas.
- 11. **NOTE:** After determining if new parts should be installed, make sure correct parts are used. Check valve guides for excessive guide clearance. Install new all valve stem seals (6571) after verifying valve guide clearance.
- 12. Worn or damaged internal engine components can cause excessive oil consumption. Small deposits of oil on the tips of spark plugs can be a clue to internal oil consumption. If internal oil consumption still persists, proceed as follows:
 - a. Remove the engine from the vehicle and place it on an engine work stand. Remove the intake manifolds (9424), cylinder heads, oil pan (6675) and oil pump (6600).

- b. Check piston ring clearance, ring gap and ring orientation. Repair as necessary.
 - c. Check for excessive bearing clearance. Repair as necessary.
13. Repeat the oil consumption test (Step 6) to confirm the oil consumption concern has been resolved.

Intake Manifold Vacuum Test

Bring the engine to normal operating temperature. Connect the Vacuum/Pressure Tester to the intake manifold. Run the engine at the specified idle speed.

The vacuum gauge should read between 51-74 kPa (15-22 in-Hg) depending upon the engine condition and the altitude at which the test is performed. Subtract 4.0193 kPa (1 in-Hg) from the specified reading for every 304.8 m (1,000 feet) of elevation above sea level.

The reading should be steady. If necessary, adjust the gauge damper control (where used) if the needle is fluttering rapidly. Adjust the damper until the needle moves easily without excessive flutter.

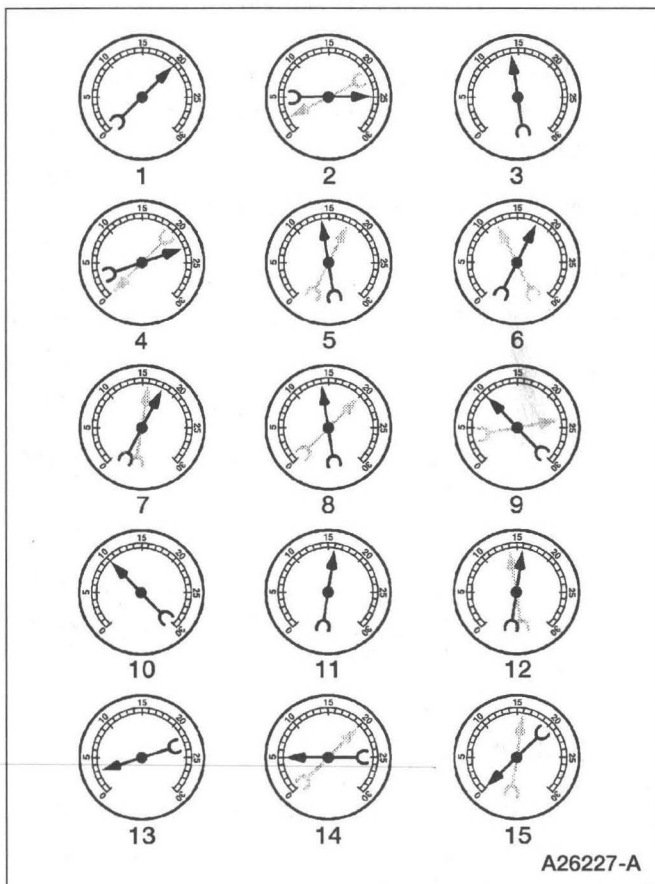
Intake Manifold Vacuum Test—Interpreting Vacuum Gauge Readings

A careful study of the vacuum gauge reading while the engine is idling will help pinpoint trouble areas. Always conduct other appropriate tests before arriving at a final diagnostic decision. Vacuum gauge readings, although helpful, must be interpreted carefully.

Most vacuum gauges have a normal band indicated on the gauge face.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

The following are potential gauge readings. Some are normal; others should be investigated further.



1. **NORMAL READING:** Needle between 51-74 kPa (15-22 in-Hg) and holding steady.
2. **NORMAL READING DURING RAPID ACCELERATION AND DECELERATION:** When the engine is rapidly accelerated (dotted needle), the needle will drop to a low reading (not to zero). When the throttle is suddenly released, the needle will snap back up to a higher than normal figure.
3. **NORMAL FOR HIGH-LIFT CAMSHAFT WITH LARGE OVERLAP:** The needle will register as low as 51 kPa (15 in-Hg) but will be relatively steady. Some oscillation is normal.
4. **WORN RINGS OR DILUTED OIL:** When the engine is accelerated (dotted needle), the needle drops to 0 kPa (0 in-Hg). Upon deceleration, the needle runs slightly above 74 kPa (22 in-Hg).
5. **STICKING VALVES:** When the needle (dotted) remains steady at a normal vacuum but occasionally flicks (sharp, fast movement) down and back about 13 kPa (4 in-Hg), one or more valves may be sticking.
6. **BURNED OR WARPED VALVES:** A regular, evenly-spaced, downscale flicking of the needle indicates one or more burned or warped valves. Insufficient hydraulic lash adjuster or hydraulic lash adjuster (HLA) clearance will also cause this reaction.
7. **POOR VALVE SEATING:** A small but regular downscale flicking can mean one or more valves are not seating.
8. **WORN VALVE GUIDES:** When the needle oscillates over about a 13 kPa (4 in-Hg) range at idle speed, the valve guides could be worn. As engine speed increases, the needle will become steady if guides are responsible.
9. **WEAK VALVE SPRINGS:** When the needle oscillation becomes more violent as engine rpm is increased, weak valve springs are indicated. The reading at idle could be relatively steady.
10. **LATE VALVE TIMING:** A steady but low reading could be caused by late valve timing.
11. **IGNITION TIMING RETARDING:** Retarded ignition timing will produce a steady but somewhat low reading.
12. **INSUFFICIENT SPARK PLUG GAP:** When spark plugs are gapped too close, a regular, small pulsation of the needle can occur.
13. **INTAKE LEAK:** A low, steady reading can be caused by an intake manifold or throttle body gasket leak.
14. **BLOWN HEAD GASKET:** A regular drop of fair magnitude can be caused by a blown head gasket or warped cylinder head-to-cylinder block surface.
15. **RESTRICTED EXHAUST SYSTEM:** When the engine is first started and is idled, the reading may be normal, but as the engine rpm is increased, the back pressure caused by a clogged muffler (5230), kinked tail pipe or other concerns will cause the needle to slowly drop to 0 kPa (0 in-Hg). The needle then may slowly rise. Excessive exhaust clogging will cause the needle to drop to a low point even if the engine is only idling.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

16. When vacuum leaks are indicated, search out and correct the cause. Excess air leaking into the system will upset the fuel mixture and cause concerns such as rough idle, missing on acceleration or burned valves. If the leak exists in an accessory unit such as the power brake booster (2005), the unit will not function correctly. Always fix vacuum leaks.

Excessive Engine Oil Consumption

The amount of oil an engine uses will vary with the way the vehicle is driven in addition to normal engine-to-engine variation. This is especially true during the first 16,100 km (10,000 miles) when a new engine is being broken in or until certain internal engine components become conditioned. Vehicles used in heavy-duty operation may use more oil. The following are examples of heavy-duty operation:

- trailer towing applications
- severe loading applications
- sustained high speed operation

Engines need oil to lubricate the following internal components:

- cylinder block cylinder walls
- pistons and piston, pin and rings (6102)
- intake and exhaust valve stems
- intake and exhaust valve guides
- all internal engine components

When the pistons move downward, a thin film of oil is left on the cylinder walls. As the vehicle is operated, some oil is also drawn into the combustion chambers past the intake and exhaust valve stem seals and burned.

The following is a partial list of conditions that can affect oil consumption rates:

- engine duty cycle
- operator driving habits
- ambient temperature
- quality and viscosity of the oil

Operation under varying conditions can frequently be misleading. A vehicle that has been run for several thousand miles on short trips or in below-freezing ambient temperatures may have consumed a “normal” amount of oil. However, when checking the engine oil level, it may measure up to the FULL or MAX on the oil level dipstick due to dilution (condensation and fuel) in the engine crankcase. The vehicle might then be driven at high speeds on the highway where the condensation and fuel boil off. The next time the engine oil is checked, it may appear that a liter (quart) of oil was used in about 160 km (100 miles). This perceived 160 km (100 miles) per liter (quart) oil consumption rate causes customer concern even though the actual overall oil consumption rate is about 2,400 km (1,500 miles) per liter (quart).

Make sure the selected engine oil meets the current recommended API performance category with SAE viscosity grade as shown in the vehicle Owner's Guide. It is also important that the engine oil is changed at the intervals specified. Refer to the vehicle Owner's Guide.

Oil Pressure Test

1. Disconnect and remove the oil pressure sensor (9278) from the engine.
2. Connect the Oil Pressure Gauge to the oil pressure sender oil galley port.
3. Run the engine until normal operating temperature is reached.
4. Run the engine at the specified rpm and record the gauge reading.
5. The oil pressure should be within specifications; refer to the specification chart in the appropriate engine section.
6. If the pressure is not within specification, check the following possible sources:
 - insufficient oil
 - oil leakage
 - worn or damaged oil pump
 - oil pump screen cover and tube (6622)
 - excessive main bearing clearance
 - excessive connecting rod bearing clearance

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)**Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off—Valve Cover Removed**

Check for damaged or severely worn parts and correct assembly. Make sure correct parts are used with the static engine analysis as follows.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Rocker Arm

- Check for loose mounting bolts, studs and nuts.
- Check for plugged oil feed in the rocker arms (6564) or cylinder head.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Camshaft Roller Followers and Hydraulic Lash Adjusters, Overhead Camshaft

- Check for loose mounting bolts on camshaft carriers.
- Check for plugged oil feed in the camshaft roller followers, lash adjusters or cylinder heads.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Camshaft—Engines

- Check for broken or damaged parts.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Push Rods

- Check for bent push rods (6565) and restricted oil passage.

Valve Train Analysis—Valve Springs

- Check for broken or damaged parts.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Valve Spring Retainer and Valve Spring Retainer Keys

- Check for correct seating of the valve spring retainer key (6518) on the valve stem and in valve spring retainer (6514).
- Check for correct seating on the valve stem.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Off, Valves and Cylinder Head

- Check for plugged oil drain back holes.
- Check for worn or damaged valve tips.

- Check for missing or damaged guide-mounted valve stem seal.
- Check collapsed valve tappet gap.
- Check installed valve spring height.
- Check for missing or worn valve spring seats.
- Check for plugged oil metering orifice in cylinder head oil reservoir (if equipped).

Static checks (engine off) are to be made on the engine prior to the dynamic procedure.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running

- Start the engine and, while idling, check for correct operation of all parts. Check the following:

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running, Valves and Cylinder Head

- Check for plugged oil drain back holes.
- Check for missing or damaged valve stem seals or guide mounted valve stem seals.
- Check for a plugged oil metering orifice in the cylinder head oil reservoir (4.6L engine only).

If insufficient oiling is suspected, check oil passages for blockage, then accelerate the engine to 1,200 rpm with the transmission in NEUTRAL and the engine at normal operating temperature. Oil should spurt from the rocker arm oil holes such that valve tips and camshaft roller followers are well oiled. With the valve covers (6582) off, some oil splash may overshoot camshaft roller followers.

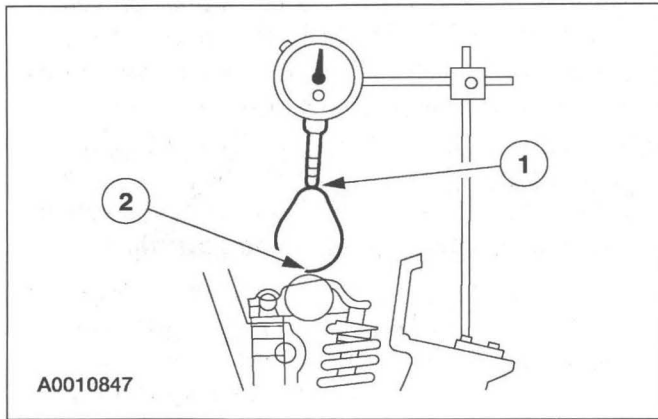
Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running, Camshaft Lobe Lift—OHC Engines

Check the lift of each camshaft lobe in consecutive order and make a note of the readings.

1. Remove the valve covers.
2. Remove the spark plugs.
3. Install the Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture so the rounded tip of indicator is on top of the camshaft lobe and on the same plane as the valve tappet.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

4. Rotate the crankshaft using a breaker bar and socket attached to the crankshaft pulley retainer bolt. Rotate the crankshaft until the base circle of the camshaft lobe is reached.

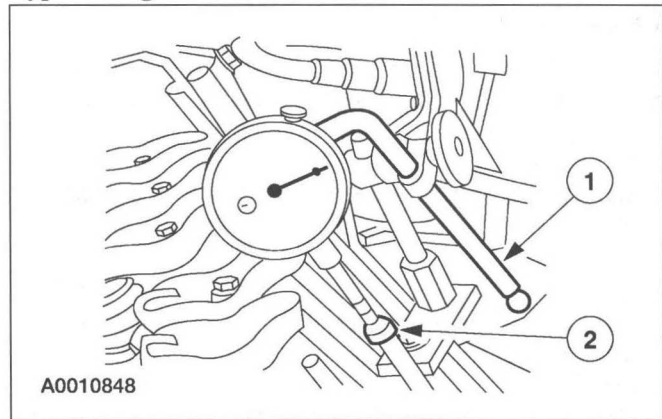


5. Zero the dial indicator. Continue to rotate the crankshaft until the (1) high-lift point of the camshaft lobe is in the fully-raised position (highest indicator reading).
6. To check the accuracy of the original indicator reading, continue to rotate crankshaft until the (2) base circle is reached. The indicator reading should be zero. If zero reading is not obtained, repeat Steps 1 through 6.
7. **NOTE:** If the lift on any lobe is below specified service limits, install a new camshaft, and new camshaft roller followers.
Remove the Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture.
8. Install the spark plugs.
9. Install the valve covers.

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running, Camshaft Lobe Lift—Push Rod Engine

Check the lift of each lobe in consecutive order and make a note of the readings.

1. Remove the valve covers.
2. Remove the rocker arm seat bolts, rocker arm seat (6A528) and rocker arms.

Typical Engine With Push Rods

3. Make sure the valve tappet is seated against camshaft (6250). Install (1) Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture so the ball socket adapter of the indicator is on top of the valve tappet or (2) Dial Indicator Gauge Adapter is on top of push rod and in same plane as valve tappet push rod movement.
4. Remove the spark plugs.
5. Connect an auxiliary starter switch in the starting circuit. Crank the engine with ignition switch in OFF position. Bump crankshaft over until valve tappet is on base circle of camshaft lobe. At this point, valve tappet will be in its lowest position. If checking during engine assembly, turn crankshaft using a socket or ratchet.
6. Zero the dial indicator. Continue to rotate crankshaft slowly until valve tappet is in fully-raised position (highest indicator reading).
7. **NOTE:** If lift on any lobe is below specified service limits, install a new camshaft, and new valve tappets.

Remove the Dial Indicator with Holding Fixture, Dial Indicator Gauge Adapter, and auxiliary starter switch.

8. Install rocker arm seats, rocker arms and rocker arm seat bolts.
9. Install valve covers.
10. Install spark plugs.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Valve Train Analysis—Engine Running, Valve Tappet

Valve tappet noise can be caused by any of the following:

- excessive valve tappet gap (collapsed)
- incorrectly functioning valve tappet
- air in lubrication system
- excessive valve guide wear
- low oil pressure

Excessive collapsed valve tappet gap can be caused by loose rocker arm seat bolts/nuts, incorrect initial adjustment or wear of valve tappet face, or worn roller valve tappets, push rod (6565), rocker arm (6564), rocker arm seat or valve tip. With valve tappet collapsed, check gap between the valve tip and the rocker arm to determine if any other valve train parts are damaged, worn or out of adjustment.


An incorrectly functioning valve tappet can be sticking, caused by contaminants or varnish inside the tappet. The tappet can have a check valve that is not functioning correctly, which can be caused by an obstruction, such as dirt or chips that prevent the check valve from closing, or a broken check valve spring. A tappet with a leakdown time out of specification can cause tappet noise. If no other cause for noisy valve tappets can be found, the leakdown rate should be checked and new valve tappets installed if found to be out of specification.

Assembled valve tappets can be tested with Hydraulic Tappet Leakdown Tester to check the leakdown rate. The leakdown rate specification is the time in seconds for the plunger to move a specified distance while under a 22.7 kg (50 lb) load.

Air bubbles in the lubrication system will prevent the valve tappet from supporting the valve spring load. This can be caused by too high or too low an oil level in the oil pan or by air being drawn into the system through a hole, crack or leaking gasket on the oil pump screen cover and tube.

GENERAL PROCEDURES

Sprockets

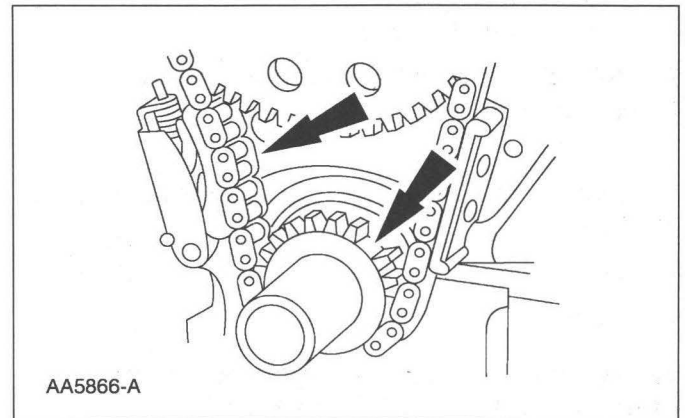
1.  **WARNING:** To avoid the possibility of personal injury or damage to the vehicle, do not operate the engine with the hood open until the fan blade has been examined for possible cracks and separation.

NOTE: Specifications show the expected minimum or maximum condition. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

NOTE: If a component fails to meet the specifications, it is necessary to install a new component or refinish. If the component can be refinished, wear limits are provided as an aid to making a decision. A new component must be installed for any component that fails to meet specifications and cannot be refinished.

Inspect the timing chain/belt and the sprockets.

- Install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Rocker Arms — Cleaning

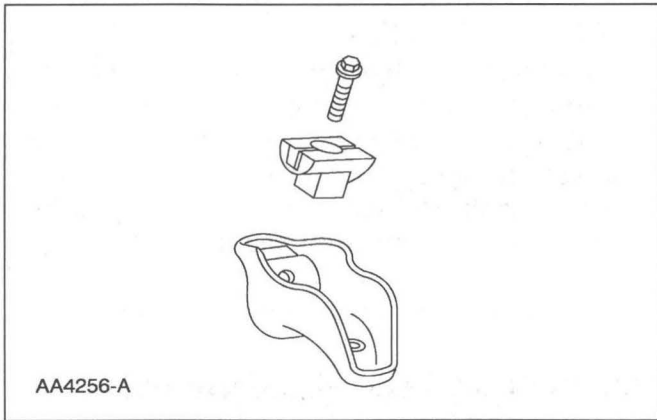
1. Clean all parts thoroughly. Make sure all oil passages are open.
2. Make sure oil passage in the push rod/valve tappet end of the rocker arm (6564) is open.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

Rocker Arms — Inspection

⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to true surfaces by grinding. Check the rocker arm pad, side rails and seat for excessive wear, cracks, nicks or burrs. Check the rocker arm seat bolt for stripped or broken threads. Install new components as necessary or possible damage may occur.

1. Inspect the rocker arm push rod bore for nicks, scratches, scores or scuffs. Install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



2. Inspect the pad at the valve end of the rocker arm for indications of scuffing or abnormal wear. If the pad is grooved, install a new rocker arm. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

Push Rods — Cleaning

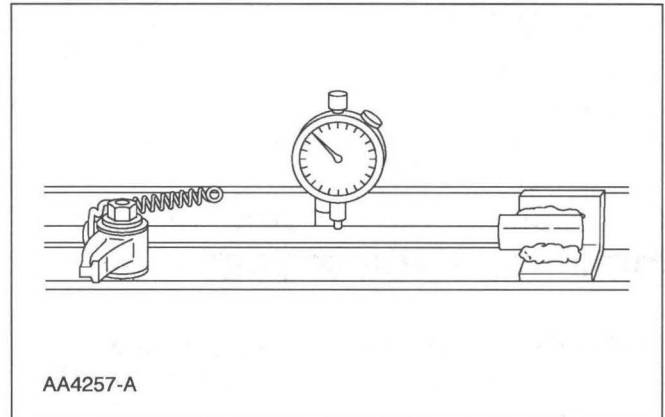
1. Clean the push rods (6565) in a suitable solvent. Blow out the oil passage in the push rods with compressed air.

Push Rods — Inspection

1. **⚠ CAUTION:** Do not attempt to straighten push rods.

Check the ends of the push rods for nicks, grooves, roughness or excessive wear. Install new push rods as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

- The push rods can be checked for straightness while they are installed in the engine by rotating them with the valve closed.
- They also can be checked using a Dial Indicator with Bracketry.

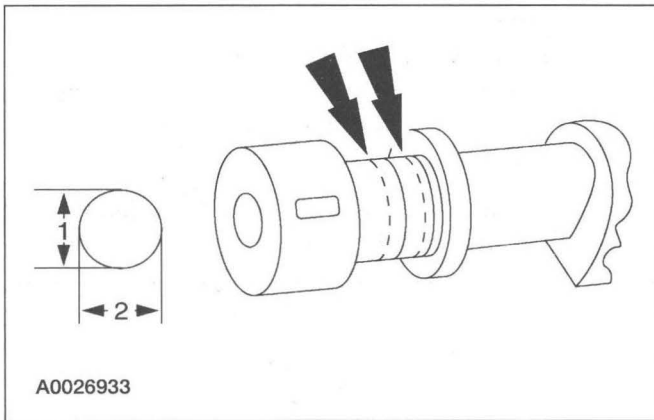


2. If the push rod is bent beyond specifications, install a new push rod. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

Camshaft Journal — Diameter

1. Measure each camshaft journal diameter in two directions.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

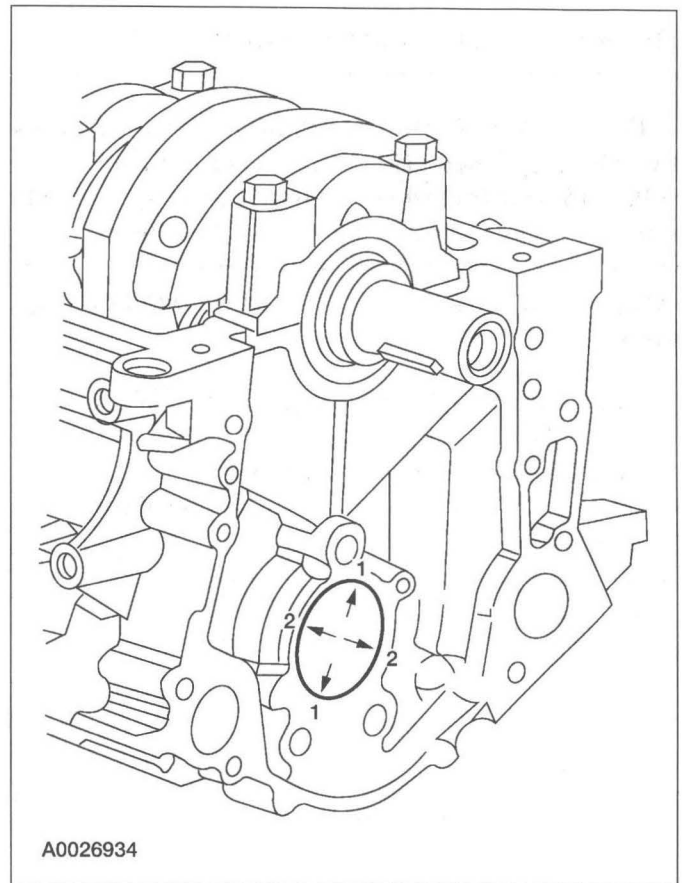


Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Push Rod Engines, Micrometer Method

1. **NOTE:** The camshaft journals must meet specifications before checking camshaft journal clearance.

Measure each camshaft bearing (6261) in two directions.

- Subtract the camshaft journal diameter from the camshaft bearing diameter.



Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Plastigage Method

Special Tool(s)

<p>ST1280-A</p>	<p>Plastigage 303-D031 (D81L-6002-B) or equivalent</p>
-----------------	--

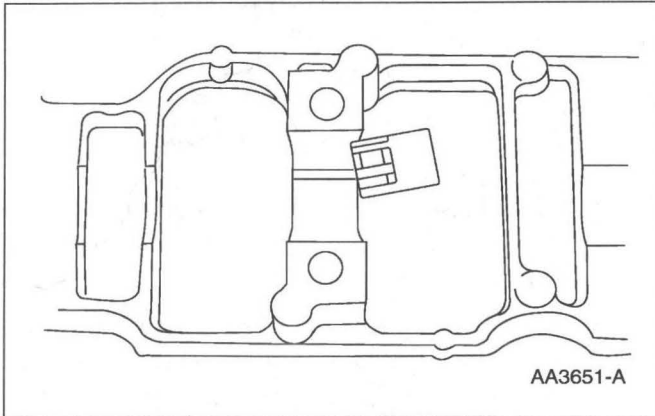
NOTE: The camshaft journals must meet specifications before checking camshaft journal clearance.

1. Remove the camshaft bearing cap and lay Plastigage across the surface. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

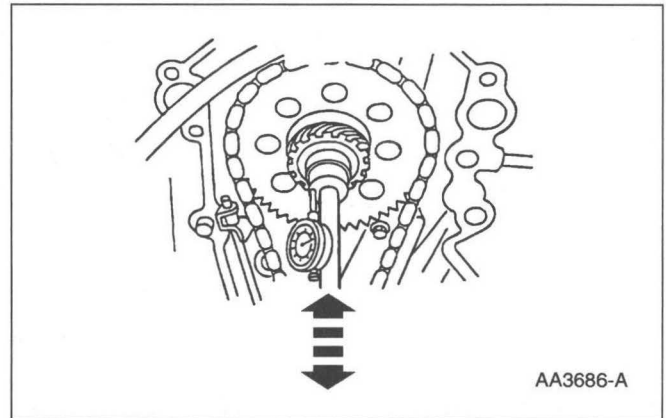
2. **NOTE:** Do not turn the camshaft while carrying out this procedure.

Position the camshaft bearing cap and install the bolts. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



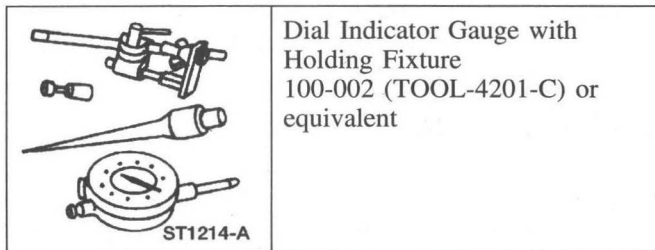
3. Use Plastigage to verify the camshaft journal clearance.
- If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

3. Position the camshaft to the rear of the cylinder block.
4. Zero the indicator.
5. Move the camshaft to the front of the cylinder block. Note and record the camshaft end play.
- If the camshaft end play exceeds specifications, install a new camshaft thrust plate. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Camshaft End Play — Push Rod Engines

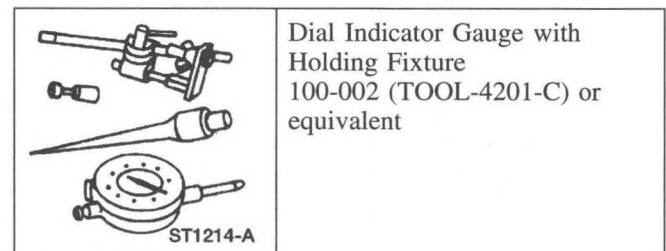
Special Tool(s)



- Remove the valve tappets. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
- Use a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure camshaft end play.

Camshaft End Play — OHC Engines

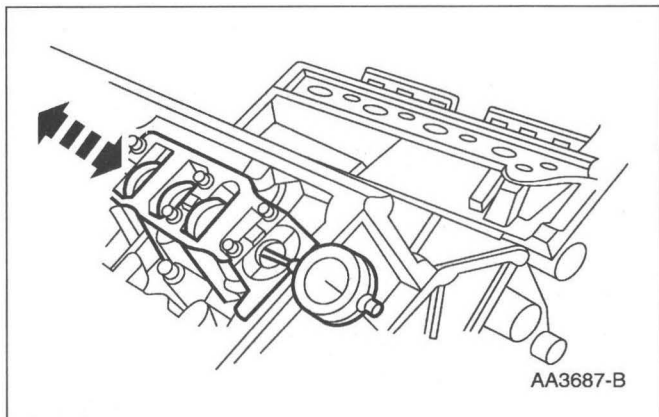
Special Tool(s)



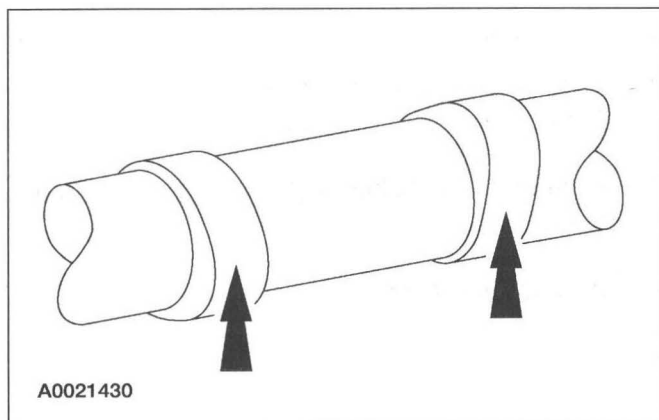
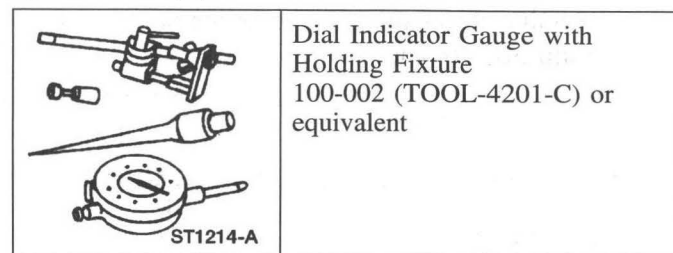
- Use a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure camshaft end play.
- Position the camshaft to the rear of the cylinder head.
- Zero the indicator.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

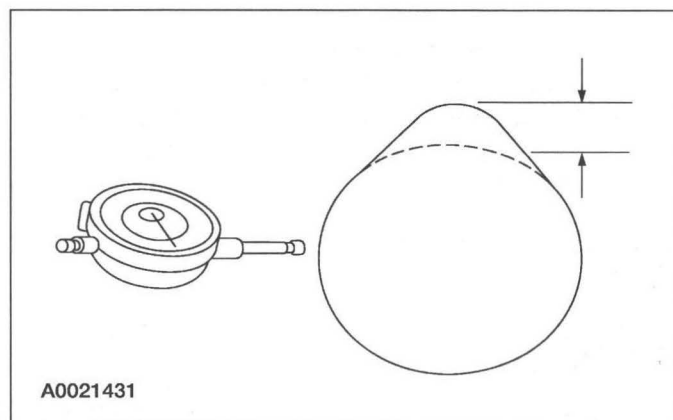
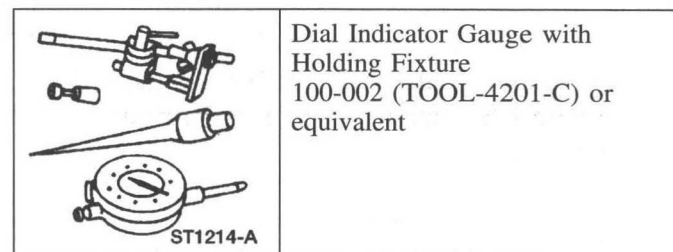
4. Move the camshaft to the front of the cylinder head. Note and record the camshaft end play.
 - If camshaft end play exceeds specifications, install new camshaft and recheck end play. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If camshaft end play exceeds specification after camshaft installation, install a new cylinder head. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Camshaft — Lobe Surface**

1. Inspect camshaft lobes for pitting or damage in the contact area. Minor pitting is acceptable outside the contact area.
 - If excessive pitting or damage is present, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Camshaft Lobe Lift****Special Tool(s)**

1. Use a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure camshaft intake/exhaust lobe lift.
 - Rotate the camshaft and subtract the lowest indicator reading from the highest indicator reading to figure the camshaft lobe lift.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

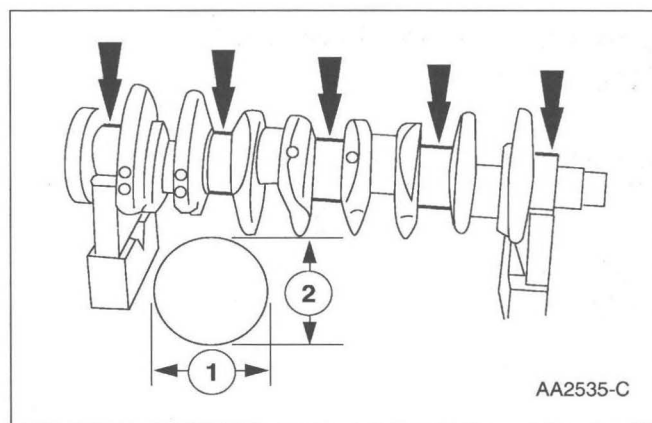
**Camshaft Runout****Special Tool(s)**

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

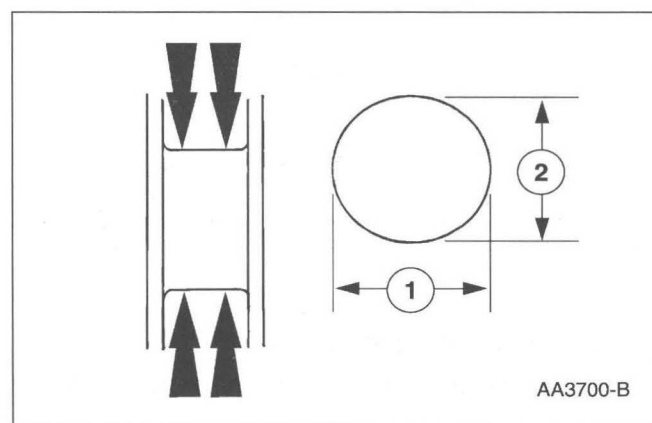
1. **NOTE:** Camshaft journals must be within specifications before checking runout.

Use a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure the camshaft runout.

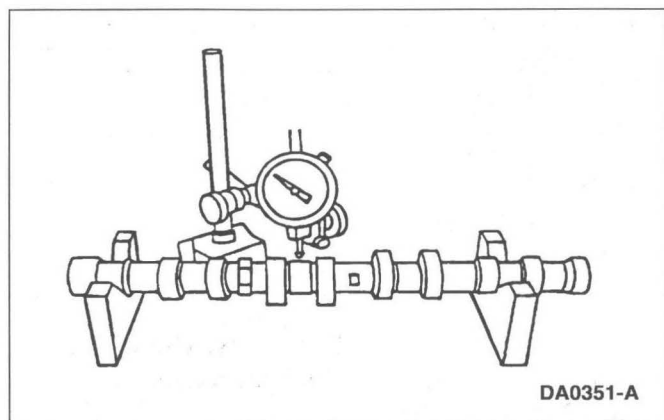
- Rotate the camshaft and subtract the lowest indicator reading from the highest indicator reading.
- For additional information, refer to the specification chart in the appropriate engine section.
- If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

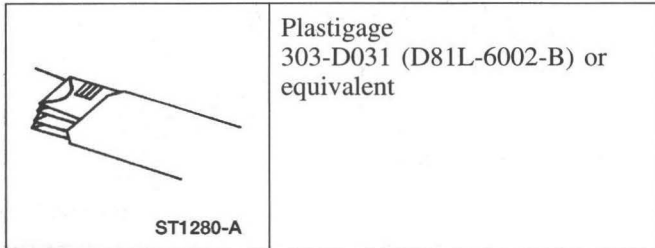
**Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Taper**

1. Measure each of the crankshaft main bearing journal diameters in at least two directions at each end of the main bearing journal.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Diameter**

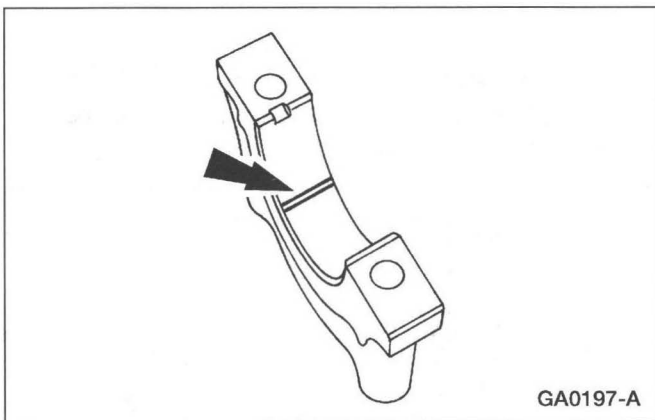
1. Measure each of the crankshaft main bearing journal diameters in at least two directions.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



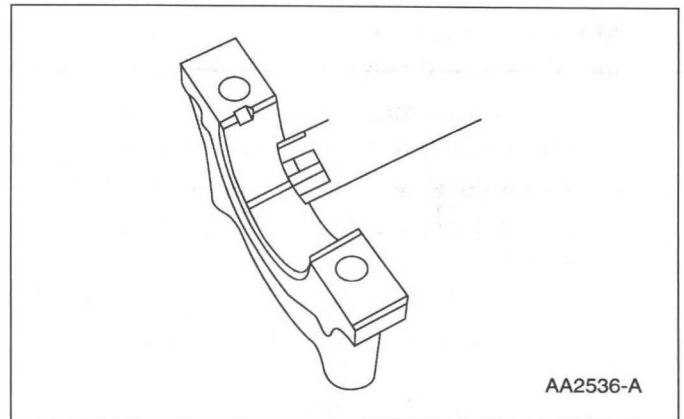
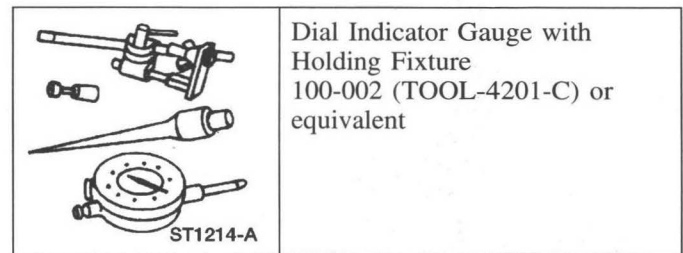
GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Clearance****Special Tool(s)**

NOTE: Crankshaft main bearing journals must be within specifications before checking journal clearance.

1. Remove the crankshaft main bearing caps and crankshaft main bearing.
2. Lay a piece of Plastigage across the face of each crankshaft main bearing surface.



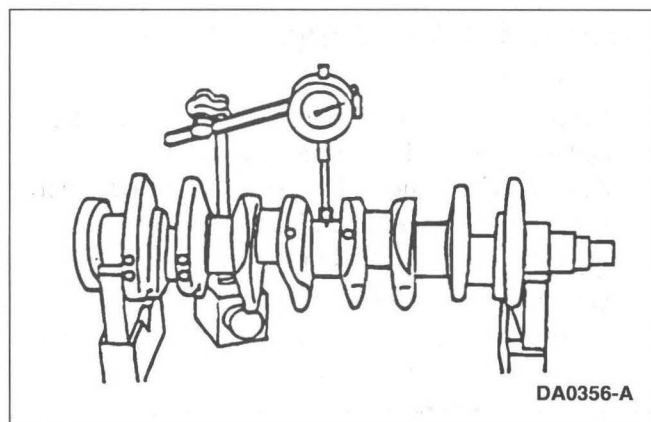
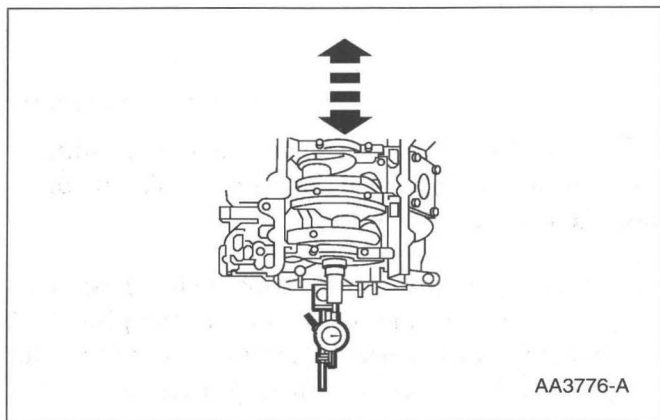
3. **NOTE:** Do not turn the crankshaft while carrying out this procedure.
Install and remove the crankshaft main bearing cap.
4. Verify the crankshaft journal clearance.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Crankshaft End Play****Special Tool(s)**

1. Measure the crankshaft end play. Use a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure crankshaft end play.
2. Position the crankshaft to the rear of the cylinder block.
3. Zero the indicator.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

4. Move the crankshaft to the front of the cylinder block. Note and record the crankshaft end play.
 - If crankshaft end play exceeds specifications, install a new crankshaft thrust washer (6334) or crankshaft thrust main bearing (6337). Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

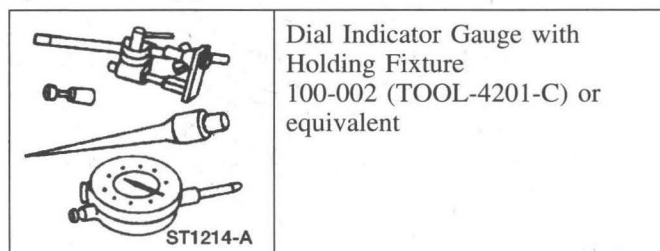


Crankshaft — Connecting Rod Journal Taper, Out of Round

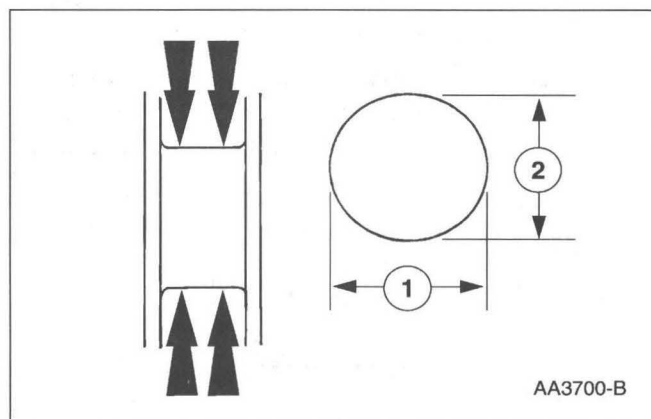
1. Measure the crankshaft connecting rod journal diameters in two directions perpendicular to one another at each end of the connecting rod journal. The difference in the measurements from one end to the other is the taper. Verify measurement is within the wear limit.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

Crankshaft Runout

Special Tool(s)

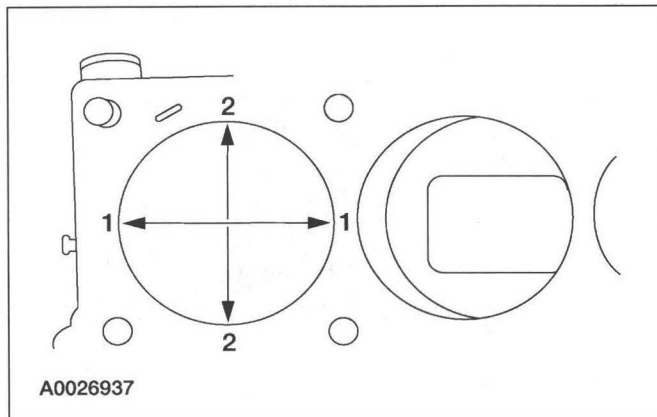


1. **NOTE:** Crankshaft main bearing journals must be within specifications before checking runout. Use the Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture to measure the crankshaft runout.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - Rotate the crankshaft and subtract the lowest dial indicator reading from the highest dial indicator reading to figure the crankshaft runout. If it is out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

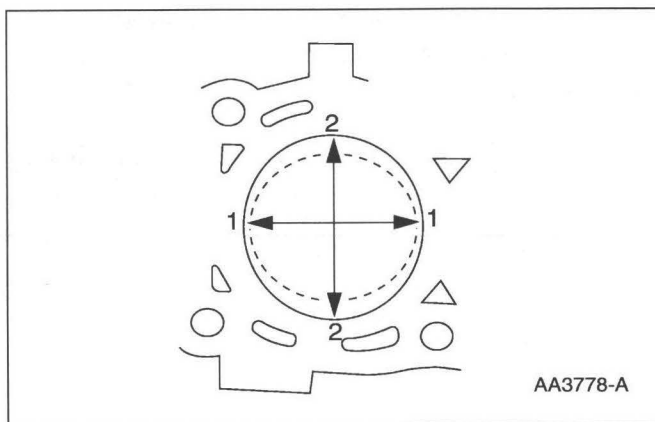


GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Cylinder Bore — Taper**

1. Measure the cylinder bore at the top, middle, and bottom of piston ring travel in two directions as indicated. Verify the cylinder bore is within the wear limit. The difference indicates the cylinder bore taper. Bore the cylinder to the next oversize.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Cylinder Bore — Out-of-Round**

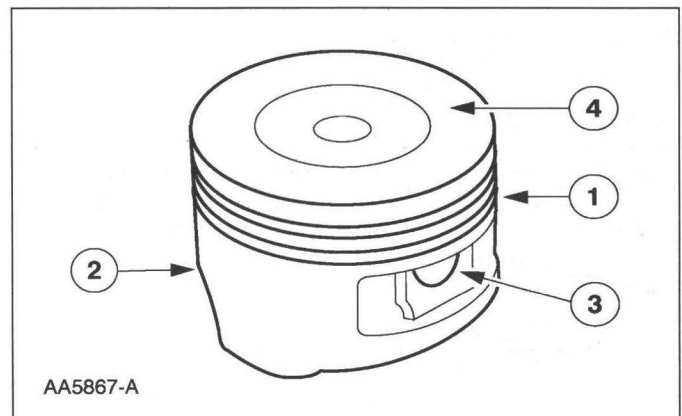
1. Measure the cylinder bore in two directions. The difference is the out-of-round. Verify the out-of-round is within the wear limit and bore the cylinder to the next oversize limit.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Piston Inspection****Special Tool(s)**

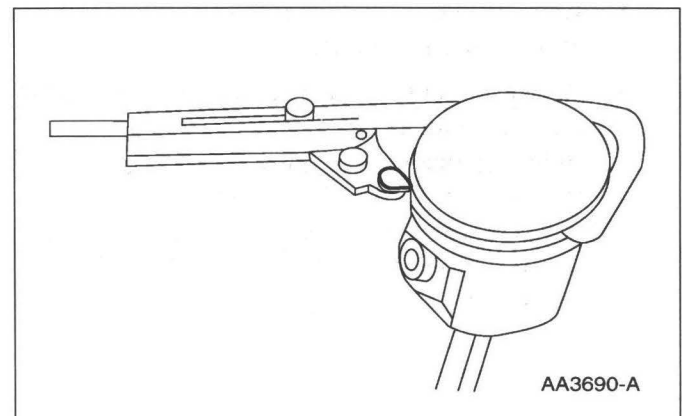
<p>ST1279-A</p>	<p>Scraper, Piston Ring Groove 303-D033 (D81L-6002-D) or equivalent</p>
-----------------	---

⚠ CAUTION: Do not use a caustic cleaning solution or a wire brush to clean the pistons or damage can occur.

1. Clean and inspect the (1) ring lands, (2) skirts, (3) pin bosses, and the (4) tops of the pistons. If wear marks, scores or glazing is found on the piston skirt, check for a bent or twisted connecting rod.




2. Use the Piston Ring Groove Scraper to clean the piston ring grooves.
 - Make sure the oil ring holes are clean.



GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

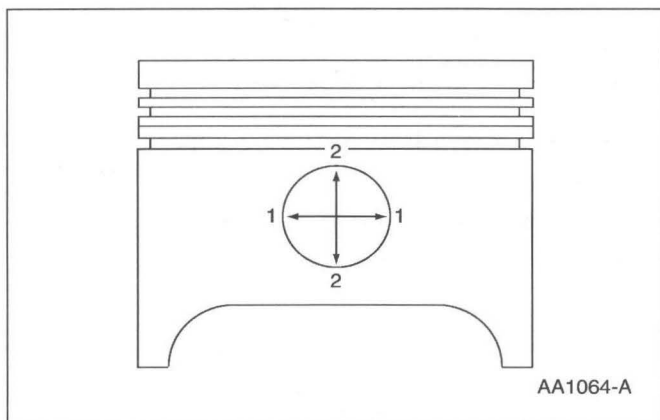
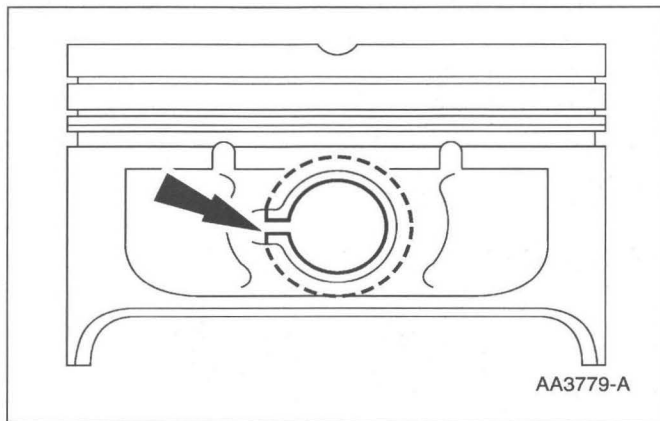
Piston — Pin to Bore Diameter

1.  **WARNING:** Cover the end of the pin bore with a hand or shop rag when removing the retainer ring, since it has a tendency to spring out. Wear eye protection.

NOTE: Piston and piston pins are a matched set and should not be interchanged.

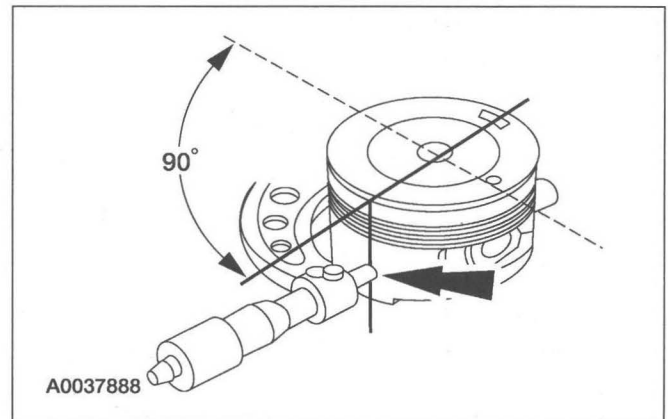
Measure the piston pin bore diameter in two directions on each side. Verify the diameter is within specification.

- If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Piston — Diameter

1. Measure the piston diameter 90 degrees from the piston pin at the point indicated. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



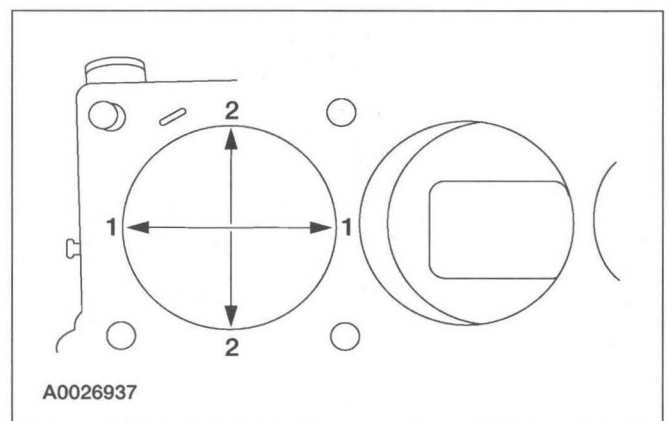
Piston — to Cylinder Bore Clearance

1. Subtract the piston diameter from the cylinder bore diameter to find the piston-to-cylinder bore clearance.

Piston — Selection

NOTE: The cylinder bore must be within the specifications for taper and out-of-round before fitting a piston.

1. Select a piston size based on the cylinder bore.

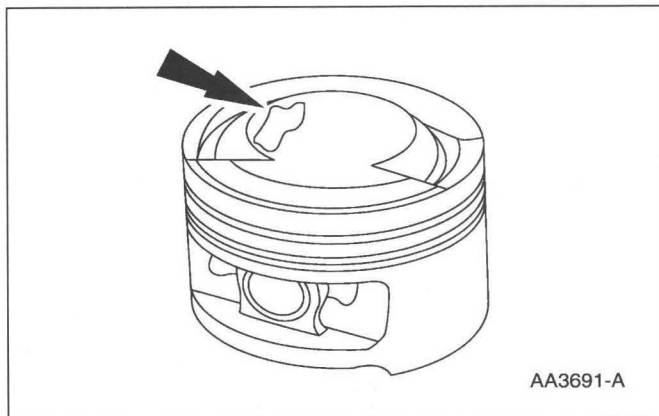


GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

2. **NOTE:** For precision fit, new pistons are divided into three categories within each size range based on their relative position within the range. A paint spot on the new pistons indicates the position within the size range.

Choose the piston with the correct paint color.

- Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

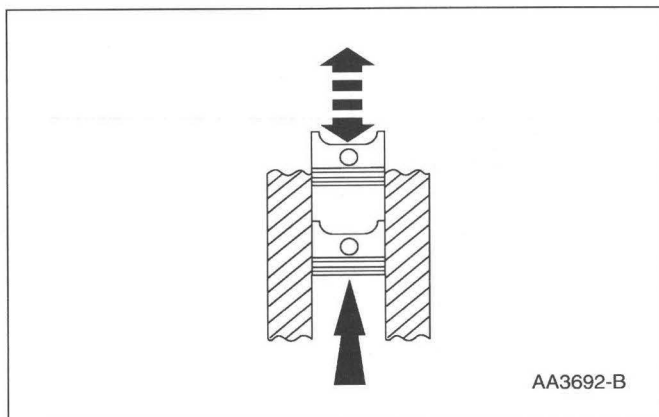
**Piston — Ring End Gap**

⚠ CAUTION: Use care when fitting piston rings to avoid possible damage to the piston ring or the cylinder bore.

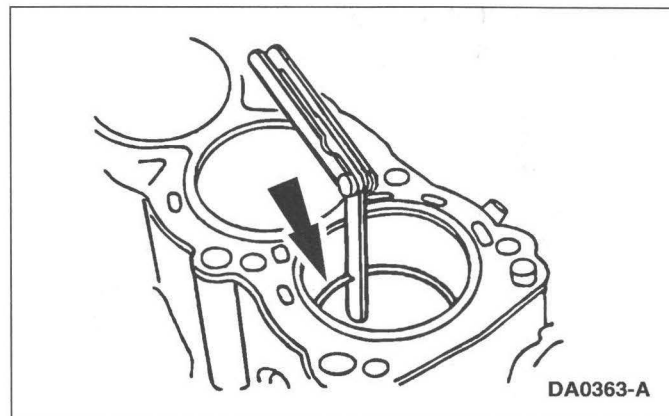
⚠ CAUTION: Piston rings should not be transferred from one piston to another.

NOTE: Cylinder bore must be within specification for taper and out-of-round.

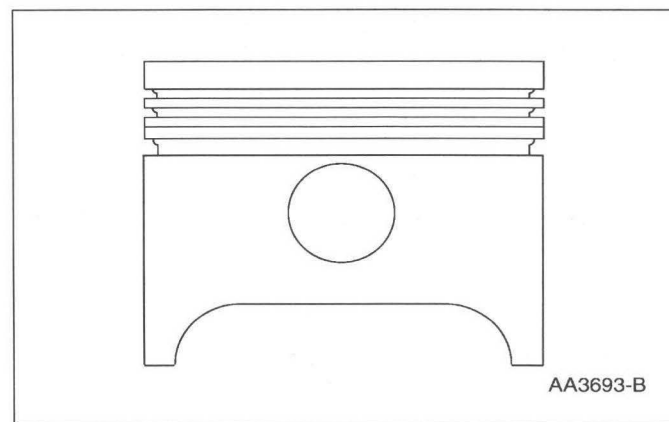
1. Use a piston without rings to push a piston ring in a cylinder bore to the bottom of ring travel.



2. Use a feeler gauge to measure the top piston ring end gap and the second piston ring end gap.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

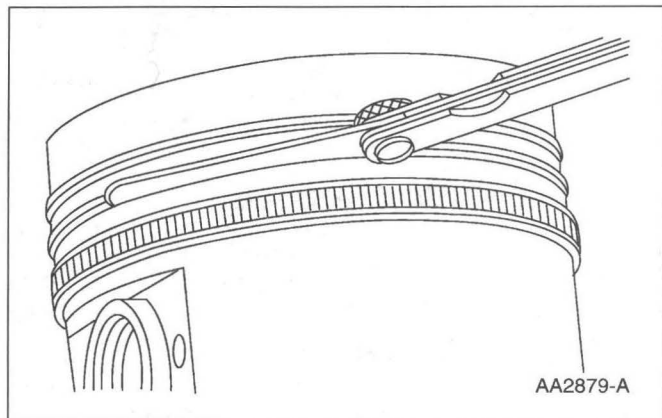
**Piston — Ring-to-Groove Clearance**

1. Inspect the piston for ring land damage or accelerated wear.



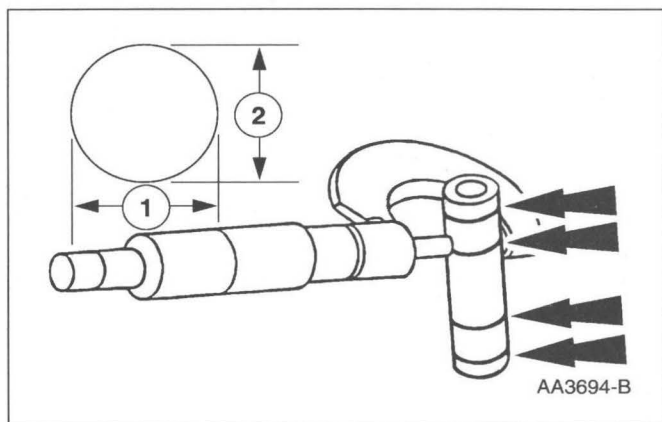
GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

2. Measure the piston ring-to-groove clearance.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Piston — Pin Diameter

1. Measure the piston pin diameter in two directions at the points shown. Verify the diameter is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the connecting rod to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

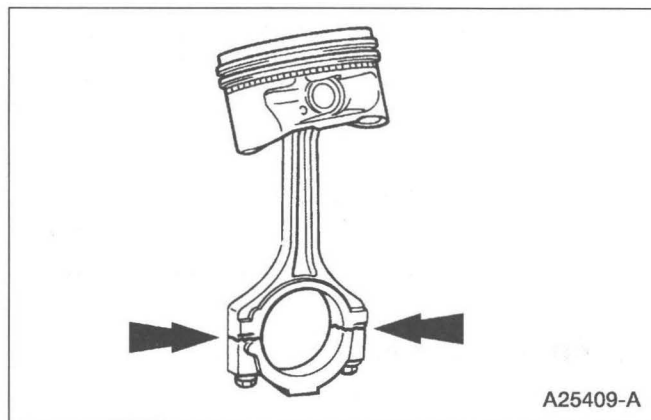


Connecting Rod — Cleaning

⚠ CAUTION: Do not use a caustic cleaning solution or damage to connecting rods can occur.

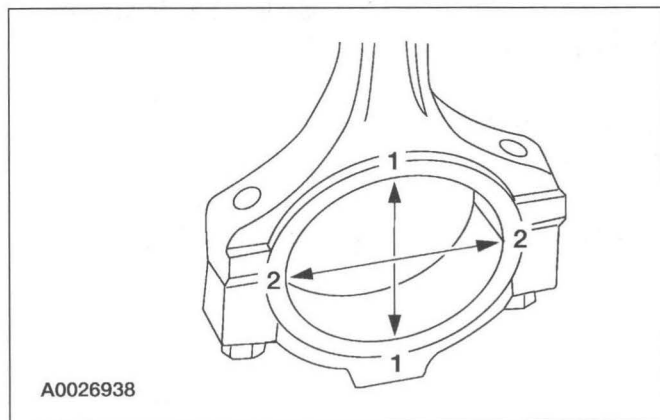
1. **NOTE:** The connecting rod large end is a matched set. The connecting rod cap must be installed on the original connecting rod in the original position. Do not reverse the cap. Parts are not interchangeable.

Mark and separate the parts and clean with solvent. Clean the oil passages.

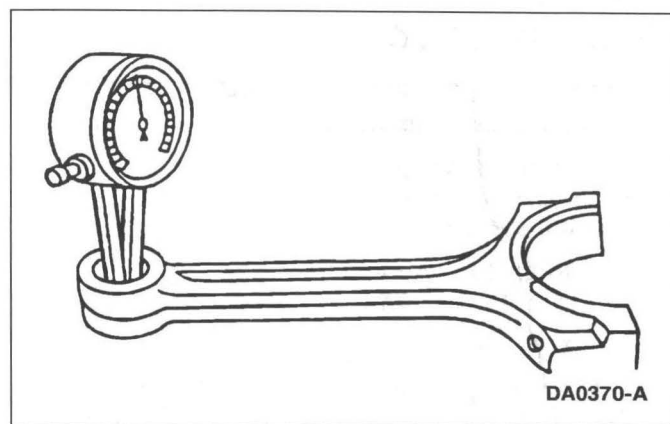


GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Connecting Rod — Large End Bore**

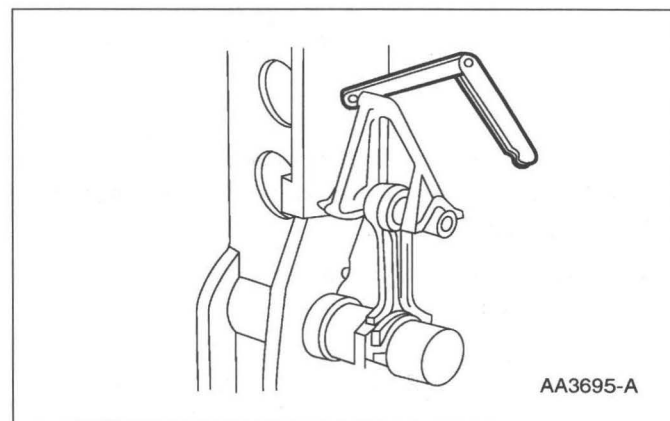
1. Tighten the bolts to specification, then measure the bore in two directions. The difference is the connecting rod bore out-of-round. Verify the out-of-round is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Connecting Rod — Bushing Diameter**

1. Measure the inner diameter of the connecting rod bushing, if equipped. Verify the diameter is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Connecting Rod — Bend**

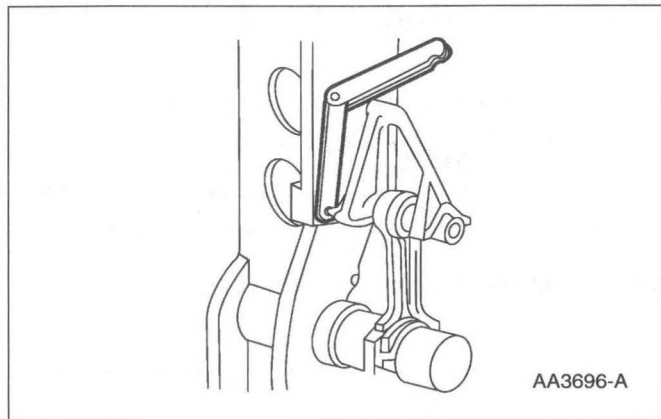
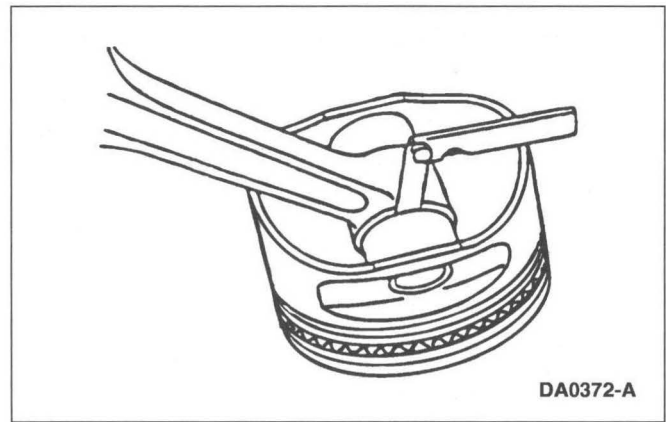
1. Measure the connecting rod bend on a suitable alignment fixture. Follow the instructions of the fixture manufacturer. Verify the bend measurement is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

Connecting Rod — Twist

1. Measure the connecting rod twist on a suitable alignment fixture. Follow the instructions of the fixture manufacturer. Verify the measurement is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Connecting Rod — Bearing Journal Clearance

Special Tool(s)

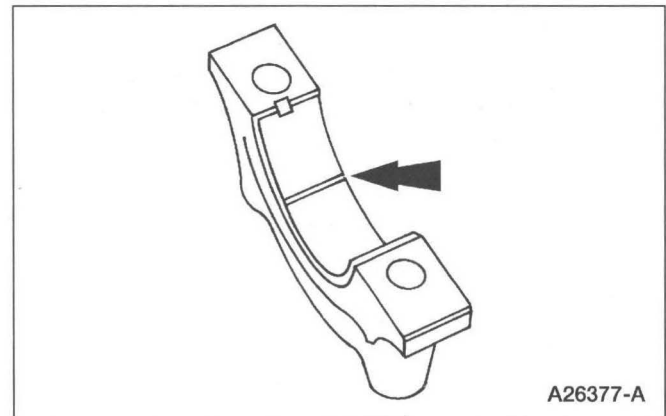
	Plastigage 303-D031 (D81L-6002-B) or equivalent
--	---

NOTE: The crankshaft connecting rod journals must be within specifications to check the connecting rod bearing journal clearance.

Connecting Rod — Piston Pin Side Clearance

1. Measure the clearance between the connecting rod and the piston. Verify the measurement is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

1. Remove the connecting rod bearing cap.
2. Position a piece of Plastigage across the bearing surface.

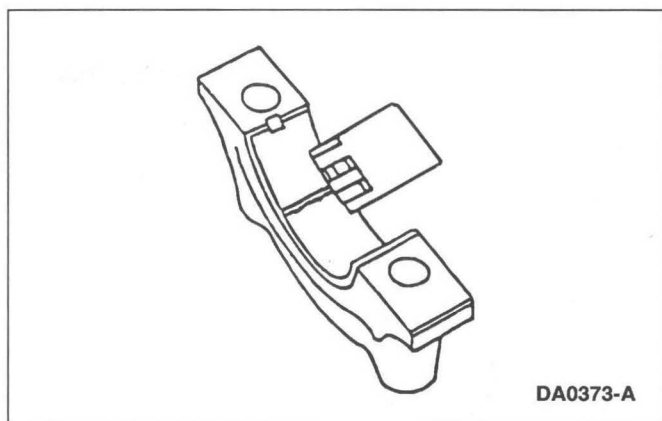


3. **NOTE:** Do not turn the crankshaft during this step.

Install and tighten to specifications, then remove the connecting rod bearing cap.

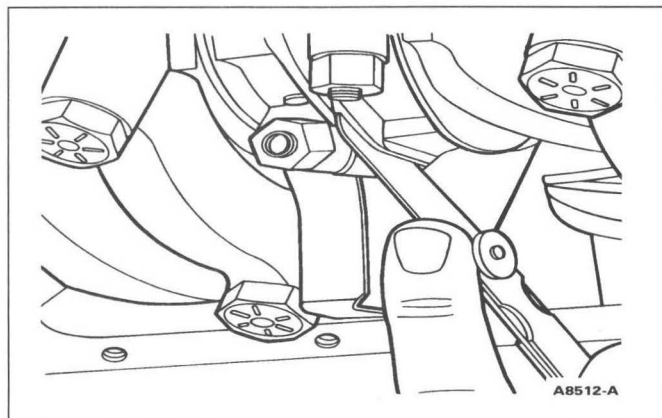
GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

4. Measure the Plastigage to get the connecting rod bearing journal clearance. The Plastigage should be smooth and flat. A changing width indicates a tapered or damaged connecting rod or connecting rod bearing.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



Connecting Rod — Side Clearance

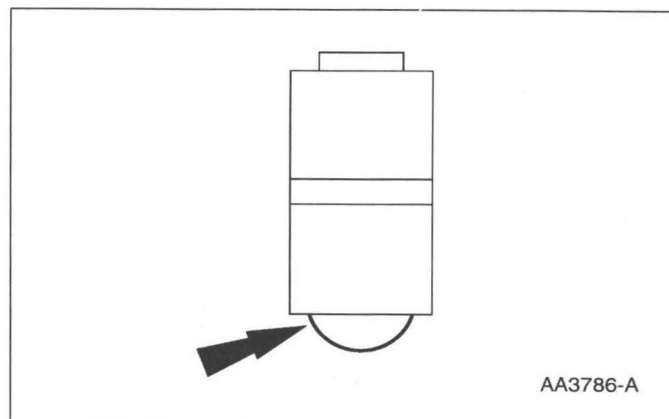
1. Measure the clearance between the connecting rod and the crankshaft. Verify the measurement is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



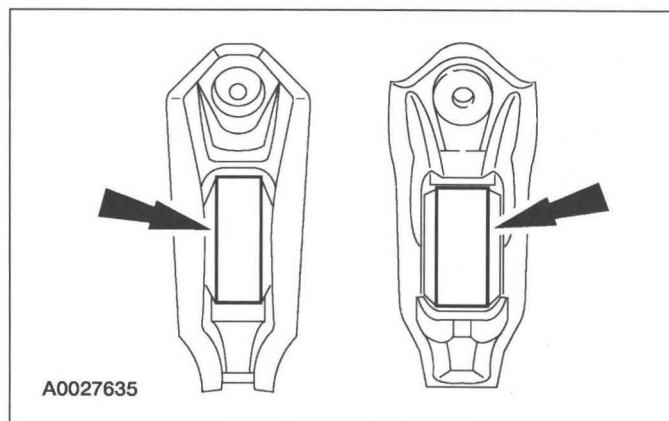
Roller Follower — Inspection

Push rod engines

1. Inspect the roller for flat spots or scoring. If any damage is found, inspect the camshaft lobes and valve tappet for damage.

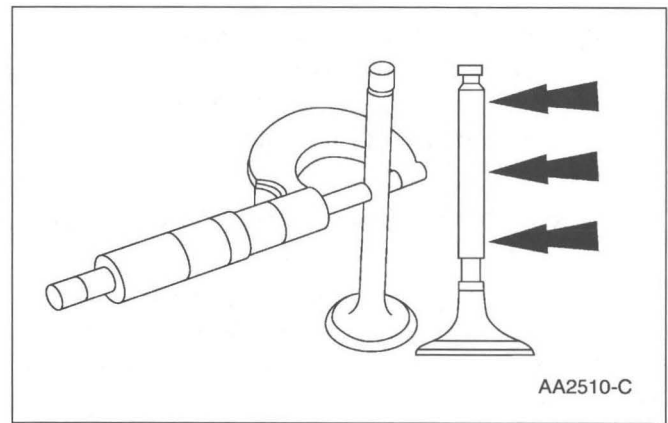
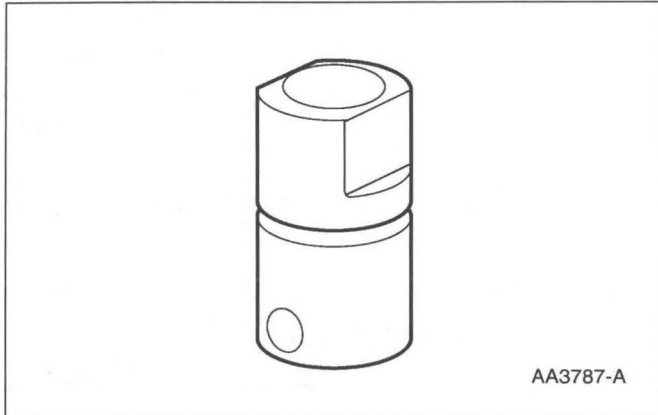
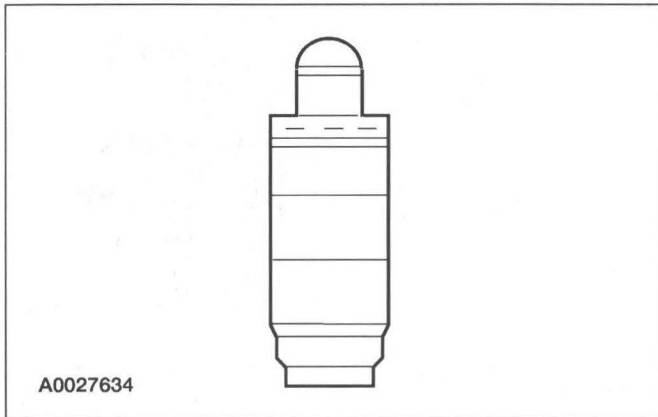


OHC engines



GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Valve Tappet — Inspection****Push rod engines**

1. Inspect the hydraulic valve tappet and roller for damage. If any damage is found, inspect the camshaft lobes and valves for damage.

**OHC engines****Valve Stem to Valve Guide Clearance****Special Tool(s)**

A technical line drawing of a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture, labeled ST1214-A. It shows the gauge, a holding fixture, and a probe.	Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture 100-002 (TOOL-4201-C) or equivalent
A technical line drawing of a Clearance Gauge, Valve Guide, labeled ST1251-A. It shows the gauge and the valve guide.	Clearance Gauge, Valve Guide 303-004 (TOOL-6505-E) or equivalent

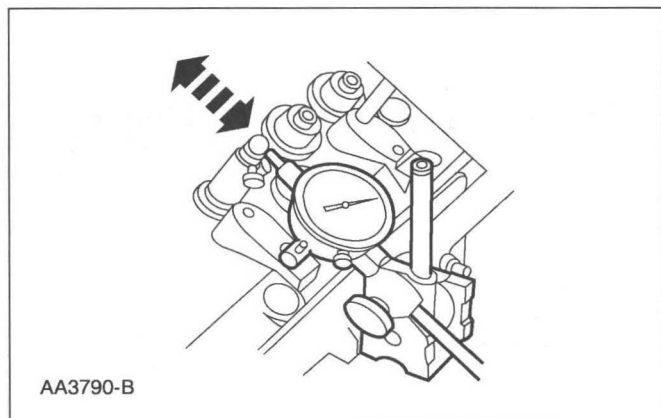
Valve — Stem Diameter

1. Measure the diameter of each intake and exhaust valve stem at the points shown. Verify the diameter is within specification.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

NOTE: Valve stem diameter must be within specifications before checking valve stem to valve guide clearance.

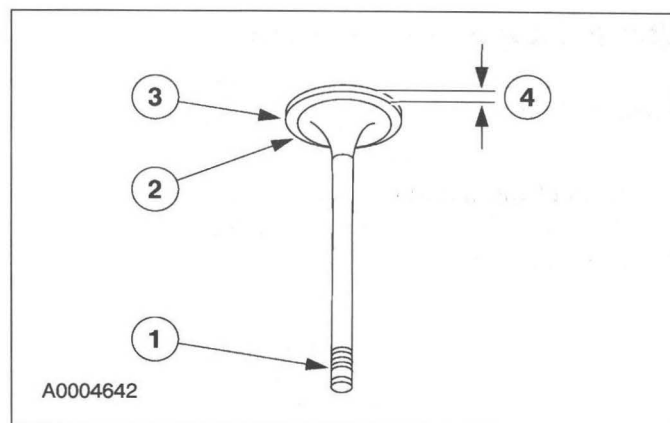
1. **NOTE:** If necessary, use a magnetic base.
Install a Valve Guide Clearance Gauge on the valve stem and install a Dial Indicator Gauge with Holding Fixture. Lower the valve until the Valve Guide Clearance Gauge contacts the upper surface of the valve guide.



2. Move the Valve Guide Clearance Gauge toward the indicator and zero the indicator. Move the Valve Guide Clearance Gauge away from the indicator and note the reading. The reading will be **DOUBLE** the valve stem-to-valve guide clearance. Valves with oversize stems will need to be installed if out of specification.

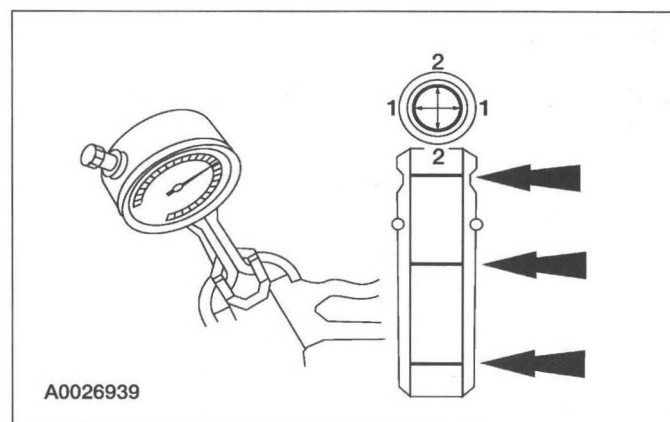
Valve — Inspection

1. Inspect the following valve areas:
 - 1 the end of the stem for grooves or scoring
 - 2 the valve face and the edge for pits, grooves or scores
 - 3 the valve head for signs of burning, erosion, warpage and cracking
 - 4 the valve margin for wear



Valve — Guide Inner Diameter

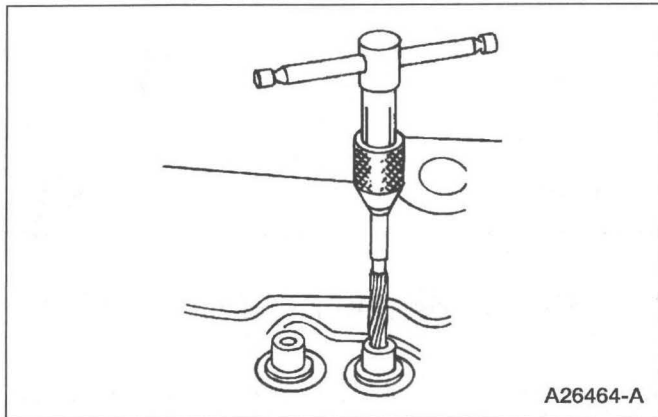
1. Measure the inner diameter of the valve guides in two directions where indicated.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



2. If the valve guide is not within specifications, ream the valve guide and install a valve with an oversize stem or remove the valve guide and install a new valve guide.

GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Valve — Guide Reaming**

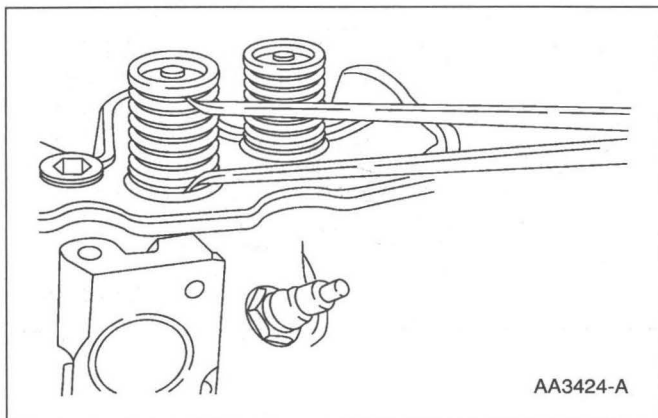
1. Use a hand-reaming kit to ream the valve guide.



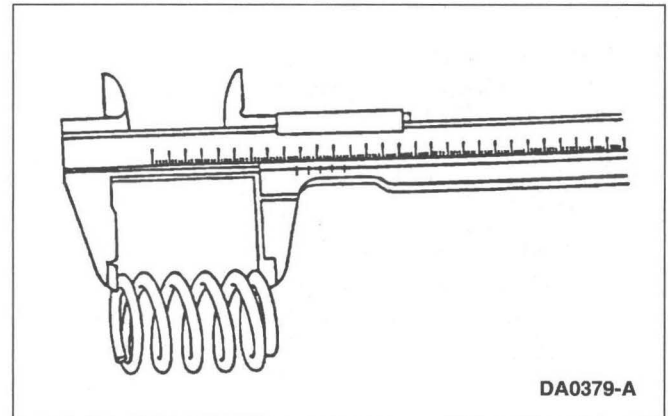
2. Reface the valve seat.
3. Clean the sharp edges left by reaming.

Valve — Spring Installed Length

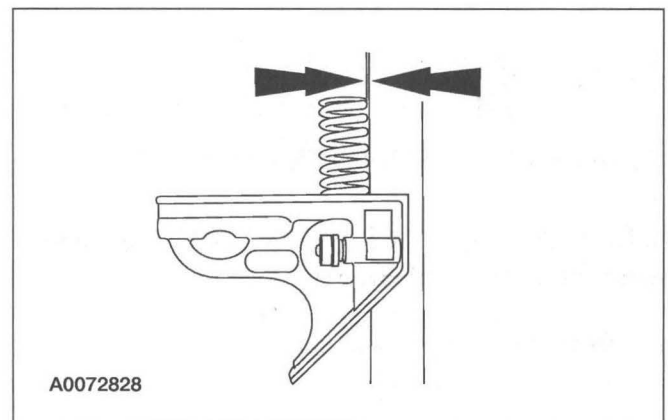
1. Measure the installed length of each valve spring.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Valve — Spring Free Length**

1. Measure the free length of each valve spring.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

**Valve — Spring Squareness**

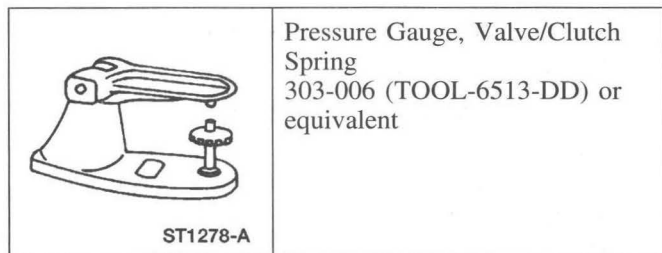
1. Measure the out-of-square on each valve spring.
 - Turn the valve spring and observe the space between the top of the valve spring and the square. Install a new valve spring if out of square. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



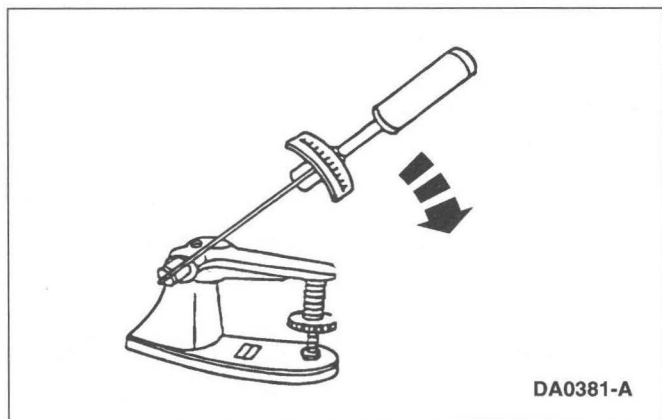
GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

Valve Spring Strength

Special Tool(s)



1. Use a Valve/Clutch Spring Pressure Gauge to check the valve spring for correct strength at the specified valve spring length.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - If out of specification, install new components as necessary. Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.

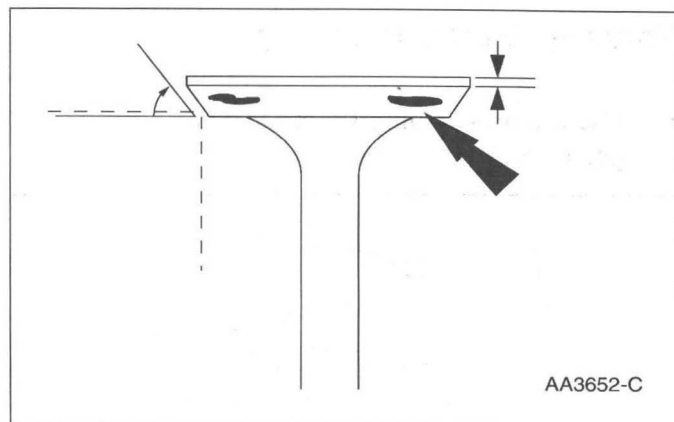


Valve — Seat Inspection

Valve and Seat Refacing Measurements

⚠ CAUTION: After grinding valves or valve seats, check valve clearance.

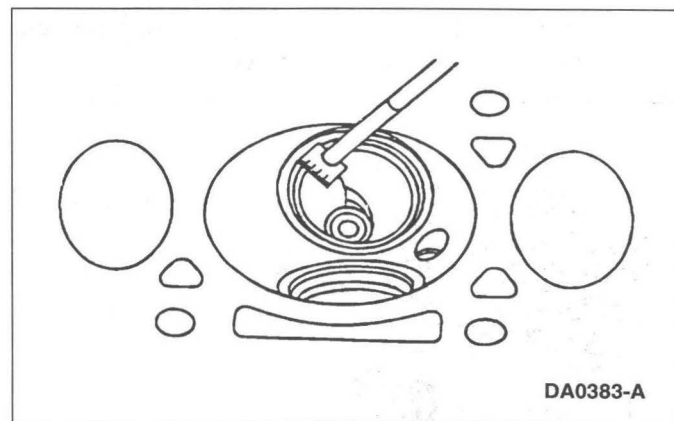
1. Check the valve head and seat.
 - Check valve angles.
 - Check margin width.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.
 - Be sure margin width is within specification.



2. Inspect for abnormalities on the valve face and seat.

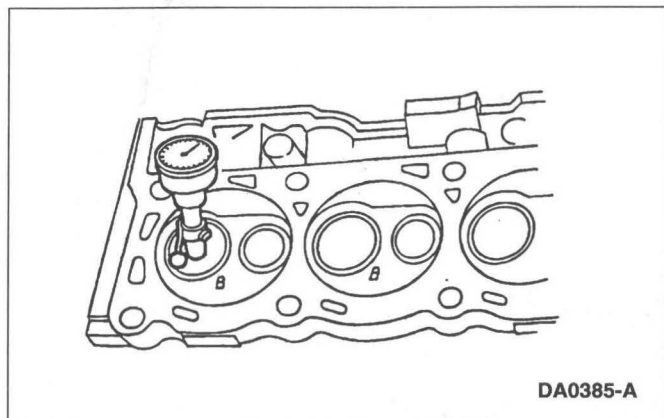
Valve — Seat Width

1. Measure the valve seat width. If necessary, grind the valve seat to specification.
 - Measure the intake valve seat width.
 - Measure the exhaust valve seat width.
 - Recheck the valve spring installed length after the seats have been ground, and shim the valve springs as necessary to achieve the correct installed spring length.
 - Refer to the appropriate section in Group 303 for the procedure.



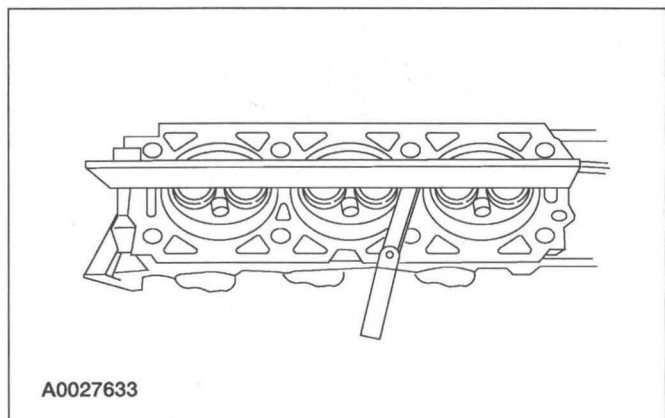
GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Valve — Seat Runout**


1. Use the Valve Seat Runout Gauge to check valve seat runout.

**Cylinder Head — Distortion****Special Tool(s)**

	Straight Edge 303-D039 (D83L-4201-A) or equivalent
--	--

1. Use a straight edge and a feeler gauge to inspect the cylinder head for flatness. If the cylinder head is distorted, install a new cylinder head.

**Cylinder Bore — Cleaning**

1.  **CAUTION:** If these procedures are not followed, rusting of the cylinder bores may occur.

Clean the cylinder bores with soap or detergent and water.

2. Thoroughly rinse with clean water and wipe dry with a clean, lint-free cloth.
3. Use a clean, lint-free cloth and lubricate the cylinder bores.
 - Use clean engine oil meeting Ford specification.

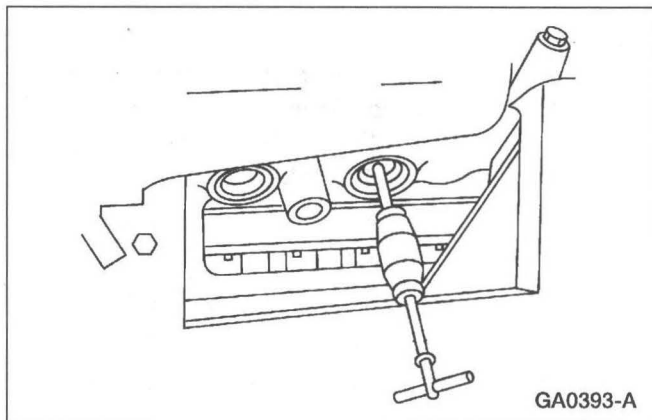
Cylinder Block Core Plug Replacement**Special Tool(s)**

	Slide Hammer 100-001 (T50T-100-A)
--	--------------------------------------

Material

Item	Specification
Threadlock® 262 E2FZ-19554-B or equivalent	WSK-M2G351-A6

1. Use a slide hammer or tools suitable to remove the cylinder block core plug.





GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

- Inspect the cylinder block plug bore for any damage that would interfere with the correct sealing of the plug. If the cylinder block plug bore is damaged, bore for the next oversize plug.
- NOTE:** Oversize plugs are identified by the OS stamped in the flat located on the cup side of the plug.

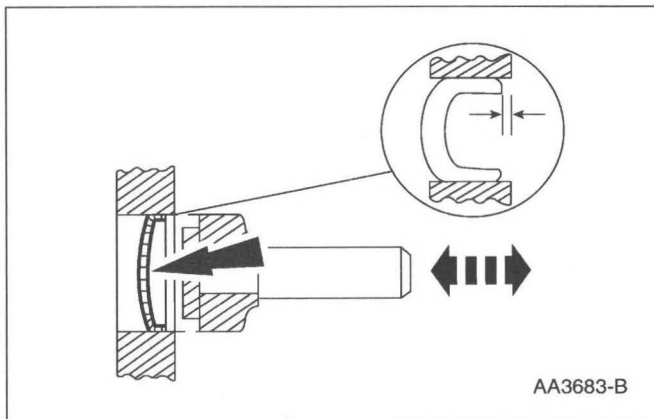
Coat the cylinder block core plug and bore lightly with Threadlock® 262 and install the cylinder block core plug.

Cup-Type


-  **CAUTION:** Use care during this procedure so as not to disturb or distort the cup sealing surface.

 **CAUTION:** When installed, the flanged edge must be below the chamfered edge of the bore to effectively seal the bore.

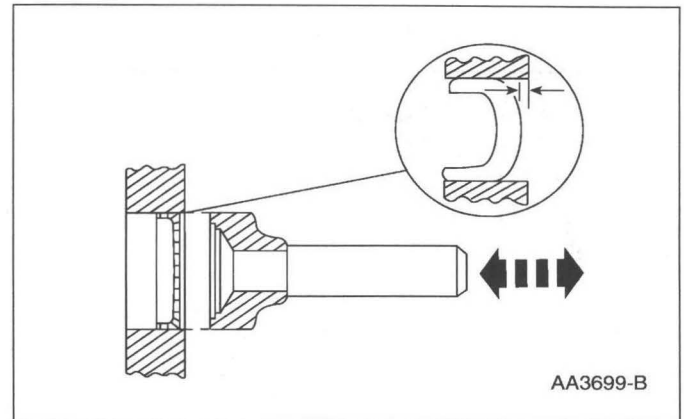
Use a tool suitable to seat the cup-type cylinder block core plug.



Expansion-Type

-  **CAUTION:** Do not contact the crown when installing an expansion-type cylinder block core plug. This could expand the plug before seating and result in leakage.

Use tool suitable to seat the expansion-type cylinder block core plug.

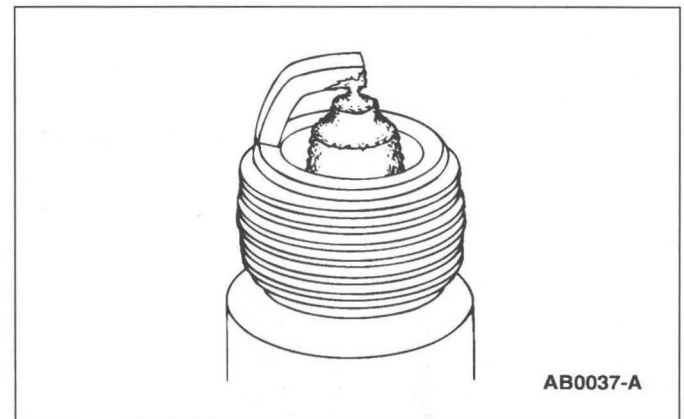


Spark Plug Hole Thread Repair

- There is no authorized repair for spark plug hole threads. If the threads are damaged, install a new cylinder head.

Spark Plug — Inspection

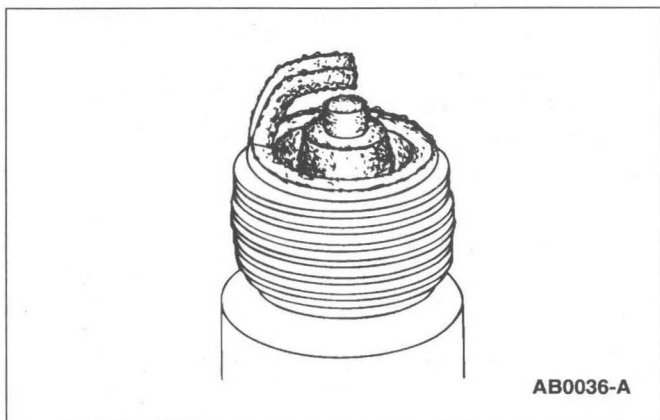
- Inspect the spark plug for a bridged gap.
 - Check for deposit build-up closing the gap between the electrodes. Deposits are caused by oil or carbon fouling.
 - Clean the spark plug.



GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

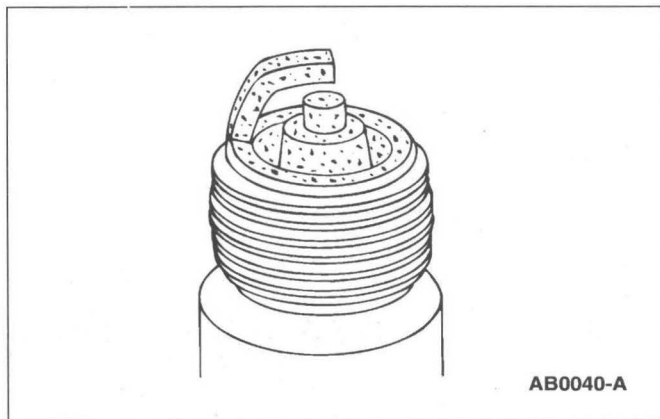
2. Check for oil fouling.

- Check for wet, black deposits on the insulator shell bore electrodes, caused by excessive oil entering the combustion chamber through worn rings and pistons, excessive valve-to-guide clearance or worn or loose bearings.
- Correct the oil leak concern.
- Install a new spark plug.



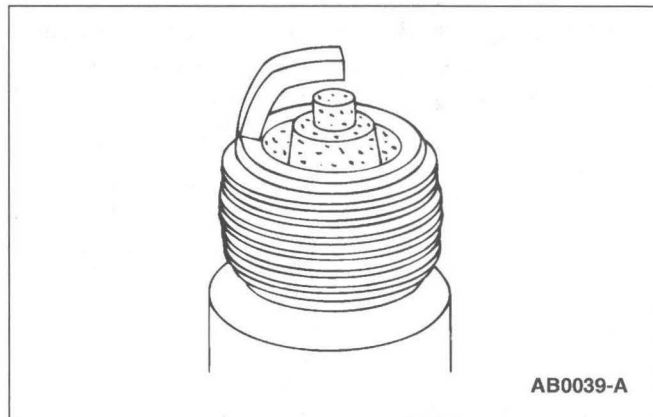
3. Inspect for carbon fouling. Look for black, dry, fluffy carbon deposits on the insulator tips, exposed shell surfaces and electrodes, caused by a spark plug with an incorrect heat range, dirty air cleaner, too rich a fuel mixture or excessive idling.

- Clean the spark plug.



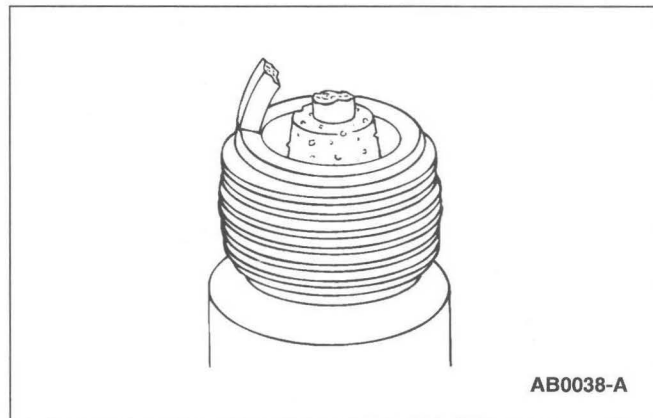
4. Inspect for normal burning.

- Check for light tan or gray deposits on the firing tip.



5. Inspect for pre-ignition, identified by melted electrodes and a possibly damaged insulator. Metallic deposits on the insulator indicate engine damage. This may be caused by incorrect ignition timing, wrong type of fuel or the unauthorized installation of a heli-coil insert in place of the spark plug threads.

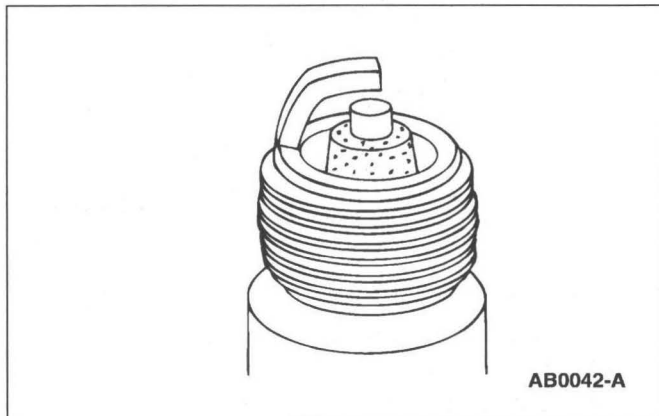
- Install a new spark plug.



GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)

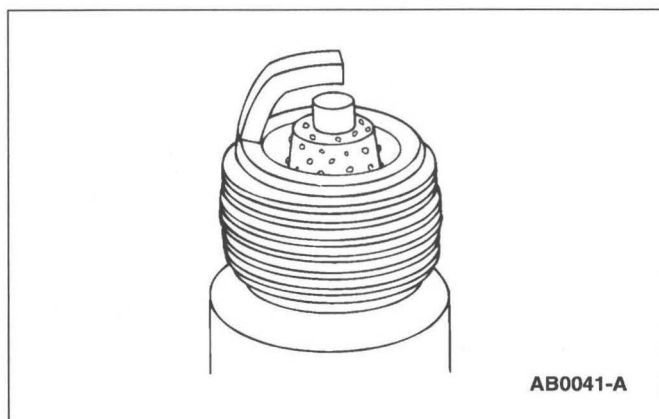
6. Inspect for overheating, identified by a white or light gray spots and with bluish-burnt appearance of electrodes. This is caused by engine overheating, wrong type of fuel, loose spark plugs, spark plugs with an incorrect heat range, low fuel pump pressure or incorrect ignition timing.


- Install a new spark plug.



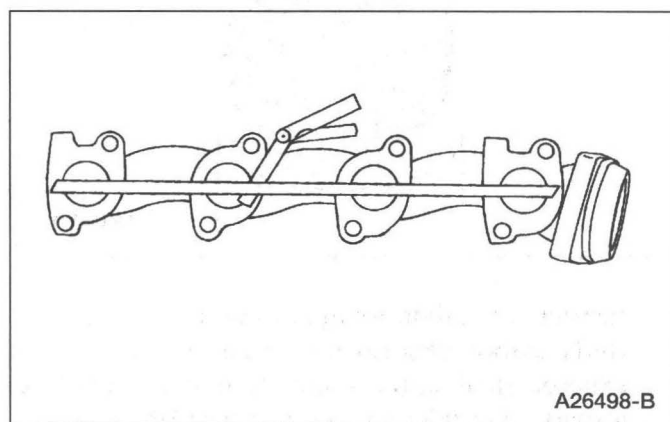
7. Inspect for fused deposits, identified by melted or spotty deposits resembling bubbles or blisters. These are caused by sudden acceleration.

- Clean the spark plug.

**Exhaust Manifold — Inspection****Special Tool(s)**

	Straight Edge 303-D039 (D83L-4201-A) or equivalent
ST1246-A	

1. Place a straight edge across the exhaust manifold flanges and check for warping with a feeler gauge.

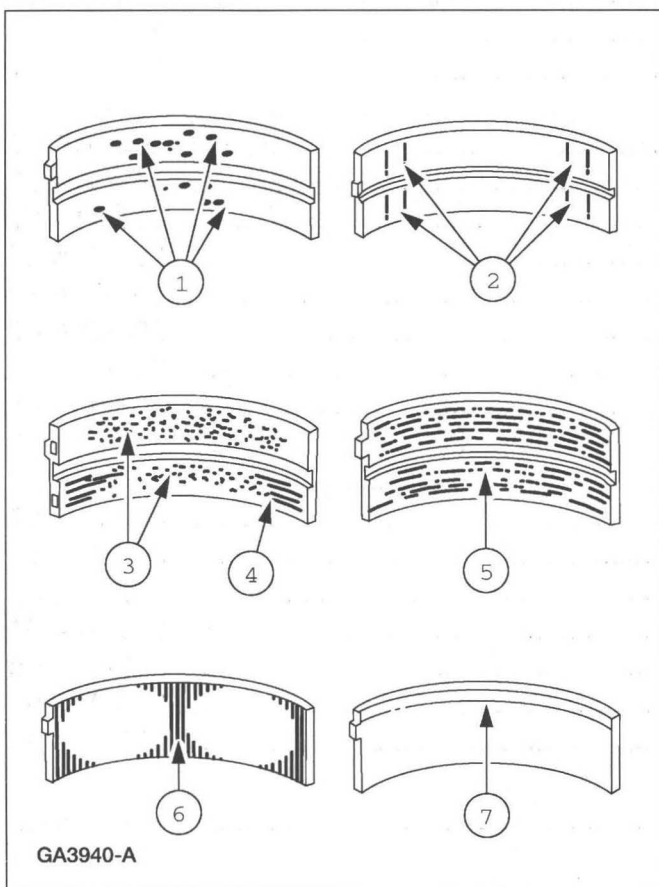


GENERAL PROCEDURES (Continued)**Bearing — Inspection**

1. Inspect bearings for the following defects.

Possible causes are shown:

- 1 Cratering — fatigue failure.
- 2 Spot polishing — incorrect seating.
- 3 Imbedded dirt engine oil.
- 4 Scratching — dirty engine oil.
- 5 Base exposed — poor lubrication.
- 6 Both edges worn — journal damaged.
- 7 One edge worn — journal tapered or bearing not seated.



Manual Table of Contents

SECTION 303-01A Engine — 4.2L

CONTENTS	PAGE
SPECIFICATIONS	303-01A-1
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
Engine	303-01A-5
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
Engine	303-01A-13
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR	
Upper Intake Manifold	303-01A-13
Lower Intake Manifold	303-01A-16
Intake Manifold — Spacer Assembly	303-01A-20
Valve Cover LH	303-01A-24
Valve Cover RH	303-01A-25
Crankshaft Pulley	303-01A-27
Crankshaft Front Oil Seal	303-01A-29
Engine Front Cover	303-01A-30
Valve Spring	303-01A-35
Valve Tappet	303-01A-37
Camshaft	303-01A-38
Engine Dynamic Balance Shaft	303-01A-39
Timing Chain — Tensioner	303-01A-40
Exhaust Manifold LH	303-01A-43
Exhaust Manifold RH	303-01A-44
Cylinder Head	303-01A-45
Oil Level Indicator and Tube	303-01A-52
Oil Pan — 4x2	303-01A-52
Oil Pan — 4x4	303-01A-54
Oil Pump	303-01A-56
Oil Pump Screen and Pickup Tube	303-01A-57
Flywheel	303-01A-58
Flexplate	303-01A-58
Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal	303-01A-59
REMOVAL	
Engine	303-01A-60
DISASSEMBLY	
Engine	303-01A-64
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF SUBASSEMBLIES	
Cylinder Head	303-01A-75
Piston	303-01A-76
ASSEMBLY	
Engine	303-01A-77
INSTALLATION	
Engine	303-01A-94

SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

Item	Specification
Lubricants and Sealants	
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C153-H
Metal Surface Cleaner F4AZ-19A536-RA	WSE-M5B392-A
Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA	WSE-M4G323-A4
Pipe Sealant with Teflon® D8AZ-19554-A	WSK-M2G350-A2
Gasket and Trim Adhesive F3AZ-19B508-AA	ESE-M2G52-A
Engine	
Displacement	4.2L
Number of cylinders	6
Bore	96.8325 mm (3.81 in)
Stroke	95.0 mm (3.8 in)
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Oil pressure (HOT 2,500 rpm)	40-125 psi
Oil capacity	5.5 quarts + 1/2 quart with filter change (6.0 quarts total)
Compression ratio	—
Cylinder Head and Valve Train	
Cylinder head gasket surface flatness	0.18 mm (0.007 in)
Cylinder head gasket surface finish ^a	—
Combustion chamber volume	61.5-64.5
Valve arrangement (front to rear)	—
Valve guide bore diameter	7.015-7.044 mm (0.276-0.277 in)
Valve stem diameter — intake (standard)	6.955-6.988 mm (0.2738-0.2751 in)
Valve stem diameter — exhaust	6.929-6.962 mm (0.2728-0.2741 in)
Valve stem diameter — oversize (intake)	9.075-9.055 mm (0.3573-0.3565 in)
Valve stem diameter — oversize (exhaust)	9.063-9.043 mm (0.3568-0.3560 in)

General Specifications (Continued)

Item	Specification
Valve stem diameter — oversize (intake)	9.456-9.436 mm (0.3723-0.3715 in)
Valve stem diameter — oversize (exhaust)	9.444-9.424 mm (0.3718-0.3710 in)
Valve stem-to-guide clearance — intake	0.020-0.069 mm (0.045-0.090 in)
Valve stem-to-guide clearance — exhaust	0.038-0.083 mm (0.0015-0.0033 in)
Valve head diameter — intake	47.27 mm (1.86 in)
Valve head diameter — exhaust	37.1 mm (1.46 in)
Valve face runout	0.05 mm (0.002 in)
Valve face angle	45.675 degrees
Valve seat width	1.5-2.0 mm (0.06-0.08 in)
Valve seat runout (T.I.R.)	0.076 mm (0.003 in)
Valve seat angle	44.75 degrees
Valve spring free length	—
Valve spring squareness	—
Valve spring compression pressure — valve open (without damper)	1000 N (224 lbs) @ 29.2 mm (1.16 in)
Valve spring compression pressure — valve closed (without damper)	350 N (79 lbs) @ 40.7 mm (1.62 in)
Valve spring installed height	40.7 mm (1.62 in)
Valve spring installed pressure	—
Rocker arm ratio	1.73
Hydraulic Lash Adjuster	
Diameter (standard)	22.195-22.212 mm (0.8738-0.8745 in)
Clearance-to-bore	0.018-0.068 mm (0.0007-0.0027 in)
Service limit	0.127 mm (0.005 in)
Hydraulic leakdown rate	^b
Collapsed lash adjuster gap — intake	2.25-4.79 mm (0.089-0.189 in)
Collapsed lash adjuster gap — exhaust	2.25-4.79 mm (0.089-0.189 in)
Camshaft	
Theoretical valve lift @ 0 lash — intake	11.30 mm (0.45 in)

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)**General Specifications (Continued)**

Item	Specification
Theoretical valve lift @ 0 lash — exhaust	11.47 mm (0.45 in)
Lobe lift — intake	6.22 mm (0.24 in)
Lobe lift — exhaust	6.57 mm (0.26 in)
Allowable lobe lift loss	0.127 mm (0.005 in)
Journal diameter	52.082-52.108 mm (2.0505-2.0515 in)
Camshaft journal bore inside diameter — intake	47.097 mm (1.8542 in) max. 47.072 mm (1.8532 in) min.
Camshaft journal bore inside diameter — exhaust	39.739 mm (1.5645 in) max. 39.714 mm (1.5635 in) min.
Camshaft journal-to-bearing clearance	0.025-0.076 mm (0.001-0.003 in)
Runout	0.05 mm (0.002 in) runout of No. 2 or No. 3 relative to No. 1 and No. 4
End play	0.025-0.150 mm (0.001-0.006 in)
Cylinder Block	
Cylinder bore diameter	96.813 mm (3.81 in)
Cylinder bore maximum taper	0.050 mm (0.002 in)
Cylinder bore maximum out-of-round — limit	0.025 mm (0.001 in)
Cylinder bore maximum out-of-round — service limit	0.050 mm (0.002 in)
Main bearing bore inside diameter	68.905 mm (2.713 in) 68.885 mm (2.712 in)
Camshaft bearing bore inside diameter — No. 1	55.689-55.664 mm (2.192-2.191 in)
Camshaft bearing bore inside diameter — No. 2 and No. 3	55.308-55.283 mm (2.177-2.176 in)
Camshaft bearing bore inside diameter — No. 4	55.684-55.664 mm (2.192-2.191 in)
Head gasket surface flatness	0.08 mm (0.003 in) in 152.0 mm (6.00 in)
Head gasket surface finish (RMS)	2.0 @ 0.85.5 @ 2.5
Crankshaft	

General Specifications (Continued)

Item	Specification
Main bearing journal diameter — 1, 2, 3	63.983-64.003 mm (2.5190-2.5198 in)
Main bearing journal maximum taper	0.008 mm (0.0003 in) per 25 mm (1 in)
Main bearing journal maximum out-of-round	0.008 mm (0.0003 in) MAX in 45 degrees, 0.015 mm (0.006 in) TOTAL
Main bearing journal-to-cylinder block clearance — desired	0.025-0.035 mm (0.001-0.0014 in)
Main bearing journal-to-cylinder block clearance — allowable	0.013-0.058 mm (0.0005-0.0023 in)
Connecting rod journal diameter	—
Connecting rod journal maximum taper	—
Connecting rod journal maximum out-of-round	—
Crankshaft maximum end play	0.10-0.20 mm (0.004-0.008 in)
Thrust bearing journal diameter	58.682-58.702 mm (2.3103-2.3111 in)
Thrust bearing journal maximum out-of-round	0.008 mm (0.0003 in) max. in 45 degrees, 0.015mm (0.0006 in) total
Thrust bearing journal maximum taper — limit	0.008 mm per 25 mm (0.0003 in per in)
Thrust bearing journal maximum taper — service limit	0.3 microns (11.8 micro in)
Thrust bearing journal length	29.725-29.775 mm (1.703-1.722 in)
Piston and Connecting Rod	
Piston diameter — coded red	96.795-96.782 mm (3.81082-3.81031 in)
Piston diameter — coded blue	96.808-96.795 mm (3.81133-3.81082 in)
Piston diameter — coded yellow	96.821-96.808 mm (3.81184-3.81133 in)
Piston-to-cylinder bore clearance (uncoated clearance)	0.018-0.044 mm (0.00071-0.00173 in)
Piston ring end gap — compression (top, in gauge)	0.17-0.33 mm (in)

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)**General Specifications (Continued)**

Item	Specification
Piston ring end gap — compression (bottom, in gauge)	0.3-0.55 mm (in)
Piston ring end gap — oil ring (steel rail, in gauge)	0.15-0.65 mm (0.006-0.026 in)
Piston ring groove width — compression (top and bottom)	1.54-1.52 mm (0.0606-0.0598 in)
Piston ring groove width — oil	3.05-3.03 mm (0.12001-0.11929 in)
Piston ring width — compression (top and bottom)	1.460-1.490 mm (0.05748-0.05866 in)
Piston ring width — oil ring	Side seal, snug fit ring
Piston ring-to-groove clearance — 1st ring	0.030-0.080 mm (0.00118-0.00315 in)
Piston ring-to-groove clearance — 2nd ring	0.030-0.080 mm (0.00118-0.00315 in)
Piston pin bore diameter	23.014-23.018 mm (0.90606-0.90622 in)
Piston pin diameter	23.000-23.003 mm (0.90551-0.90563 in)
Piston pin length	63.55-63.05 mm (2.5096-2.4823 in)
Piston pin-to-piston fit	0.011-0.018 mm (0.00043-0.00071 in)
Piston-to-connecting rod clearance	Press fit 8 kilonewtons (1,800 lbs)
Connecting rod-to-pin clearance	—
Connecting rod pin bore diameter	22.94-22.98 mm (0.90315-0.90472 in)
Connecting rod length (center-to-center)	154.66-154.74 mm (6.08896-6.09211 in)
Connecting rod maximum allowable bend	0.04 per 25 mm (0.0016 per in)
Connecting rod maximum allowable twist	0.059 per 25 mm (0.002 per in)
Connecting rod bearing bore diameter	61.635-61.655 mm (2.4266-2.4274 in)
Connecting rod bearing-to-crankshaft clearance — desired	0.025-0.035 mm (0.001-0.0014 in)
Connecting rod bearing-to-crankshaft clearance — allowable	0.022-0.069 mm (0.00086-0.0027 in)

General Specifications (Continued)

Item	Specification
Connecting rod side clearance (assembled to crank) — standard	0.11-0.49 mm (0.0047-0.01929 in)
Connecting rod side clearance (assembled to crank) — service limit	0.36 mm (0.014 in) max.
Balance Shaft	
Journal diameter	52.108-52.082 mm (2.0515-2.0505 in)
Bore inside diameter	55.689-55.664 mm (2.192-2.191 in)
Maximum runout	0.025 mm (0.001 in)
End play	0.075-0.200 mm (0.003-0.008 in)

- a Head gasket surface — WT=12/2.5. Head gasket surface finish — RZU-13.5 micron. Filter cut off at 0.08 min TPI @ 3.5 microns below the peak 63 % min. Cut off at 0.08 mm (0.031496 in), O Ref=2V.
- b 20-200 seconds to leakdown 3.18 mm (0.125 in) with 225 N (50 lbs) load and tappet filled with leak-down fluid.

Torque Specifications

Description	Nm	lb-ft	lb-in
EGR transducer bracket-to-intake manifold bolts	10	—	89
Ignition coil-to-valve cover	6	—	53
Water outlet tube-to-intake manifold stud bolt	10	—	89
EGR tube-to-EGR valve nut	40	30	—
Water outlet tube-to-front water pump bolt	10	—	89
Fuel supply manifold bolts	10	—	89
LH valve cover-to-cylinder head bolts	10	—	89
LH valve cover-to-cylinder head stud bolts	10	—	89
EGR tube-to-exhaust manifold nut	40	30	—

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)**Torque Specifications (Continued)**

Description	Nm	lb-ft	lb-in
RH valve cover-to-cylinder head bolts	10	—	89
RH valve cover-to-cylinder head stud bolts	10	—	89
Coolant recovery reservoir-to-cylinder head stud bolts	10	—	89
Coolant recovery reservoir-to-bracket bolts	5	—	44
Crankshaft damper bolt	150	111	—
Exhaust manifold flange nuts	40	30	—
Camshaft position sensor bolts	3	—	27
Camshaft synchronizer-to-front-cover bolt	25	18	—
Front cover-to-cylinder block bolts ^a	—	—	—
Radiator fan shroud-to-radiator bolts	9	—	80
Camshaft thrust plate-to-cylinder block bolts	12	9	—
Camshaft synchronizer drive gear-to-camshaft bolt	45	33	—
Timing chain tensioner-to-cylinder block bolts	12	9	—
Power steering pump bolts	25	18	—
IMRC mounting bracket	10	—	89
Power steering pump reservoir bolts	10	—	89
A/C compressor manifold bolt	21	15	—
Exhaust manifold-to-cylinder head nuts	33	24	—
Power steering pump bracket-to-water pump nuts	20	15	—

Torque Specifications (Continued)

Description	Nm	lb-ft	lb-in
Power steering pump bracket-to-generator bracket bolts	20	15	—
Generator bracket-to-cylinder head bolts	40	30	—
Exhaust manifold studs	8	—	71
A/C compressor bracket-to-cylinder head bolts	48	35	—
A/C compressor bracket-to-cylinder head nut	48	35	—
A/C compressor bracket-to-cylinder head stud bolt	25	18	—
Oil level indicator tube-to-cylinder head bolt	10	—	89
Coolant recovery reservoir bracket-to-GOP bolts	9	—	80
Motor mount-to-subframe nuts	115	85	—
Oil pan drain plug	26	19	—
Wire harness bracket to motor mount nut	27	20	—
Steering column pinch bolt	47	35	—
Front subframe-to-body bolts	90	66	—
Front subframe-to-shock tower bolts	115	85	—
Oil pan-to-cylinder block bolts ^a	—	—	—
Oil pan-to-transmission bell housing	45	33	—
Oil pan baffle nuts	48	35	—
Oil pump cover-to-engine front cover bolts	25	18	—
Oil pump cover-to-engine front cover bolt	10	89	—
Oil pickup tube-to-cylinder block bolts	25	18	—

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)**Torque Specifications (Continued)**

Description	Nm	lb-ft	lb-in
Oil pickup tube-to-oil pan baffle nut	48	35	—
Flywheel-to-crankshaft bolts	80	59	—
Wire harness bracket-to-motor mount stud-nut	27	20	—
Engine ground strap-to-motor mount nut	27	20	—
Motor mount-to-motor mount bracket bolts	70	52	—
RH motor mount-to-motor mount bracket nut	70	52	—
Hood ground strap-to-hood hinge bolt	12	9	—
Hood hinge nuts	12	9	—
Generator positive cable nut	10	—	89
Power steering pressure tube to pump nut	40	30	—
42-pin connector bolt	10	—	89
Transmission oil cooler tube bracket-to-motor mount bracket nut	27	20	—
Torque converter-to-flywheel nuts	36	27	—

Torque Specifications (Continued)

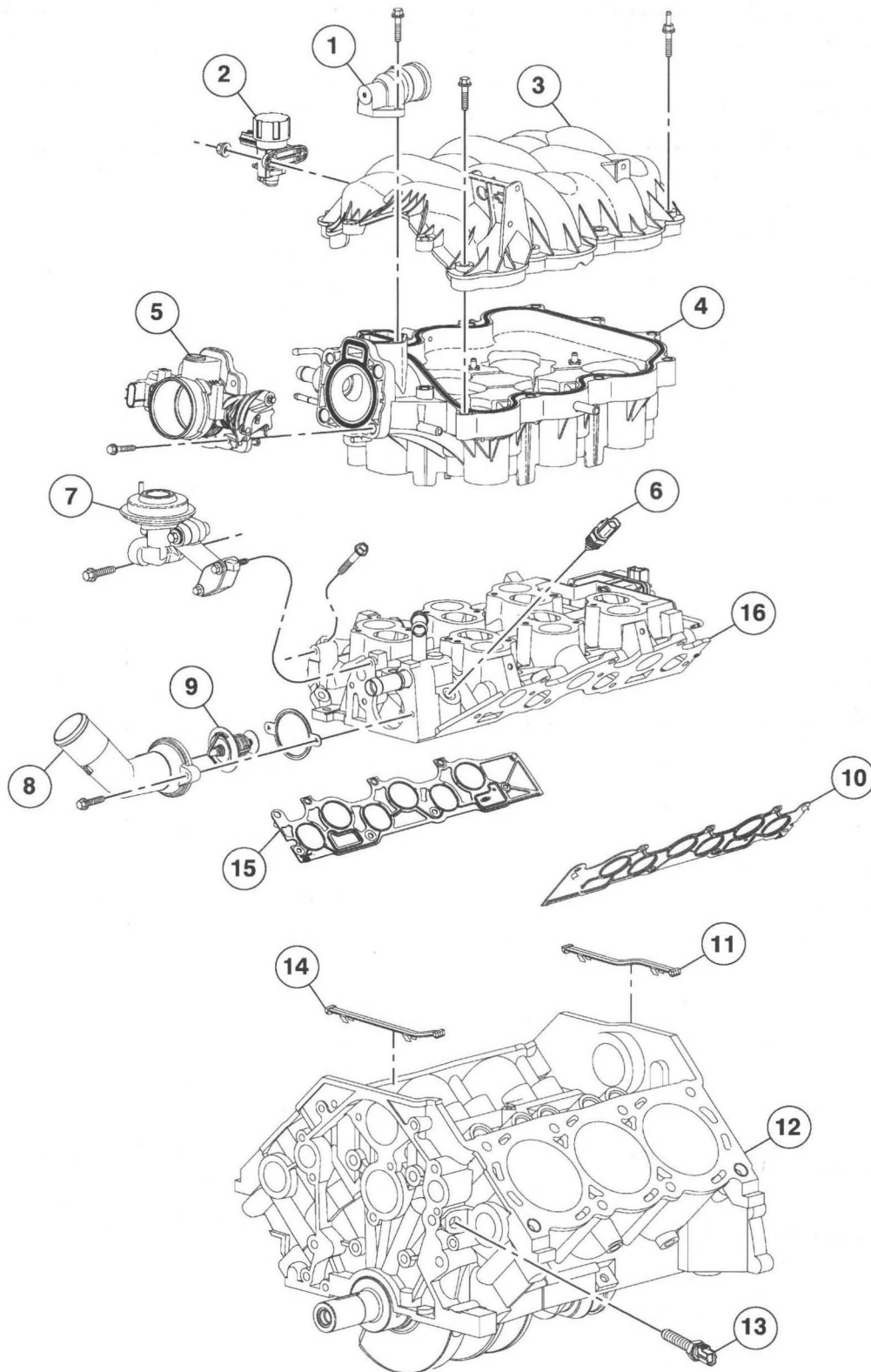
Description	Nm	lb-ft	lb-in
Engine-to-transmission bolts	40	30	—
Motor mount bracket-to-engine bolts	70	52	—
Motor mount bracket-to-engine nuts	70	52	—
Water pump pulley bolts	25	18	—
Oil bypass filter ^a	—	—	—
Upper intake manifold-to-lower intake manifold bolts ^a	—	—	—
Lower intake manifold-to-cylinder head bolts ^a	—	—	—
Rocker arm pivot-to-cylinder head bolts ^a	—	—	—
Intake manifold spacer assembly ^a	—	—	—
Cylinder head bolts ^a	—	—	—
Crankshaft main bearing bolts ^a	—	—	—
Connecting rod cap bolts ^a	—	—	—

a Refer to the procedure.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION**Engine**

The 4.2L engine has:

- a V-block with six cylinders and splayed crankpins
- a distributorless ignition system
- a multiport, sequential fuel injection (SFI) system
- a variable length induction system (intake manifold runner control)
- overhead valves
- hydraulic valve tappets (6500) for automatic lash adjustment
- connecting rod parting faces that are unique with an interference fit
- an engine dynamic balance shaft (6A311)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Major Upper Engine Components**

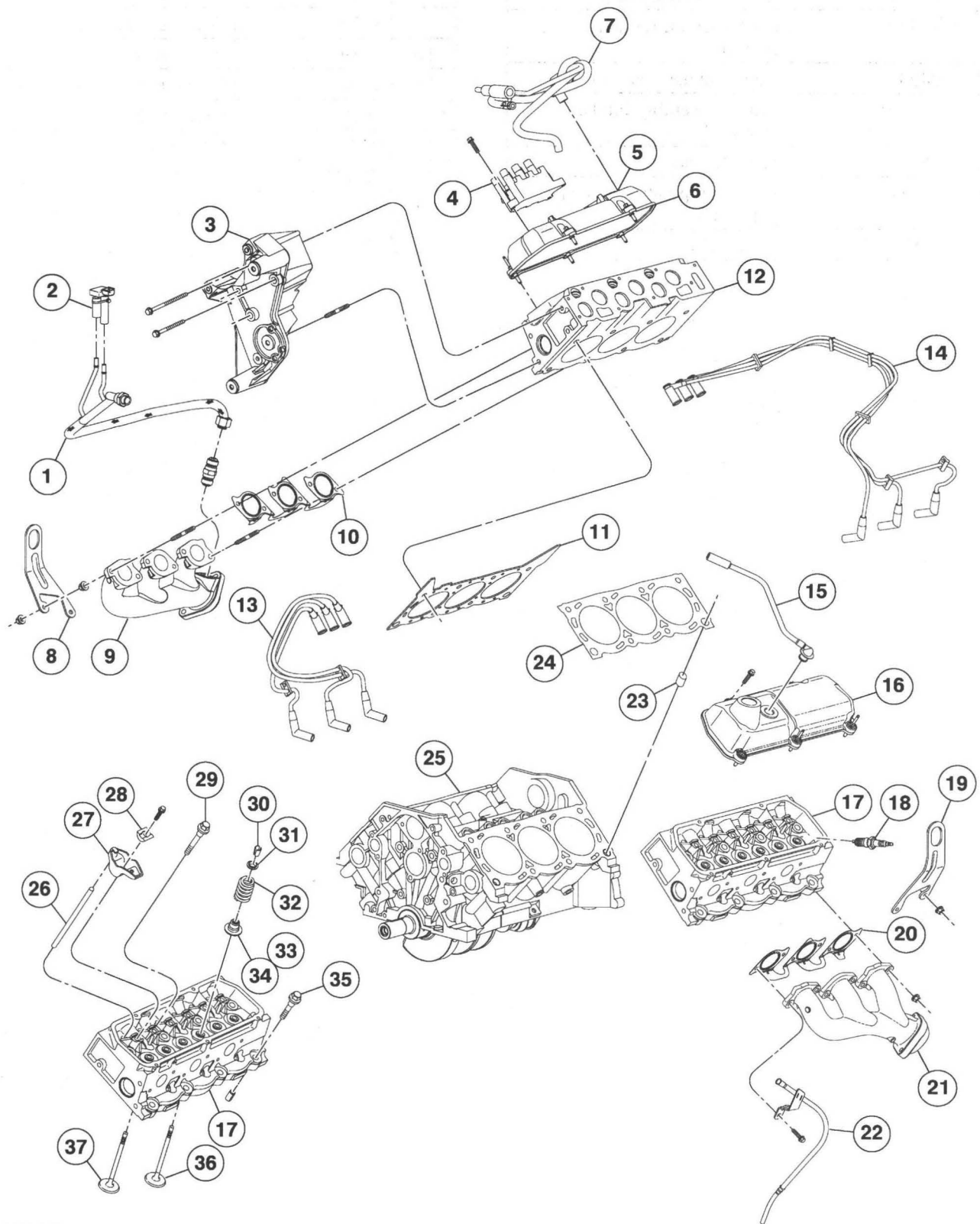
A0032746

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
1	9F715	Idle air control valve
2	95459	EGR vacuum regulator control
3	9424	Upper intake manifold
4	9A589	Spacer assembly intake manifold
5	9E926	Throttle body
6	10884	Water temperature indicator sender unit
7	9D475	EGR valve

(Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
8	8592	Water hose connection
9	8575	Water thermostat
10	9439	Intake manifold gasket— LH
11	9A424	Intake manifold seal rear
12	6010	Cylinder block
13	9278	Oil pressure sensor
14	9A424	Intake manifold seal front
15	9439	Intake manifold gasket— RH
16	9424	Intake manifold

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Cylinder Heads and Valve Train**

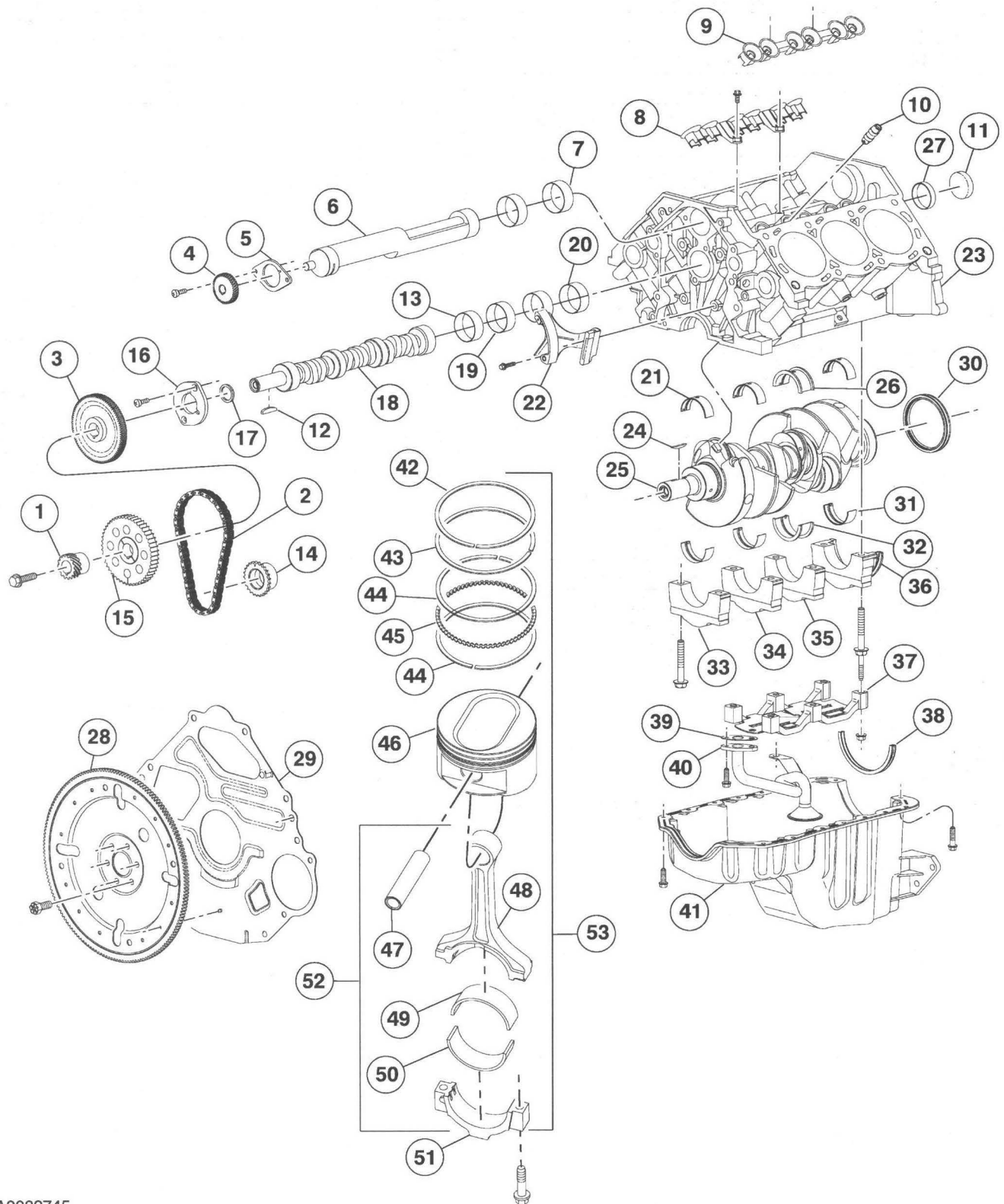
A0031045

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
1	9D477	EGR valve to exhaust manifold tube
2	9J433	EGR sensor
3	10039	Generator bracket
4	12029	Ignition coil
5	6A666	Positive crankcase ventilation valve
6	6582	Valve cover (RH)
7	6758	Crankcase ventilation tube
8	17A084	Engine lifting eye
9	9430	Exhaust manifold (RH)
10	9448	Exhaust manifold gasket (RH)
11	6051	Head gasket (RH)
12	6049	Cylinder head (RH)
13	12280	Ignition wire and bracket (RH)
14	12280	Ignition wire and bracket (LH)
15	6C324	Crankcase vent connector and hose
16	6582	Valve cover (LH)
17	6049	Cylinder head (LH)
18	12405	Spark plug (6 required)
19	17A084	Engine lifting eye

(Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
20	9448	Exhaust manifold gasket (LH)
21	9430	Exhaust manifold (LH)
22	6754	Oil level indicator tube
23	6A008	Cylinder head to block dowel (4 required)
24	6051	Head gasket
25	6010	Cylinder block
26	6565	Push rod (6 required)
27	6564	Rocker arm (6 required)
28	6A528	Rocker arm seat (6 required)
29	N807699	bolt (4 required)
30	6518	Valve spring retainer key (12 required)
31	6514	Valve spring retainer (6 required)
32	6513	Valve spring (6 required)
33	6571	Valve stem seal (6 required)
34	6514	Valve spring retainer (6 required)
35	N807324	Bolt (4 required)
36	6507	Intake valve (6 required)
37	6505	Exhaust valve (6 required)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Cylinder Block and Lower End Components**

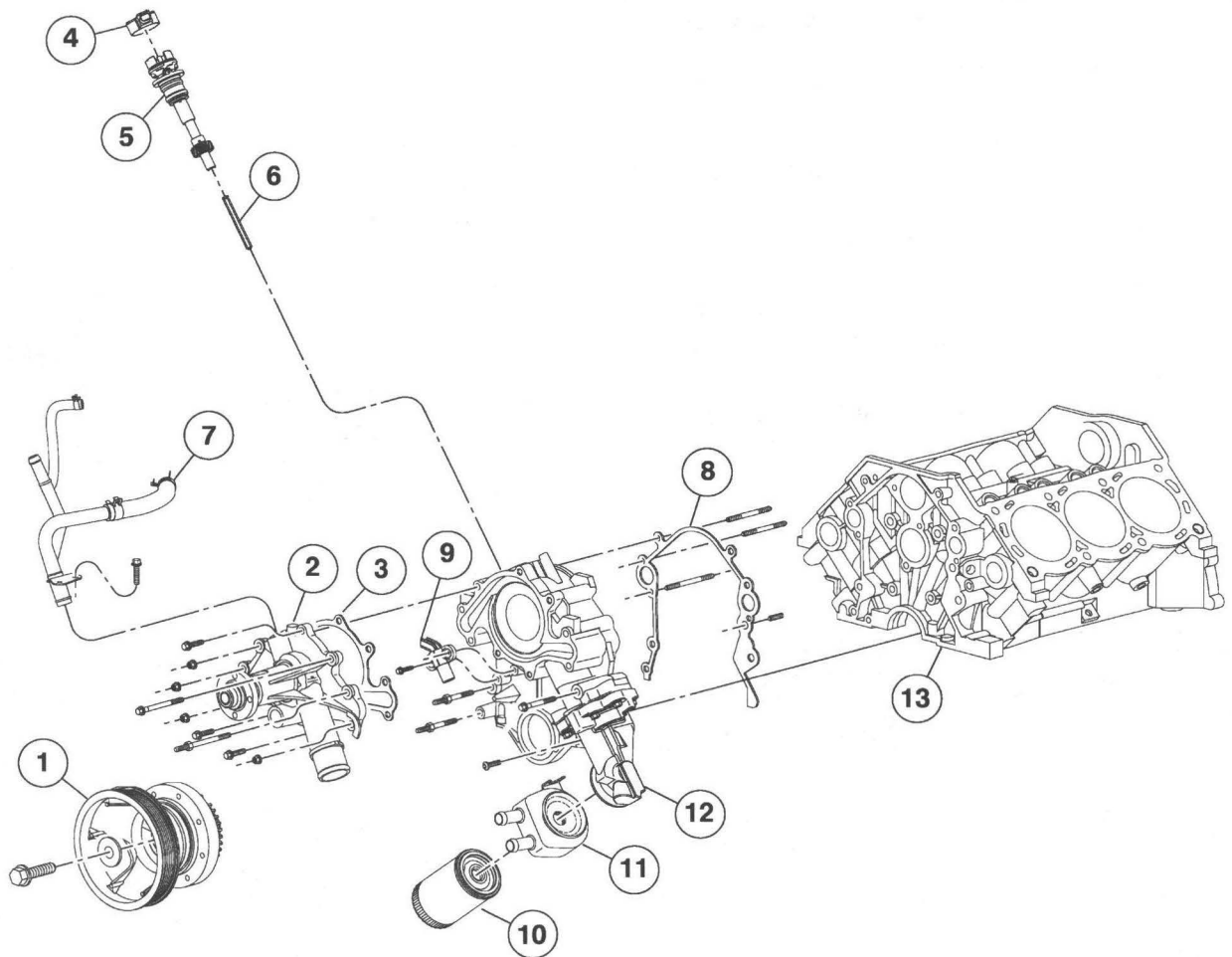
A0032745

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
1	6255	Distributor drive gear
2	6268	Timing chain
3	6A303	Engine balance shaft drive gear
4	6A304	Engine balance shaft driven gear
5	6C341	Balance shaft thrust plate
6	6A311	Engine dynamic balance shaft
7	6A333	Balance shaft front and rear bearing (2 required)
8	6K564	Tappet guide plate and retainer (RH)
9	6K564	Tappet guide plate and retainer (LH)
10	6500	Valve tappet (12 required)
11	6A335	Balance shaft cover plug
12	N805256	Woodruff key
13	6261	Camshaft bearing
14	6306	Crankshaft sprocket
15	6256	Camshaft sprocket
16	6269	Camshaft thrust plate
17	6265	Camshaft sprocket spacer
18	6250	Camshaft
19	6262	Camshaft center bearing (2 required)
20	6263	Camshaft rear bearing
21	6333	Crankshaft main bearing (3 required)
22	6284	Timing chain vibration damper
23	6010	Cylinder block
24	388907	Woodruff key
25	6303	Crankshaft
26	6337	Crankshaft thrust main bearing
27	6266	Camshaft rear bearing cover (2 required)

(Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
28	6375	Flywheel
29	6A372	Engine rear plate
30	6701	Crankshaft rear oil seal
31	6333	Crankshaft main bearing (3 required)
32	6337	Crankshaft thrust main bearing
33	6329	Main bearing cap
34	6334	Main bearing cap
35	6327	Main bearing cap
36	6325	Rear main bearing cap
37	6A835	Oil pan baffle assembly
38	6723	Oil pan rear seal
39	6626	Oil pump inlet tube gasket
40	6622	Oil pump screen cover and tube
41	6675	Oil pan
42	6150	Piston ring (6 required)
43	6152	Piston ring (6 required)
44	6159	Piston ring (6 required)
45	6161	Piston ring (6 required)
46	6108	Piston
47	6135	Piston pin (6 required)
48	6200	Connecting rod (6 required)
49	6211	Connecting rod bearing (upper) (6 required)
50	6211	Connecting rod bearing (lower) (6 required)
51	6210	Connecting rod cap (6 required)
52	6200	Connecting rod assembly (6 required)
53	6100	Piston and connecting rod assembly (6 required)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)**Engine Front Cover Components**

A0032747

Item	Part Number	Description
1	6312	Crankshaft pulley
2	8501	Water pump
3	8507	Water pump housing gasket
4	12A112	Camshaft position sensor
5	12A362	Camshaft synchronizer
6	6A618	Oil pump intermediate shaft
7	18663	Heater water outlet tube

(Continued)

Item	Part Number	Description
8	6020	Engine front cover gasket
9	6C315	Crankshaft position sensor
10	6714	Oil bypass filter
11	6A642	Oil cooler
12	6019	Engine front cover
13	6010	Cylinder block

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

Engine

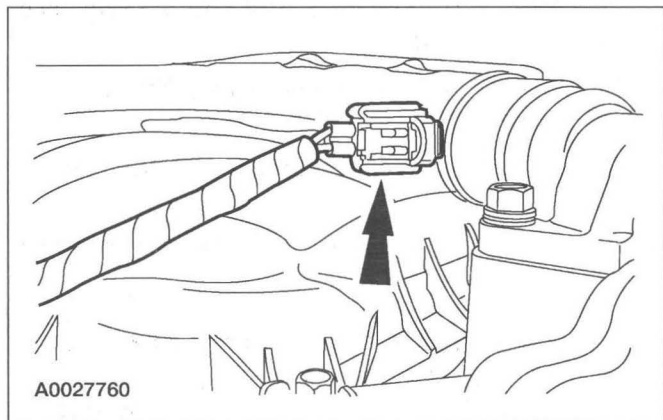
Refer to Section 303-00 for basic mechanical concerns or refer to the Powertrain Control/Emissions Diagnosis (PC/ED) manual for driveability concerns.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR

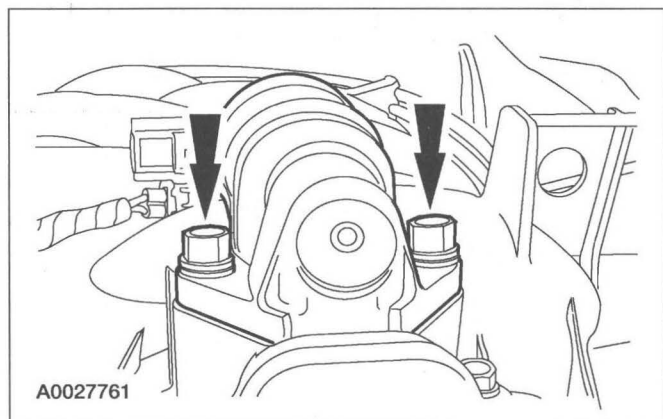
Upper Intake Manifold

Removal

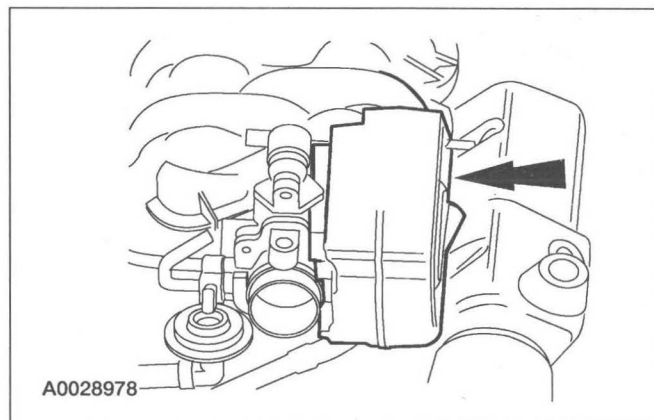
1. Remove the engine air cleaner outlet tube. For additional information, refer to Section 303-12.
2. Disconnect the idle air control (IAC) valve electrical connector.



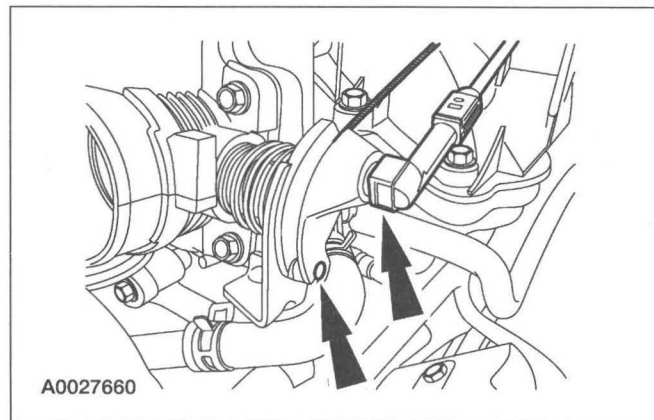
3. Remove the idle air control (IAC) valve assembly.



4. Remove the pushpin and the accelerator control splash shield.

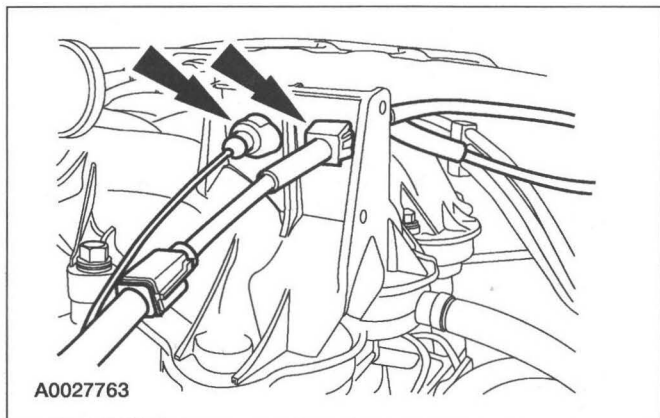


5. Disconnect the accelerator cable end and, if equipped, the speed control actuator cable end.

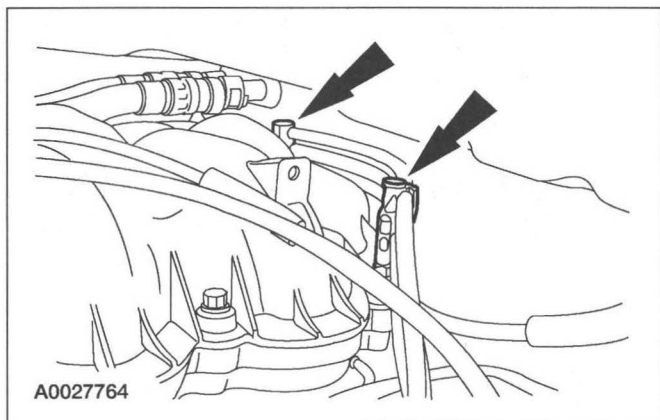


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

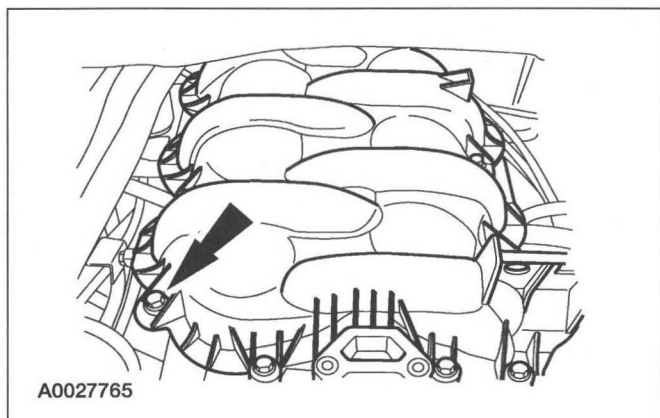
6. Detach the accelerator cable (9A758) and, if equipped, the speed control actuator cable (9A825).



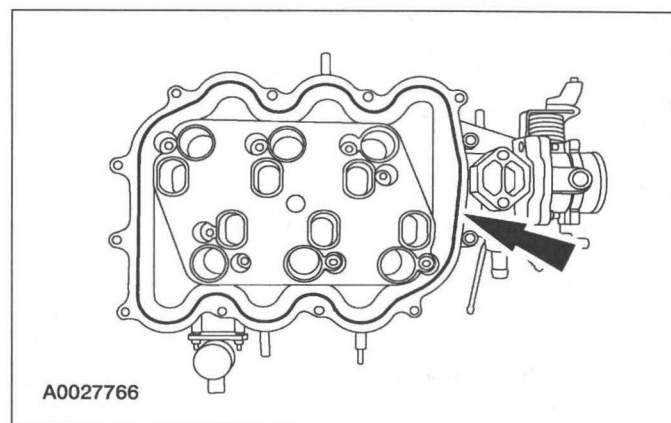
7. Remove the crankcase ventilation hose. Disconnect the spark plug wire holders.



8. Remove the twelve bolts and the upper intake manifold.

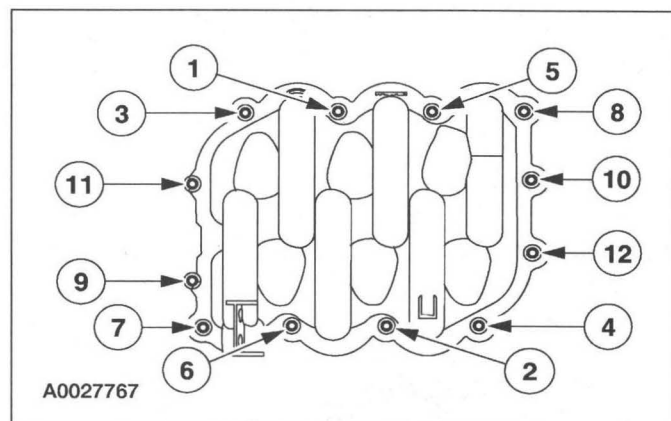
**Installation**

1. Inspect the intake manifold upper gasket. Install a new gasket, if necessary.



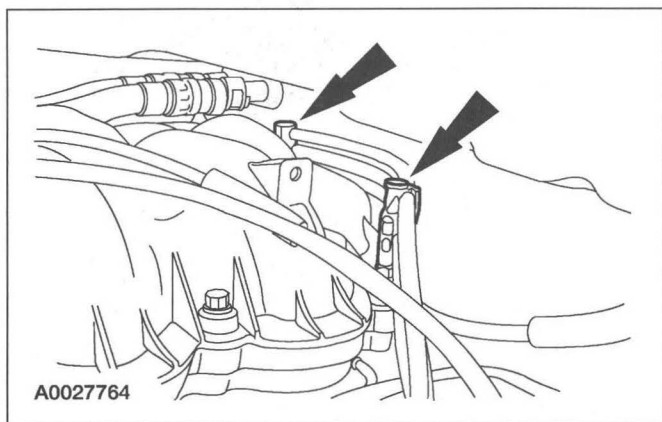
2. Position the upper intake manifold and tighten the upper intake manifold bolts in the sequence shown in two stages.

- Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 6 Nm (53 lb-in).
- Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 10 Nm (89 lb-in)

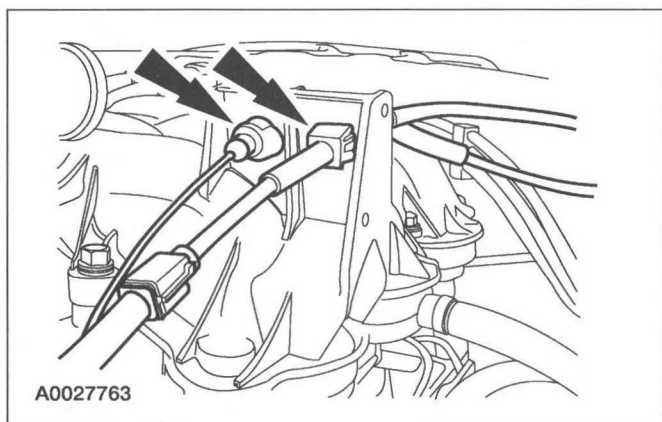


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

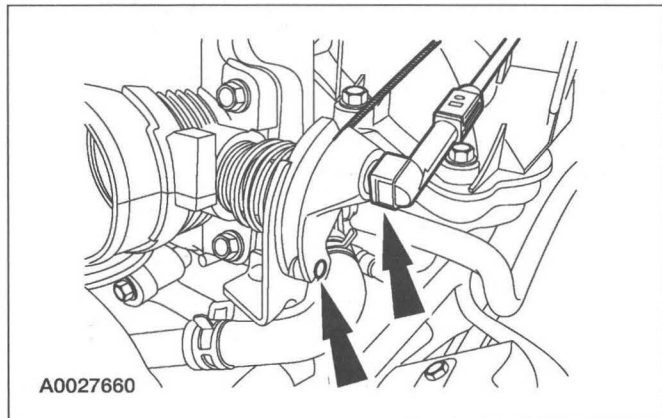
3. Connect the spark plug wire holders.



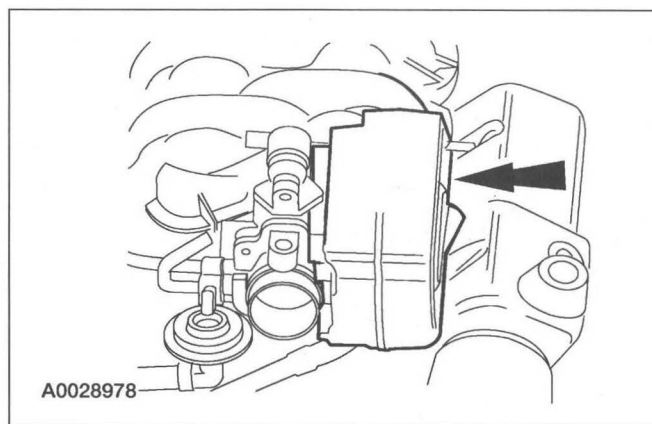
4. Install the accelerator cable and, if equipped, the speed control actuator cable.



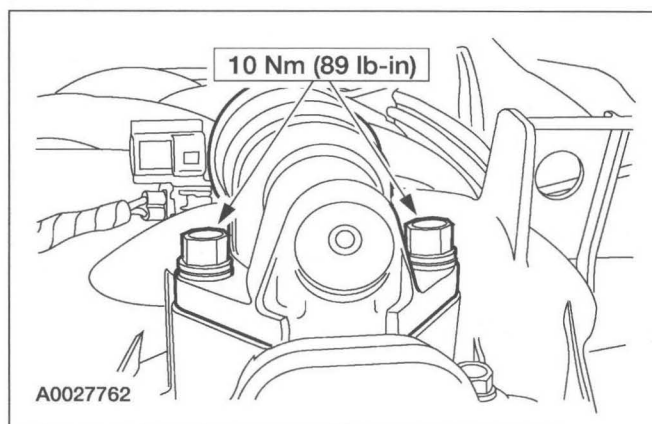
5. Attach the accelerator cable end and, if equipped, the speed control actuator cable end.



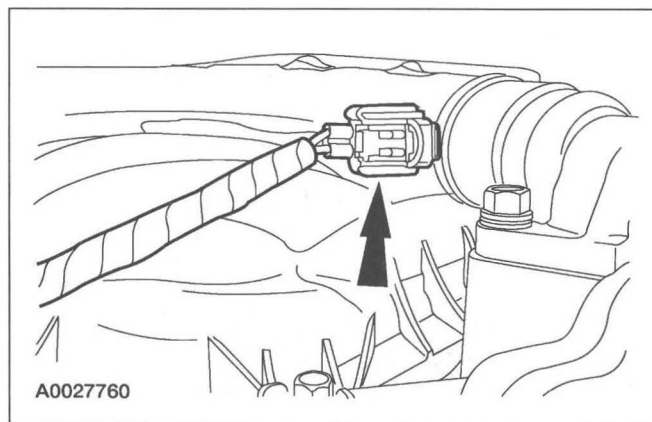
6. Position the accelerator control splash shield and install a new pushpin.



7. Install the idle air control (IAC) valve assembly.



8. Connect the idle air control (IAC) valve electrical connector.



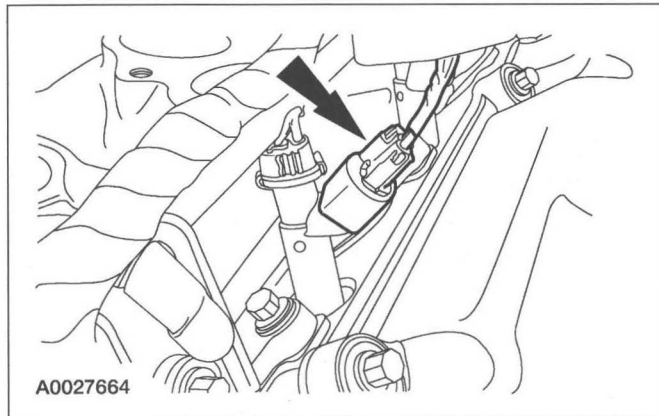
9. Install the engine air cleaner outlet tube. For additional information, refer to Section 303-12.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Lower Intake Manifold****Material**

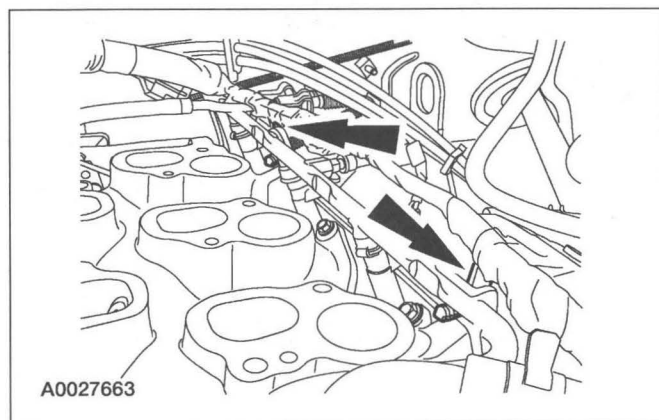
Item	Specification
Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA or equivalent	WSE-M4G323-A4

Removal

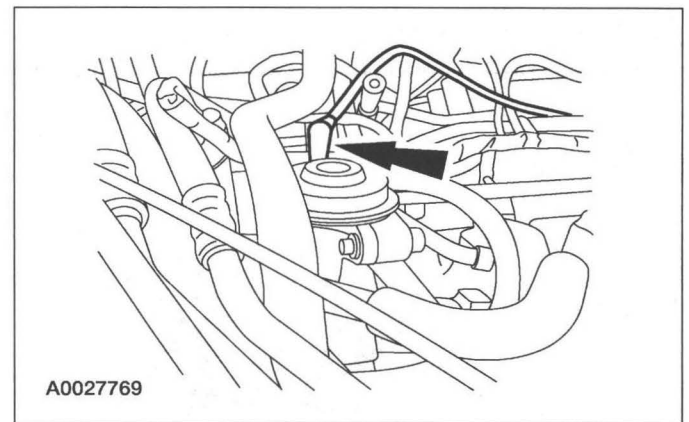
1. Remove the intake manifold spacer assembly. For additional information, refer to Intake Manifold—Spacer Assembly in this section.
2. **NOTE:** One shown, all are similar.
Disconnect the fuel injector electrical connectors.



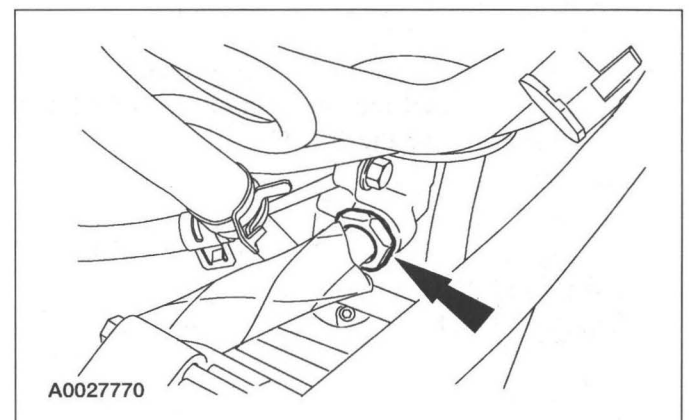
3. **NOTE:** Left side shown, right side similar.
Disconnect the fuel injector electrical harness from the fuel injector supply manifold.



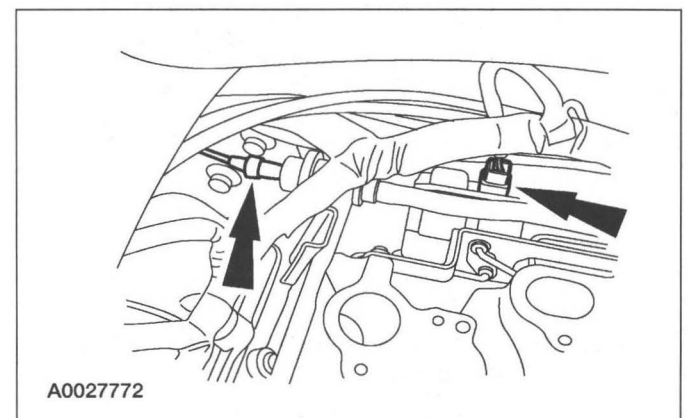
4. Disconnect the exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) valve vacuum hose.



5. Remove the EGR valve to exhaust manifold tube upper fitting.



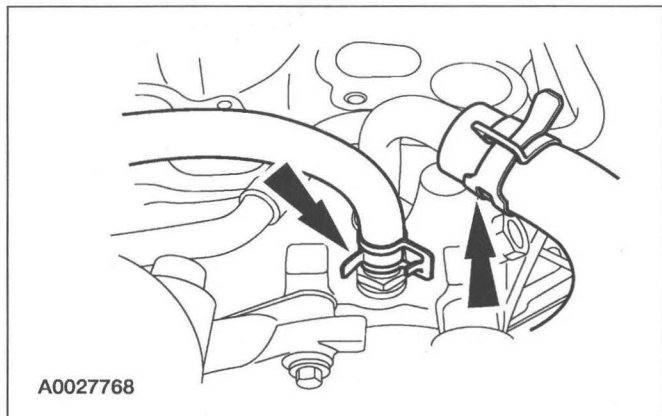
6. Remove the upper radiator hose from the lower intake manifold.
7. Disconnect the intake manifold runner control (IMRC) electrical connector and the fuel pressure regulator vacuum line.



8. Disconnect the fuel lines. For additional information, refer to Section 310-01A.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

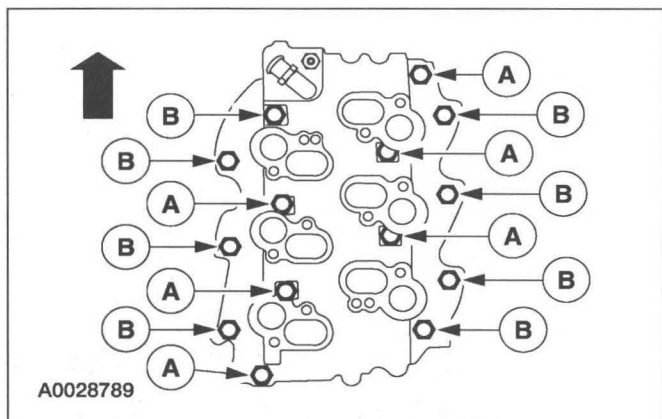
9. Disconnect the water bypass hose and the heated positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) system heater water hose.



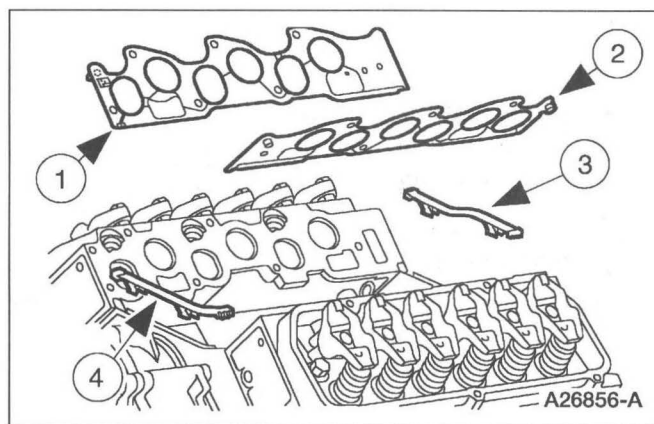
10. **NOTE:** Remove the lower intake manifold including the fuel injection supply manifold, the fuel injectors and the IMRC.

NOTE: If a new lower intake manifold will be installed, the fuel injection supply manifold, fuel injectors and the IMRC will need to be transferred. For additional information, refer to Section 303-04A for the fuel supply manifold and fuel injectors and Section 303-14 for the IMRC.

Remove the (A) long lower intake manifold bolts, the (B) short lower intake manifold bolts and remove the lower intake manifold.



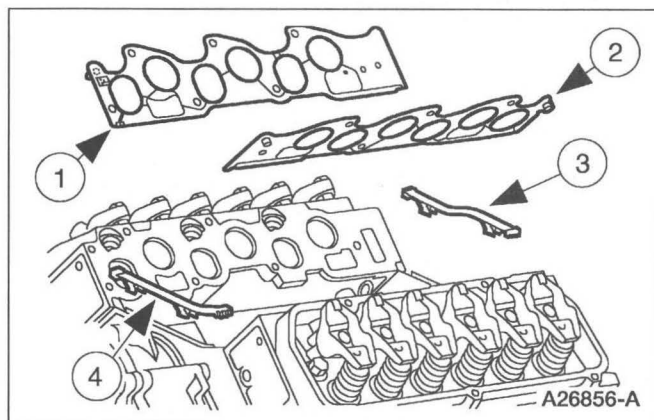
11. Remove and discard the lower intake manifold sealing components.



Item	Part Number	Description
1	9439	Intake manifold gasket — RH
2	9441	Intake manifold gasket — LH
3	9A424	Intake manifold rear end seal (part of 9439)
4	9A425	Intake manifold front end seal (part of 9439)

Installation

1. Refer to the illustration for intake manifold sealing component locations.

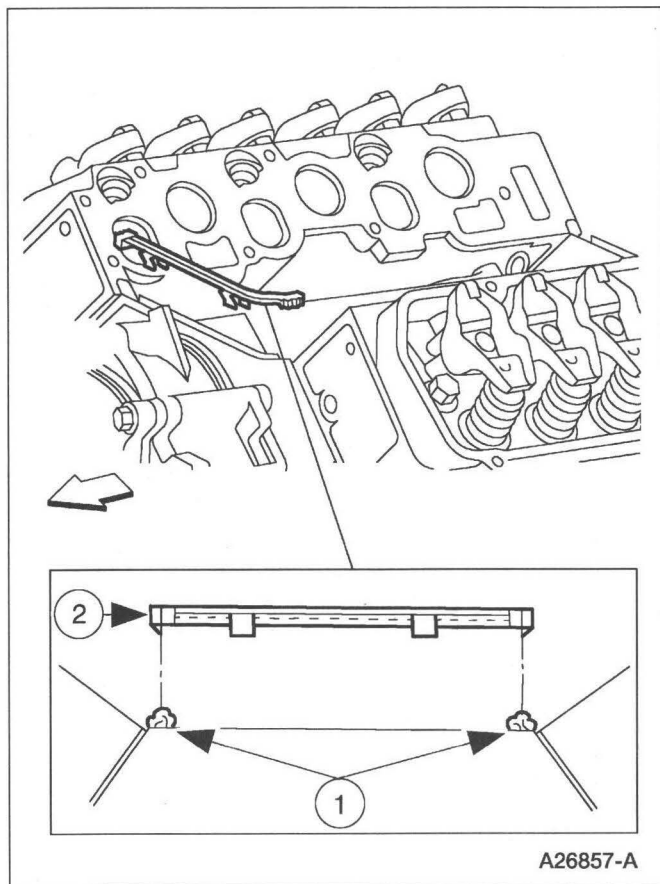


Item	Part Number	Description
1	9439	Intake manifold gasket — RH
2	9441	Intake manifold gasket — LH
3	9A424	Intake manifold rear end seal (part of 9439)
4	9A425	Intake manifold front end seal (part of 9439)

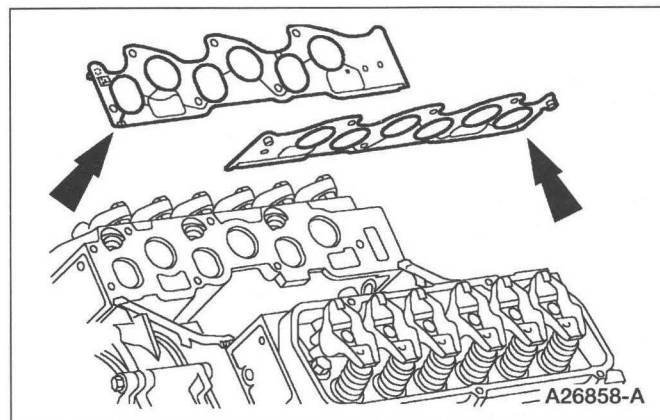
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

2. Install the lower intake manifold front and rear end seals.

- 1 Apply a bead of silicone gasket and sealant to the intake manifold front and rear end seal mounting points as indicated.
- 2 Install the lower intake manifold front and rear end seals.



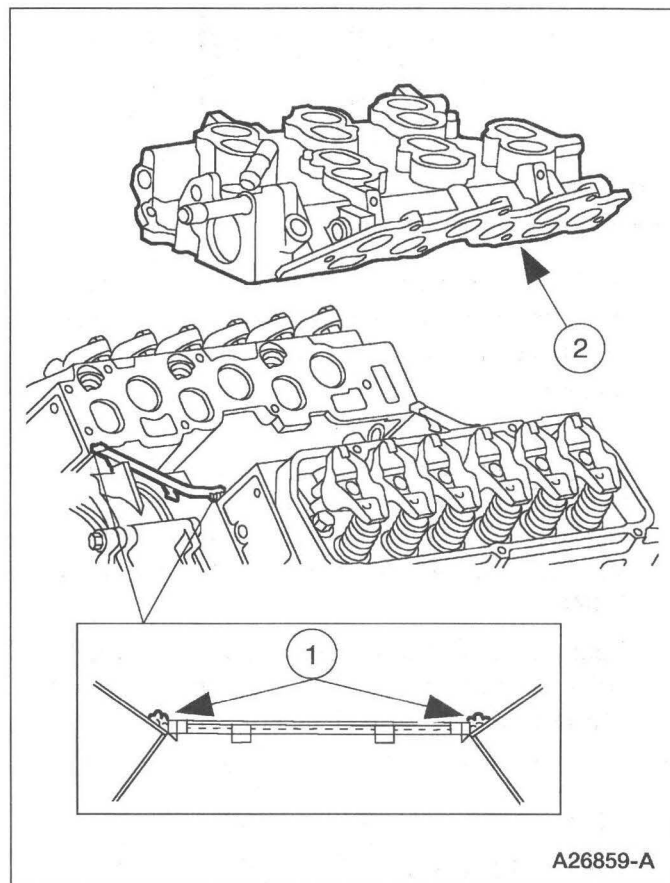
3. Install the intake manifold gaskets.



4. **NOTE:** The lower intake manifold must be installed within four minutes of applying sealant.

Position the lower intake manifold.

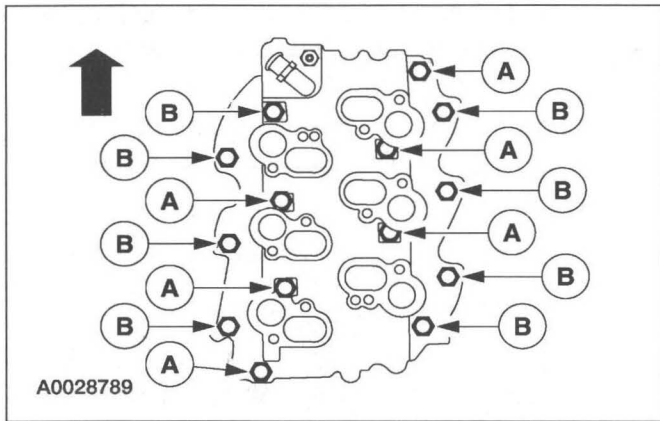
- 1 Apply a bead of silicone gasket and sealant to the lower intake manifold mounting at the points indicated.
- 2 Position the lower intake manifold.



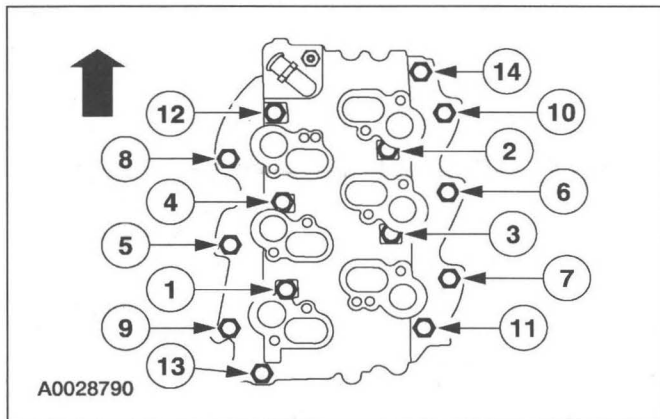
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

5. **NOTE:** Make sure the bolts are installed in the correct location.

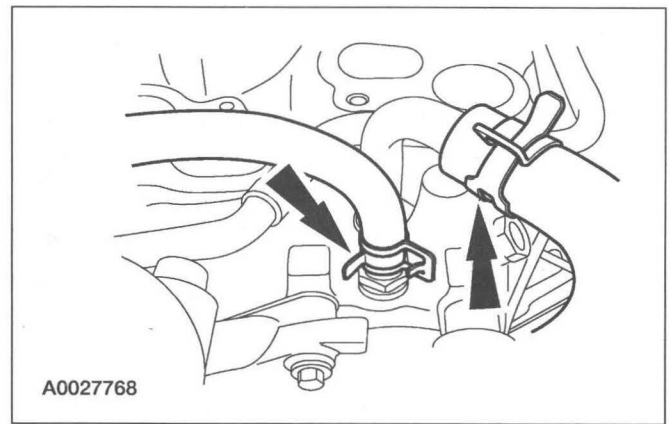
Loosely install the (A) long bolts and the (B) short bolts.



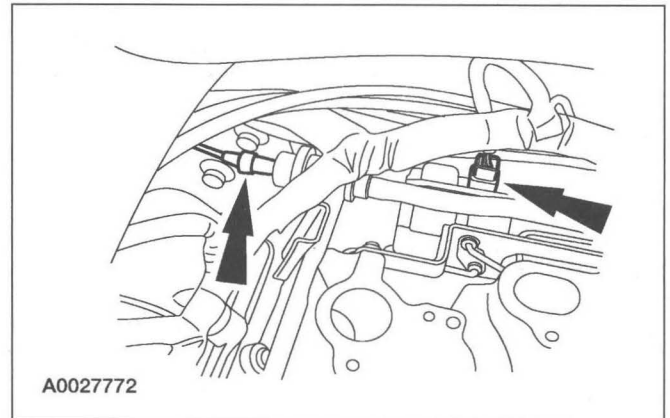
6. Tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in two stages.
- Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 5 Nm (44 lb-in).
 - Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 10 Nm (89 lb-in).



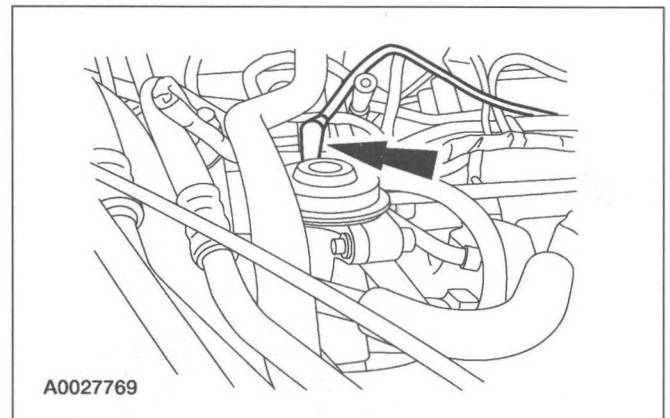
7. Connect the water bypass hose and the heated PCV system heater water hose.



8. Connect the fuel lines. For additional information, refer to Section 310-01A.
9. Connect the fuel pressure regulator vacuum line and the IMRC electrical connector.

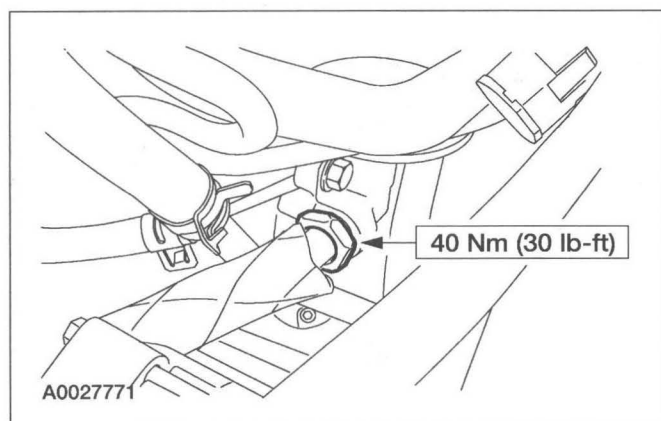


10. Install the upper radiator hose to the lower intake manifold.
11. Connect the EGR valve vacuum hose.

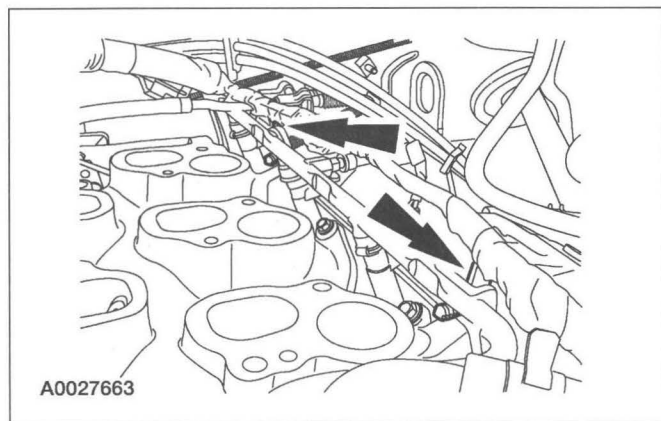


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

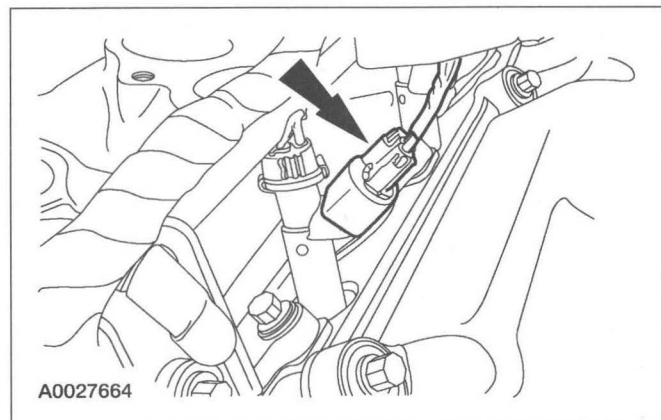
12. Install the EGR valve to exhaust manifold tube upper fitting.



13. **NOTE:** Left side shown, right side similar.
Connect the fuel injector electrical harness to the fuel injector supply manifold.



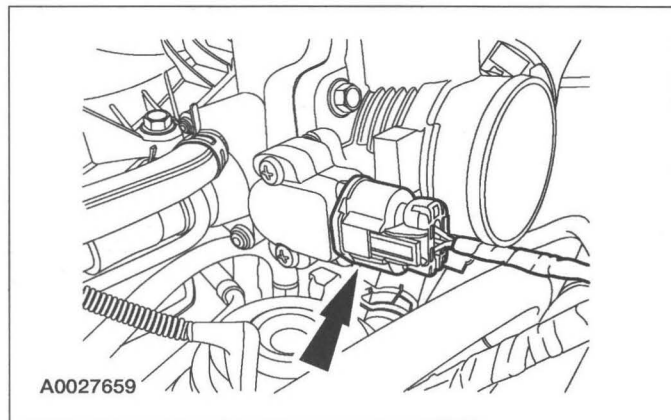
14. **NOTE:** One shown, all are similar.
Connect the fuel injector electrical connectors.



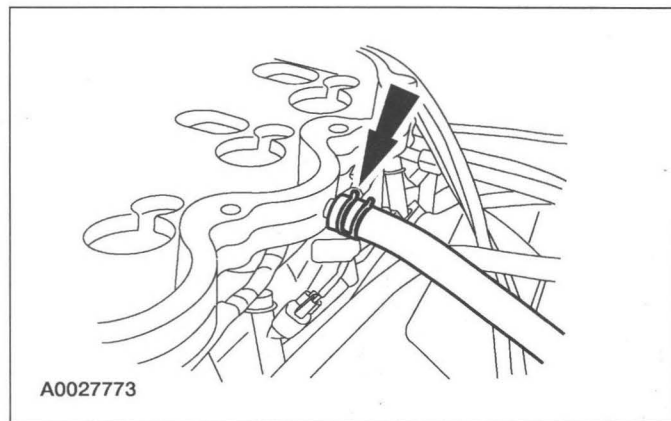
15. Install the intake manifold spacer assembly. For additional information, refer to Intake Manifold—Spacer Assembly in this section.

Intake Manifold — Spacer Assembly**Removal**

1. Remove the upper intake manifold. For additional information, refer to Upper Intake Manifold in this section.
2. Partially drain the cooling system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
3. Disconnect the throttle position (TP) sensor.

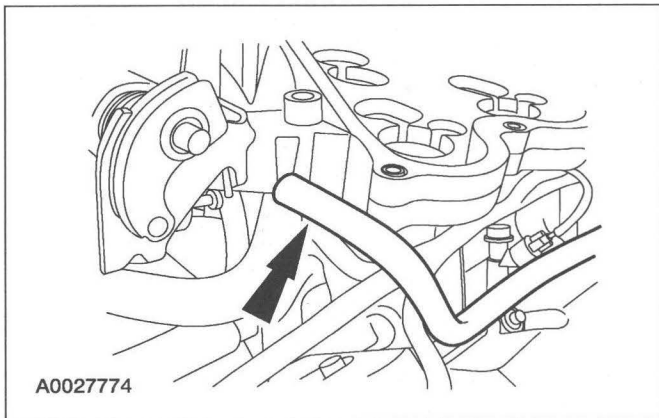


4. Disconnect the brake booster vacuum hose.

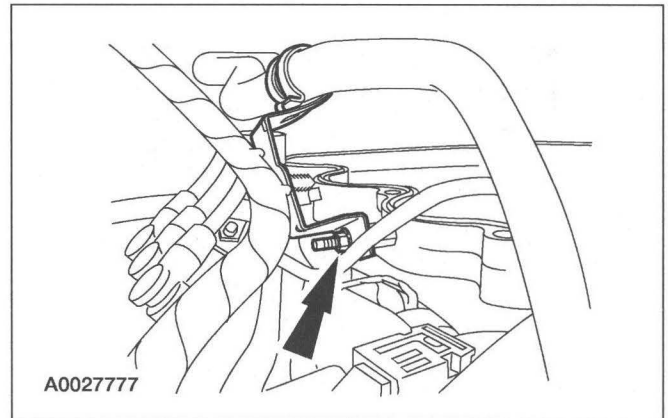


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

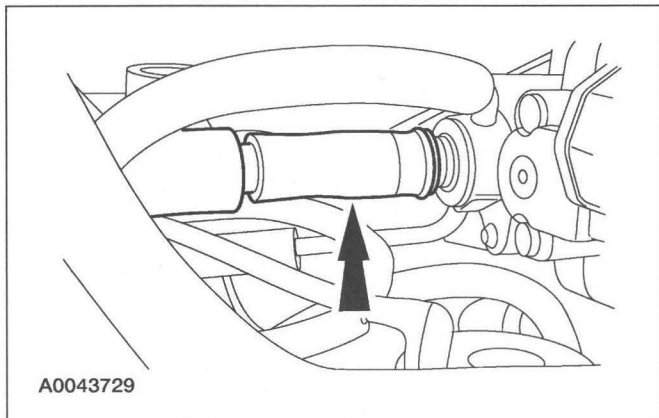
5. Disconnect the vapor management valve (VMV) hose.



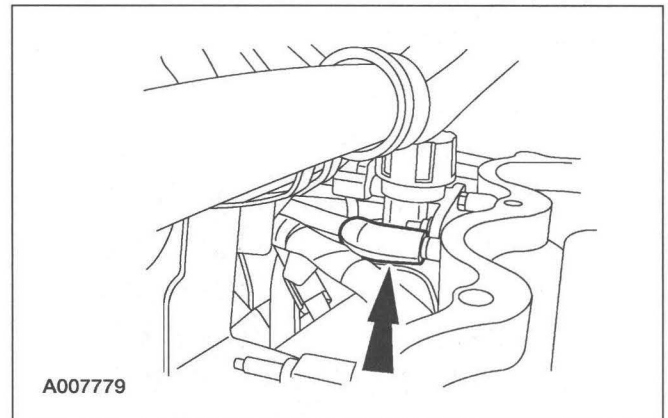
8. Remove the heater hose bracket at the intake manifold.



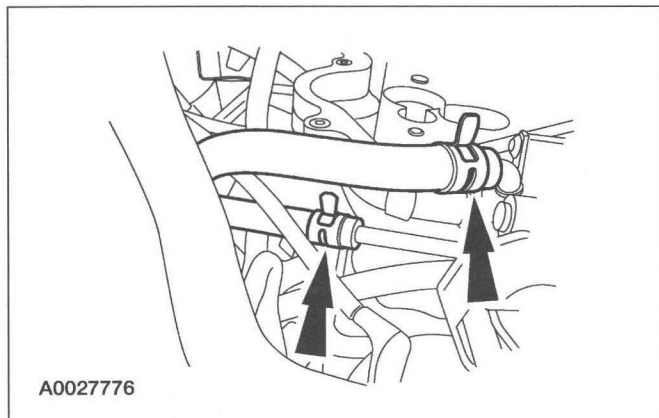
6. Disconnect the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.



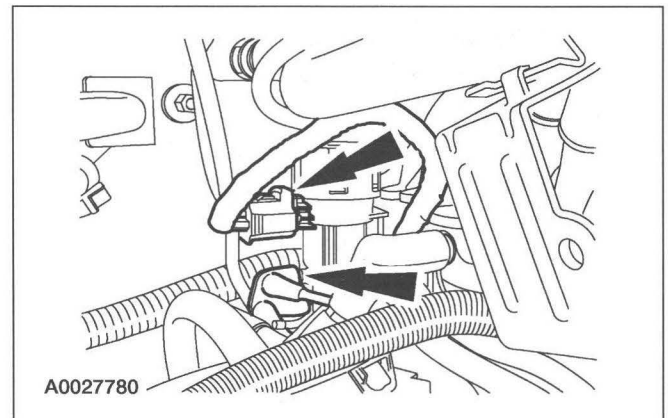
9. Disconnect the intake manifold vacuum connector.



7. Disconnect the heater water hoses at the intake manifold.

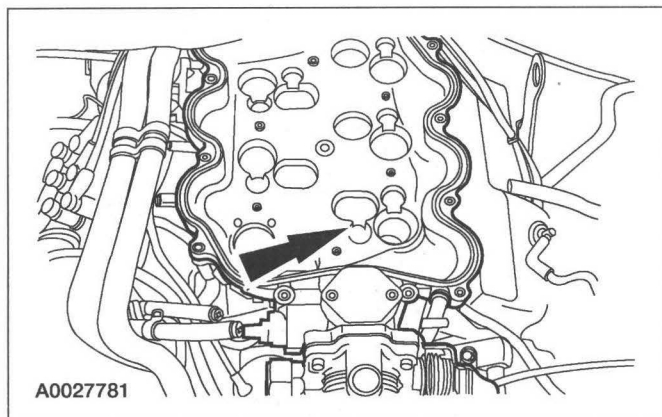


10. Disconnect the EGR solenoid electrical and vacuum connectors.



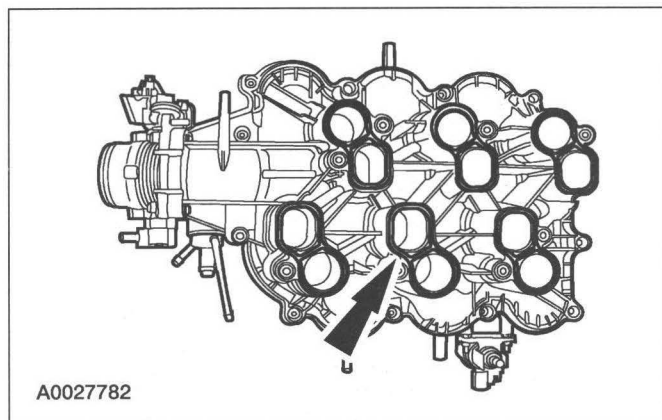
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

11. Remove the eight bolts and the intake manifold spacer assembly.

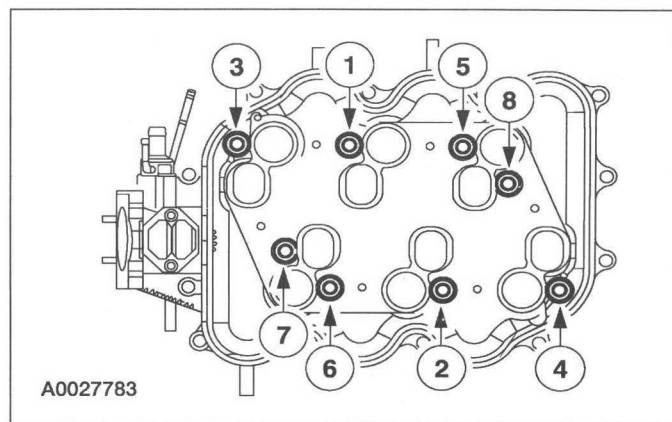


Installation

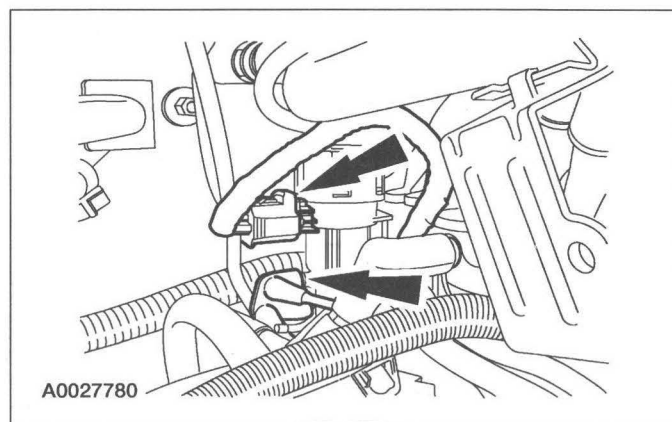
1. Inspect the intake manifold spacer assembly mounting gaskets. Install new gaskets, if necessary.



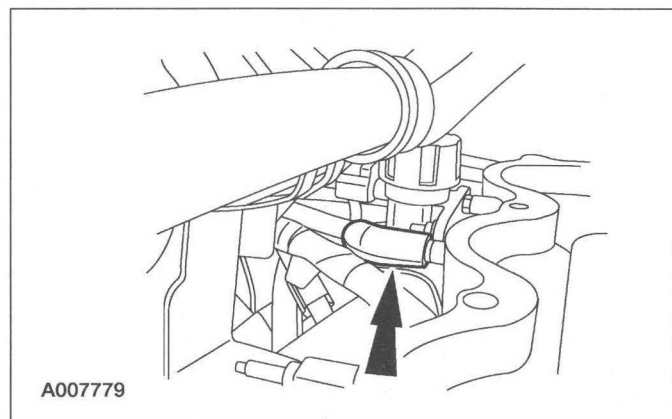
2. Install the intake manifold spacer assembly. Tighten the bolts in two steps in the sequence shown.
 - Step 1 — Tighten to 6 Nm (53 lb-in).
 - Step 2 — Tighten to 10 Nm (89 lb-in).



3. Connect the EGR solenoid electrical and vacuum connectors.

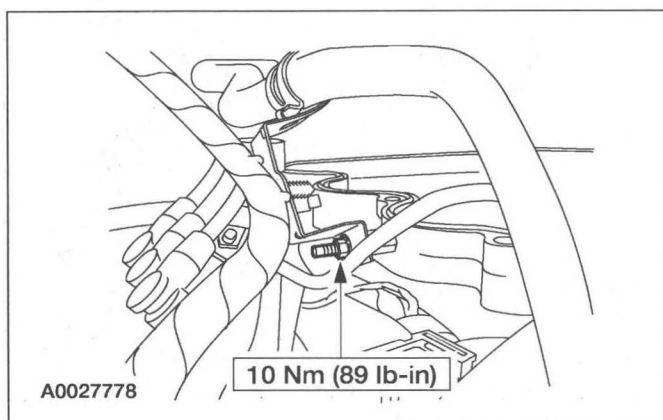


4. Connect the intake manifold vacuum connector.

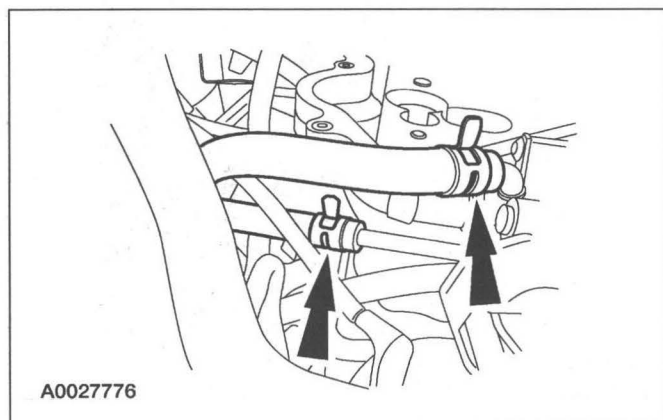


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

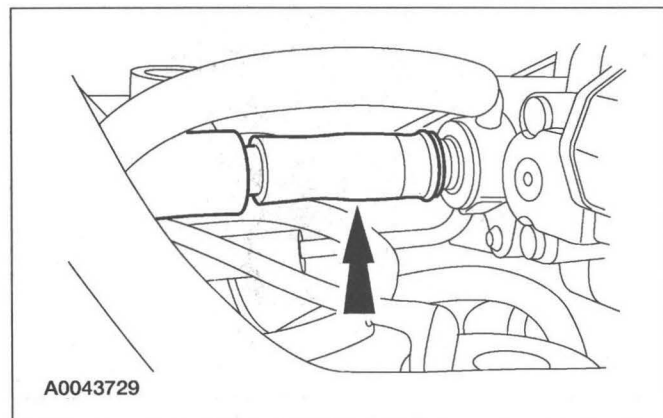
5. Install the heater hose bracket at the intake manifold.



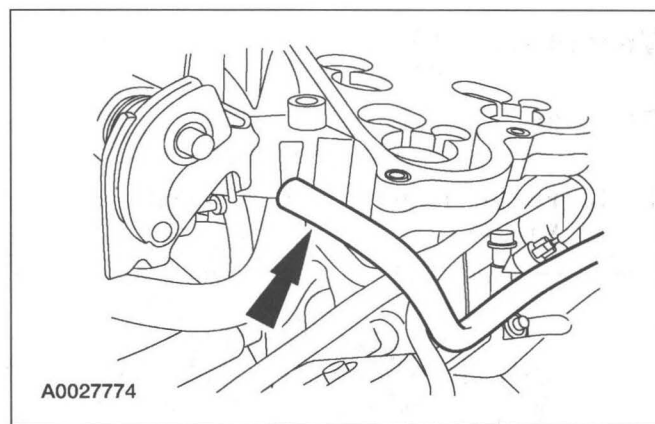
6. Connect the heater water hoses at the intake manifold.



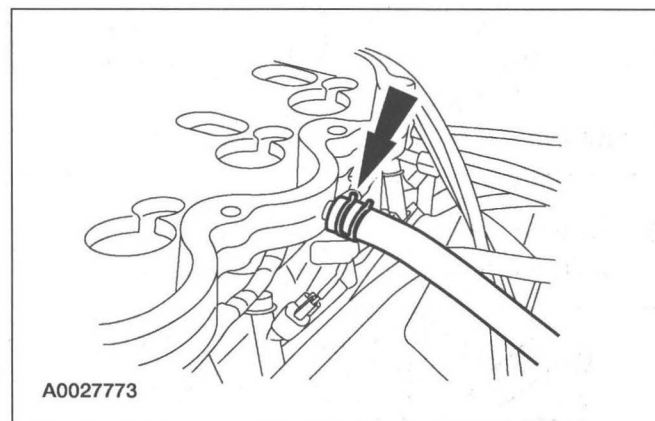
7. Connect the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.



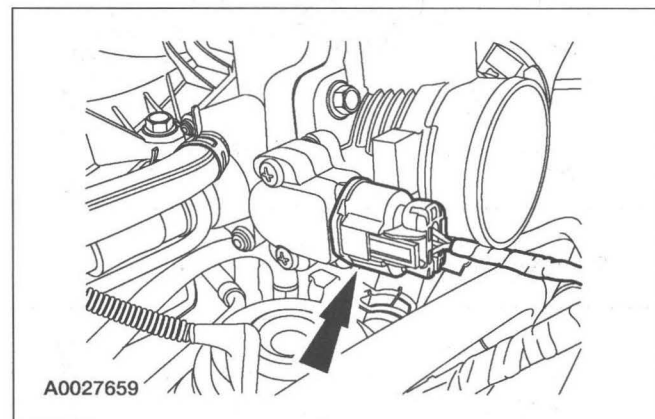
8. Connect the vapor management valve (VMV) hose.



9. Connect the brake booster vacuum hose.



10. Connect the throttle position (TP) sensor.

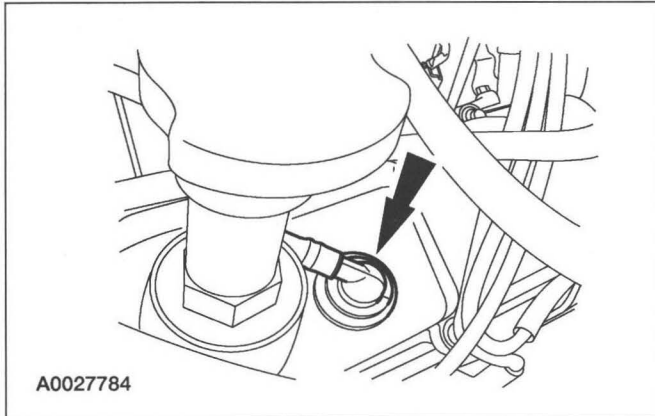


11. Fill the cooling system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.

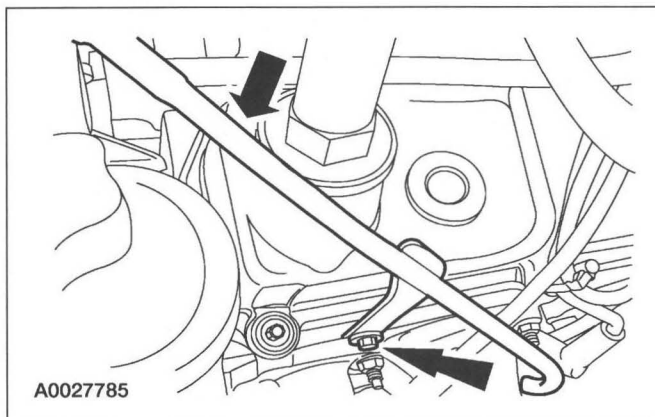
12. Install the upper intake manifold. For additional information, refer to Upper Intake Manifold in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Valve Cover LH****Removal**

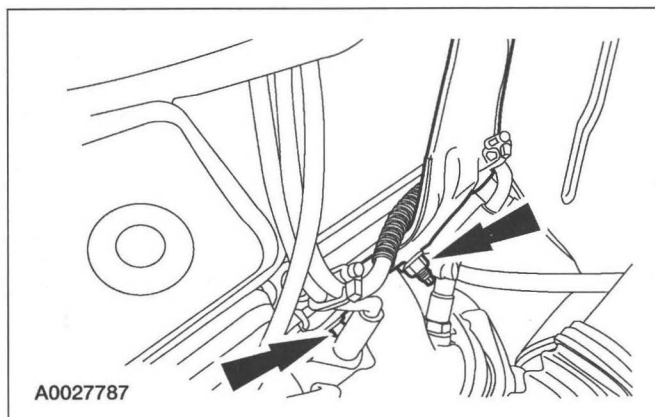
1. Remove the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) tube.



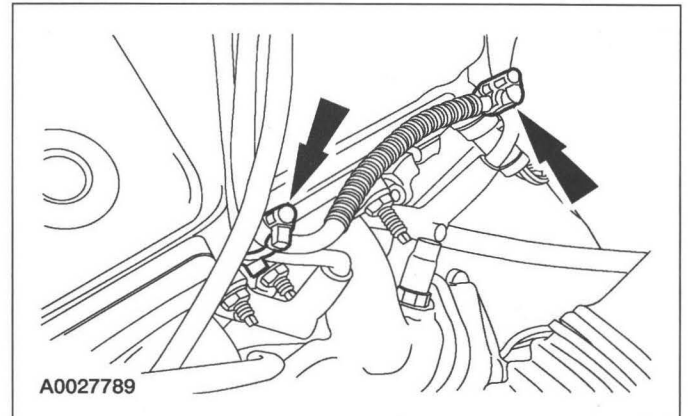
2. Remove the bolt and position the oil level indicator and tube assembly out of the way.



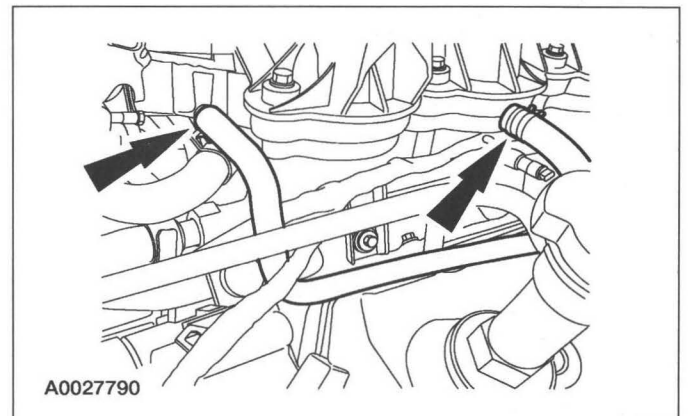
3. Remove the nuts and the engine lifting eye.



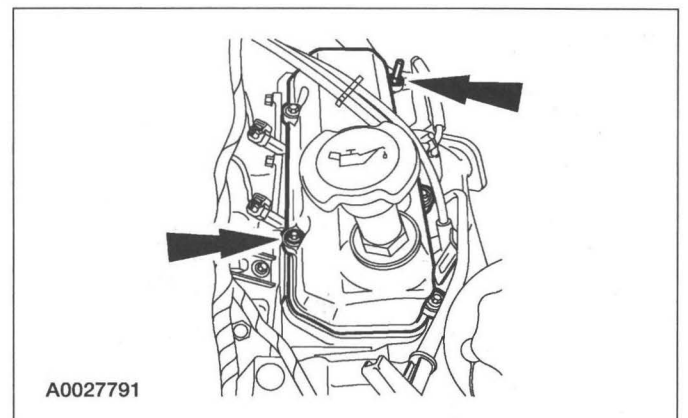
4. Disconnect the spark plug wire holders.



5. Disconnect the vapor hose and the brake vacuum hose and position out of the way.



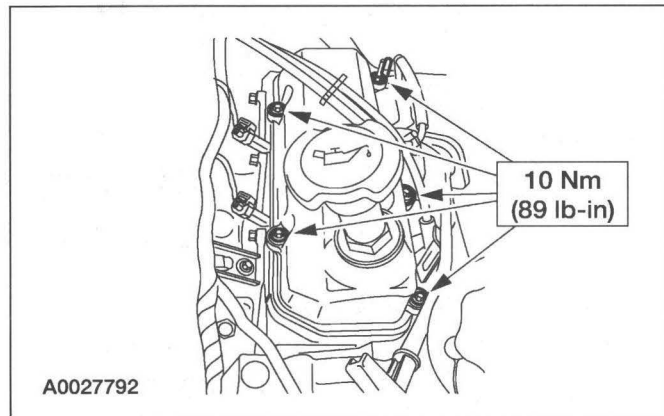
6. Remove the bolts, the stub bolts and the LH valve cover.



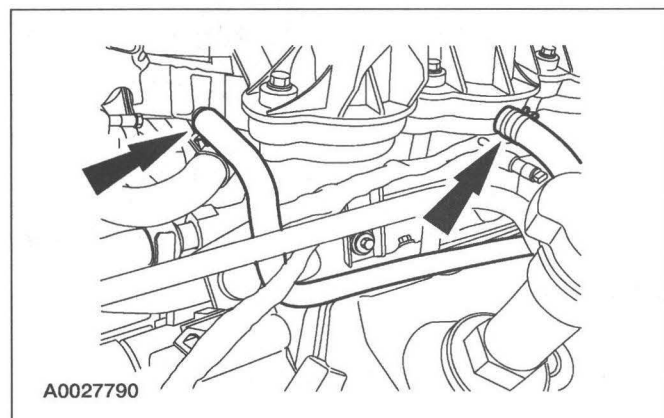
7. Remove and discard the LH valve cover gasket (6584).

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Installation**

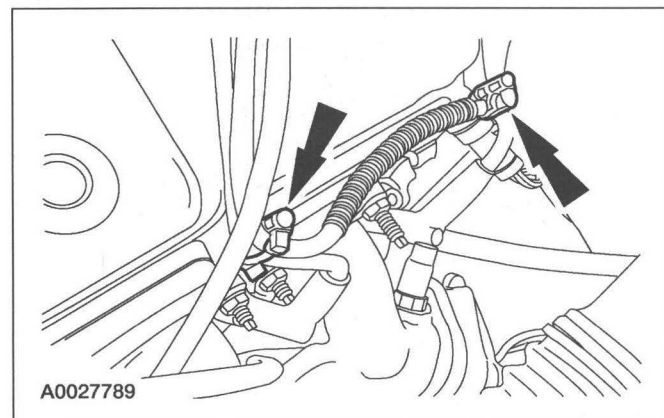
1. Install a new valve cover gasket.
2. Install the valve cover, the bolts and the stud bolts.



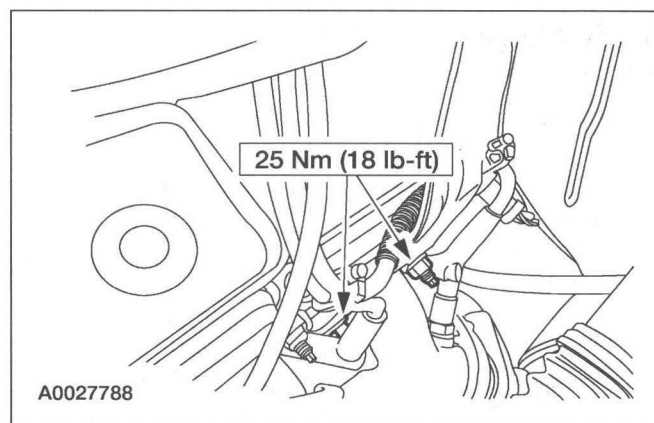
3. Connect the vapor hose and the brake vacuum hose.



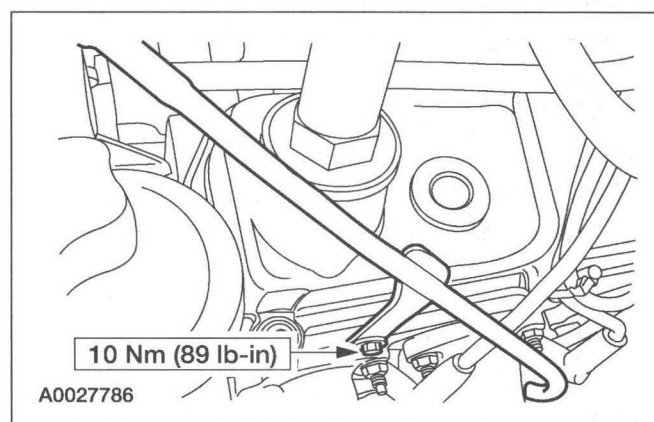
4. Connect the spark plug wire holders.



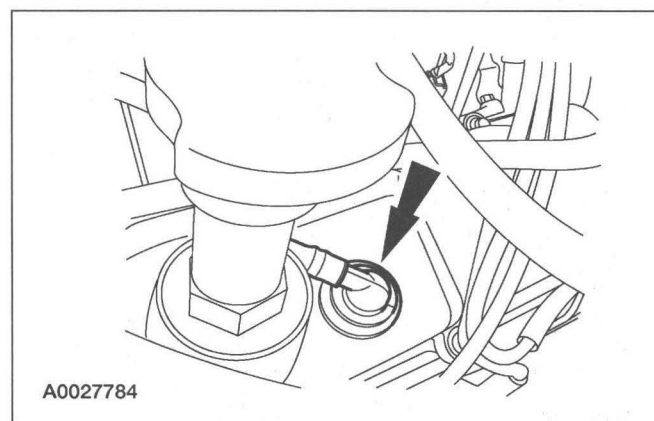
5. Install the engine lifting eye and the nuts.



6. Position the oil level indicator and tube assembly and install the bolt.



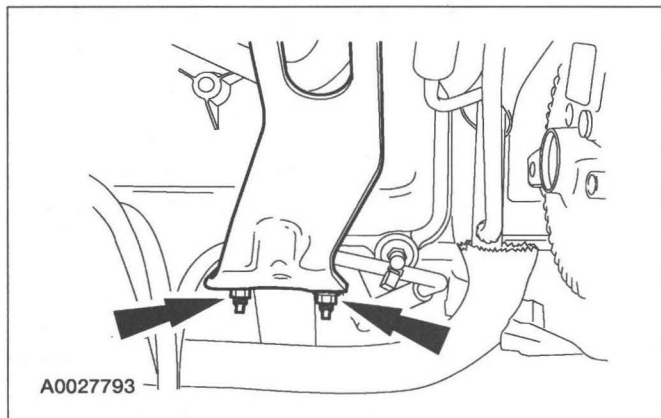
7. Install the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose.

**Valve Cover RH****Removal**

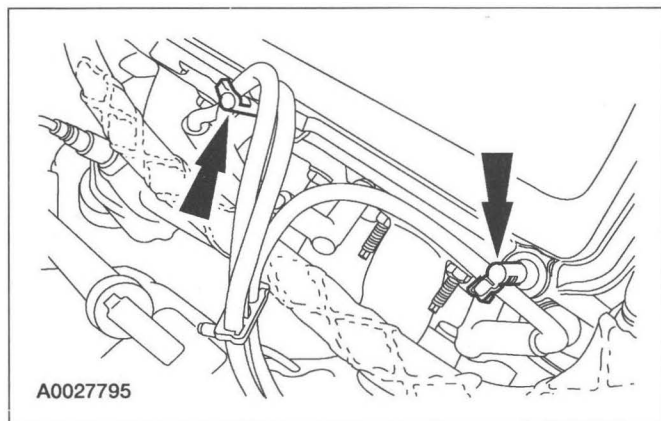
1. Remove the ignition coil. For additional information, refer to Section 303-07A.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

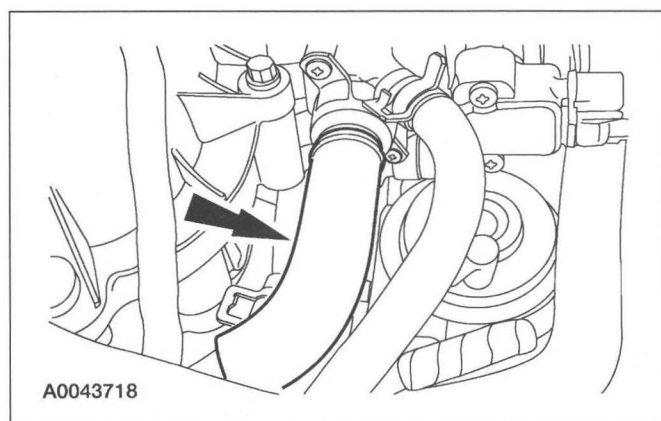
2. Remove the nuts and the engine lifting eye.



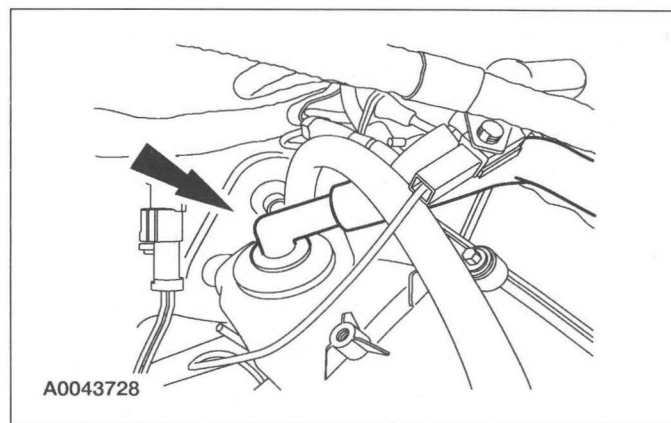
3. Disconnect the spark plug wire holders.



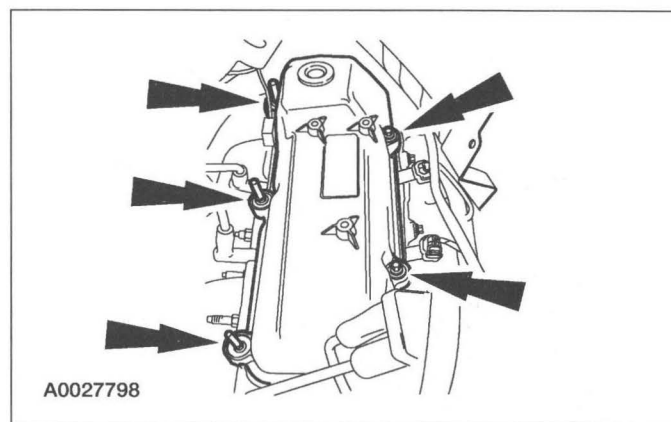
4. Disconnect the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose at the intake manifold.



5. Detach the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) valve/heater water hose assembly and position aside.



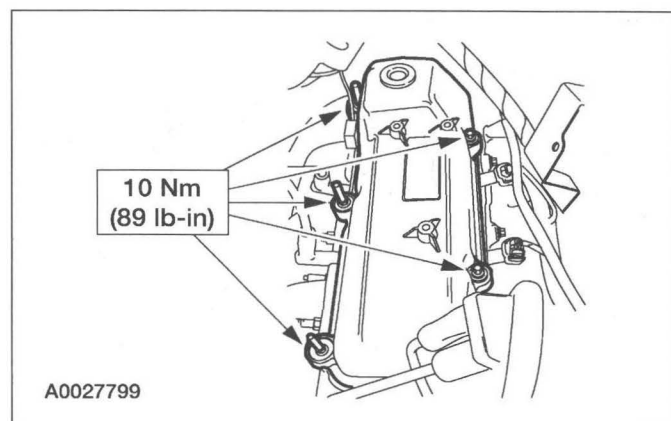
6. Remove the bolts, the stud bolts and the RH valve cover.



7. Remove and discard the RH valve cover gasket.

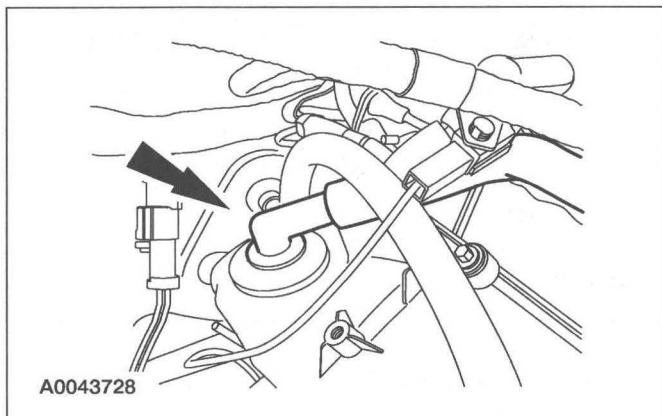
Installation

1. Install a new valve cover gasket.
2. Install the RH valve cover, the stud bolts, and the bolts.

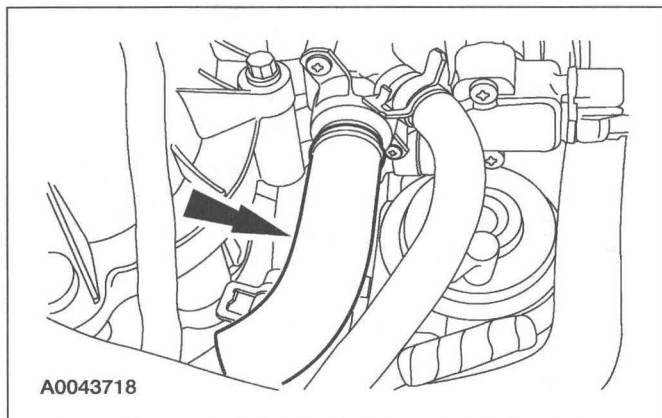


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

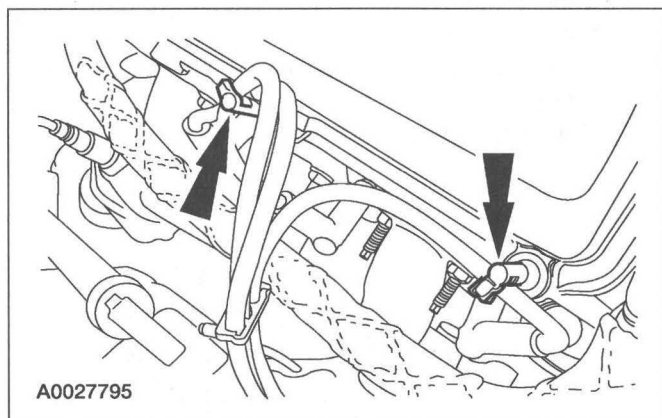
3. Install the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) valve/heater hose assembly.



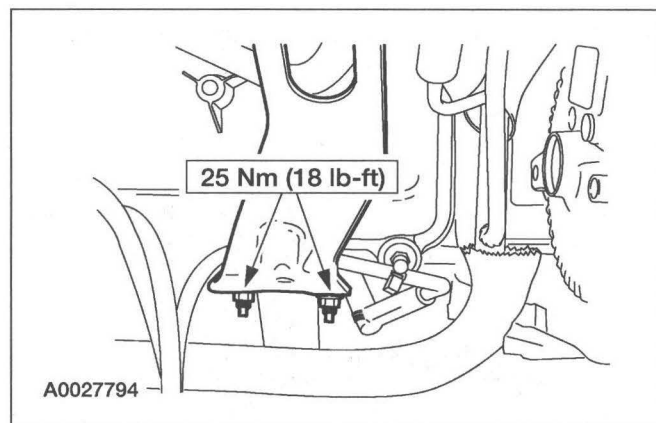
4. Connect the positive crankcase ventilation (PCV) hose at the intake manifold.



5. Connect the spark plug wire holders.



6. Install the engine lifting eye and nuts.



7. Install the ignition coil. For additional information, refer to Section 303-07A.

Crankshaft Pulley**Special Tool(s)**

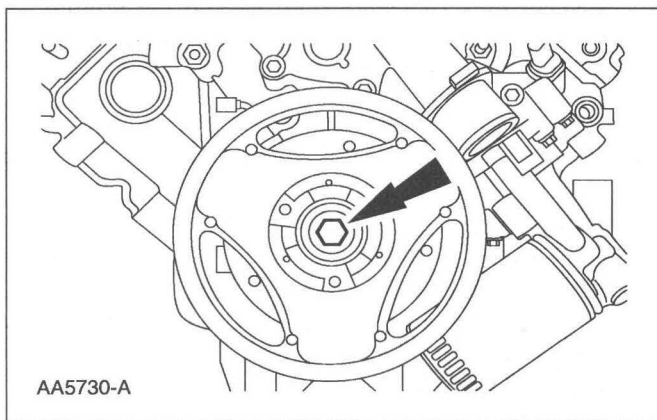
<p>ST1286-A</p>	<p>Remover, Crankshaft Vibration Damper 303-009 (T58P-6316-D)</p>
<p>ST1378-A</p>	<p>Remover, Crankshaft Vibration Damper 303-176 (T82L-6316-B)</p>
<p>ST1387-A</p>	<p>Installer, Crankshaft Damper/Crankshaft Front Oil Seal 303-175 (T82L-6316-A)</p>

Material

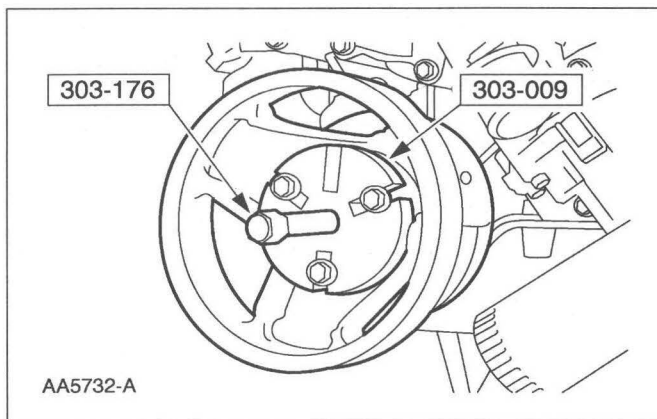
Item	Specification
<p>Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA or equivalent</p>	<p>WSE-M4G323-A4</p>

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Removal**

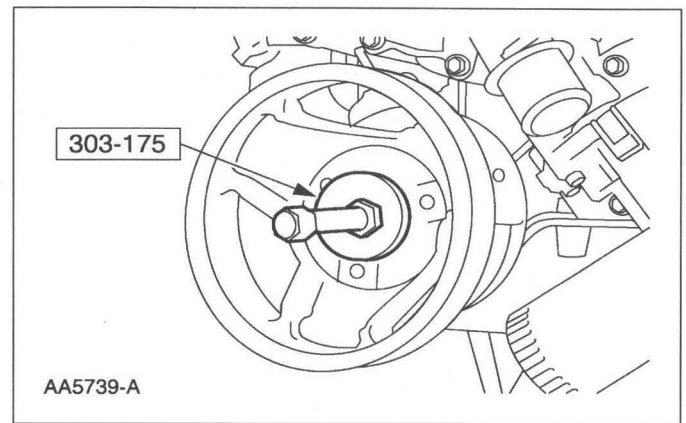
1. Remove the drive belt. For additional information, refer to Section 303-05.
2. Remove the fan blade assembly. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
3. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
4. Raise the vehicle on a hoist. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
5. Remove the crankshaft pulley bolt.



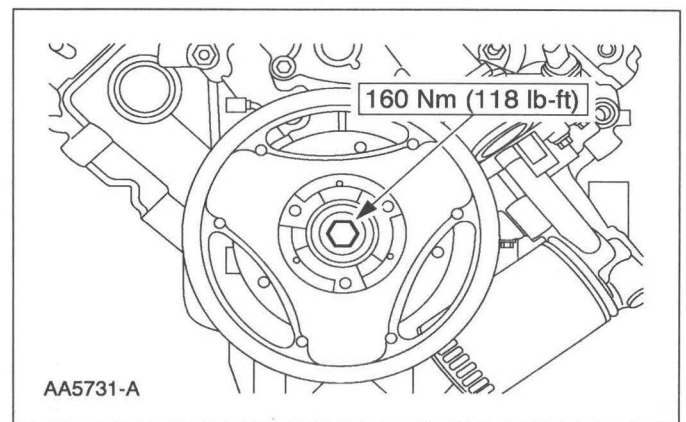
6. Using the special tool, remove the crankshaft pulley (6B321).

**Installation**

1. Apply a bead of silicone gasket and sealant to the keyway in the crankshaft damper and use the special tool to install the crankshaft damper.

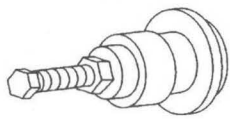
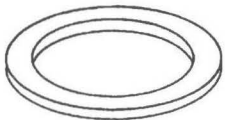
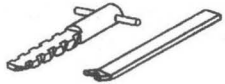


2. Install the bolt.



3. Lower the vehicle.
4. Connect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
5. Install the fan blade assembly. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
6. Install the drive belt. For additional information, refer to Section 303-05.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Crankshaft Front Oil Seal****Special Tool(s)**

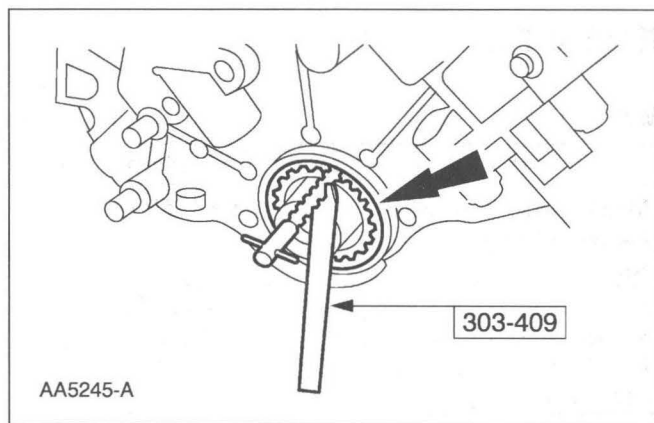
 <p>ST1328-A</p>	Installer, Front Cover Oil Seal 303-335 (T88T-6701-A)
 <p>ST1379-A</p>	Installer, Crankshaft Front Oil Seal 303-474 (T94P-6701-AH)
 <p>ST1385-A</p>	Remover, Oil Seal 303-409 (T92C-6700-CH)

Material

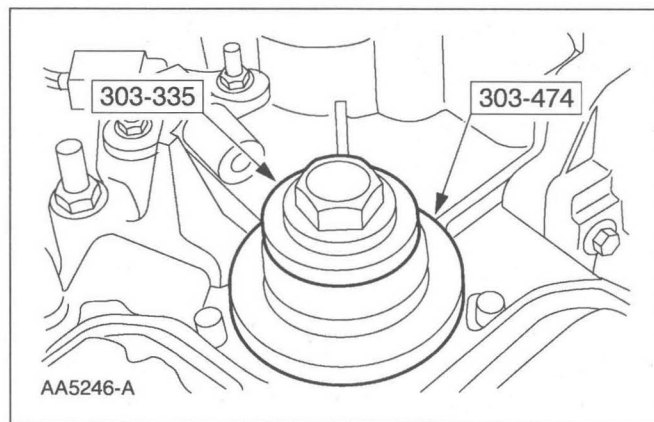
Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

1. Remove the crankshaft damper. For additional information, refer to Crankshaft Pulley in this section.
2. Using the special tool, remove the crankshaft front seal. Discard the crankshaft front seal.

**Installation**

1. Inspect the crankshaft damper and the engine front cover for damage that may cause the crankshaft front seal to fail.
2. **NOTE:** Lubricate parts with engine oil before assembly.
Using the special tool, install the crankshaft front seal.



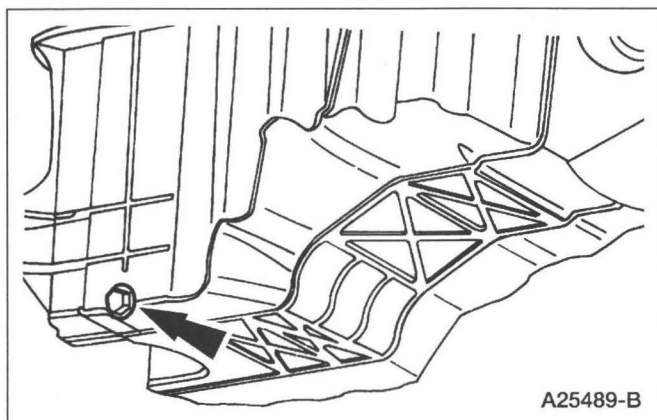
3. Install the crankshaft pulley. For additional information refer to Crankshaft Pulley in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Engine Front Cover****Material**

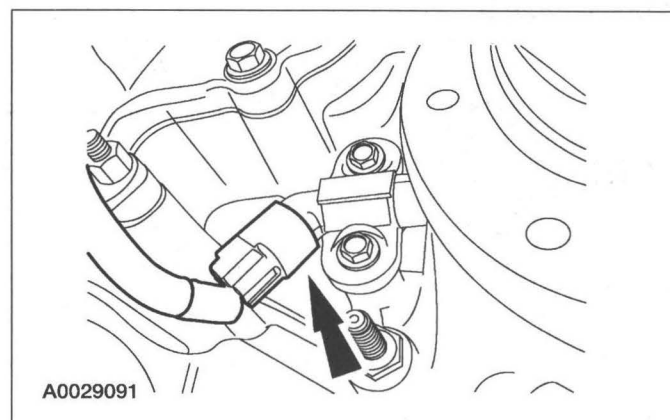
Item	Specification
Metal Surface Cleaner F4AZ-19A536-RA or equivalent	WSE-M5B392-A
Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA or equivalent	WSE-M4G323-A4
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

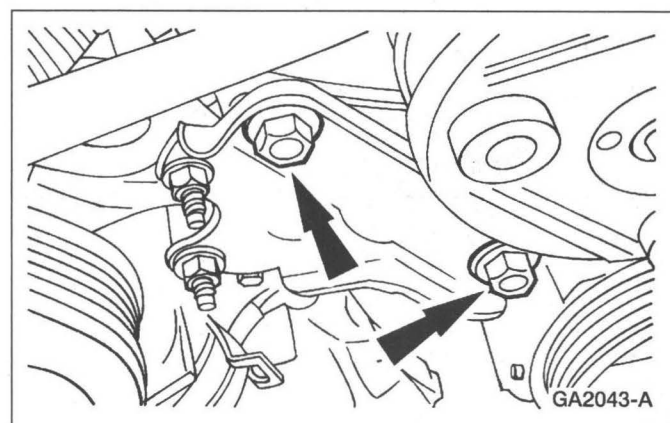
1. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
2. Drain the engine cooling system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
3. Remove the engine air cleaner (ACL). For additional information, refer to Section 303-12.
4. Remove the upper radiator hose, the fan shroud and the lower radiator hose. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
5. Disconnect camshaft position sensor electrical connector.
6. Raise and support the vehicle. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
7. Remove the oil pan drain plug and drain the engine oil.



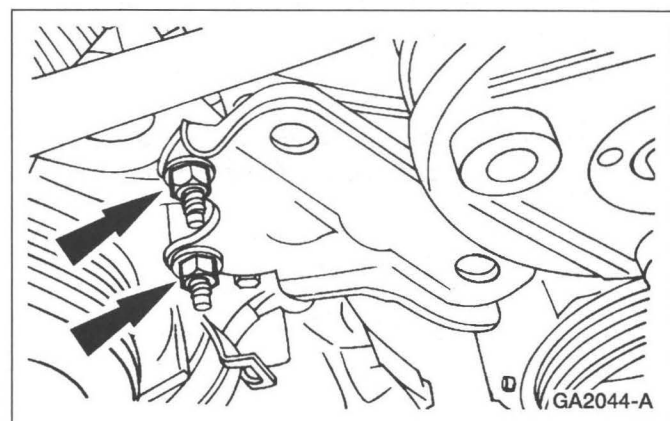
8. Disconnect the crankshaft sensor electrical connector.



9. Position the engine wiring harness aside.
10. Remove the power steering pump bracket bolts.



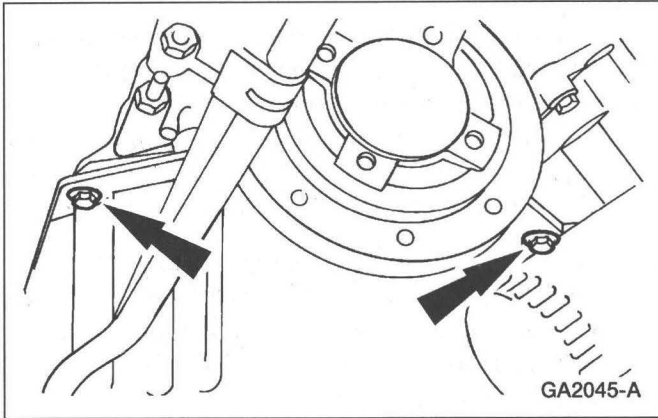
11. Remove the nuts and remove the power steering pump bracket.



12. Remove the crankshaft pulley. For additional information, refer to Crankshaft Pulley in this section.

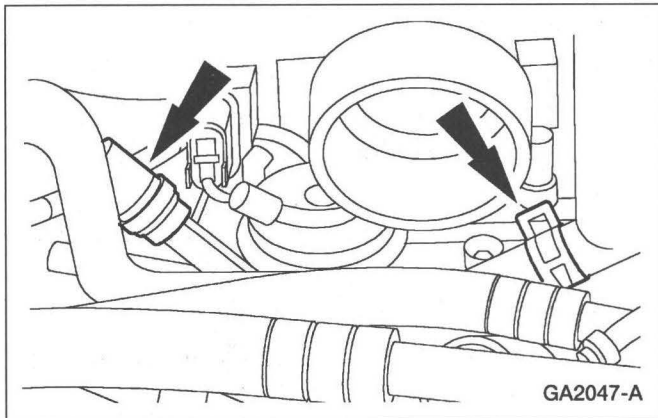
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

13. Remove the four bolts.

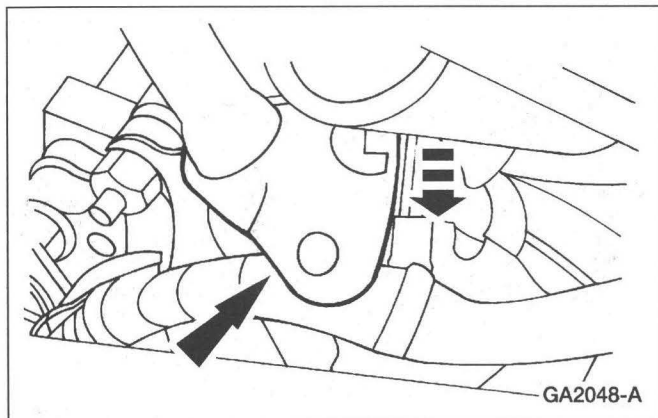


14. Lower the vehicle.

15. Remove the heater water outlet tube hoses.

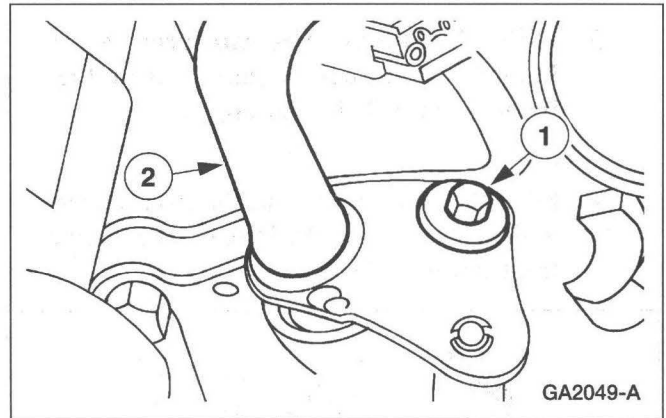


16. Detach the wiring harness from the outlet tube and position aside.



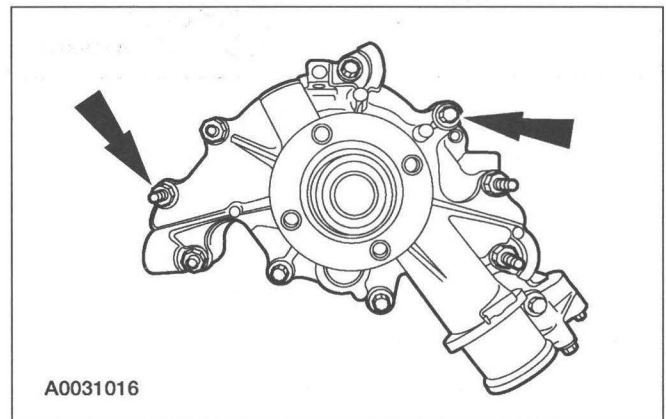
17. Remove the heater water outlet tube.

- 1 Remove the bolt.
- 2 Remove the heater water outlet tube.



18. Remove the camshaft synchronizer. For additional information, refer to Section 303-14.


19. Remove the nuts and bolts. Remove the water pump.

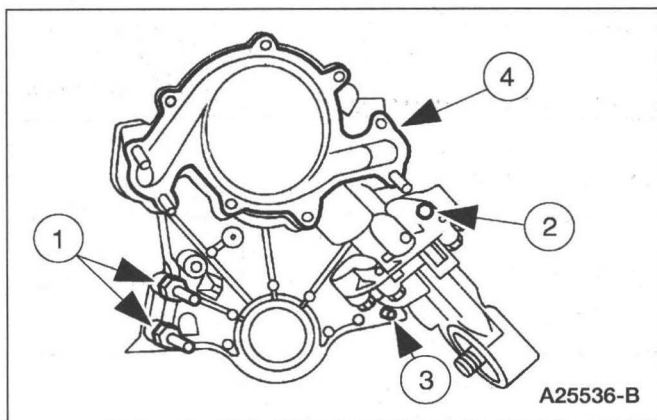



20. Remove the crankshaft front oil seal. For additional information, refer to Crankshaft Front Oil Seal in this section.


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

21. Remove the front cover and the front cover gasket.

- 1 Remove the stud bolts.
- 2 Remove the bolt.
- 3  **CAUTION:** The cap screw is hidden; make sure to remove it or the front cover will be damaged.
Remove the cap screw.
- 4 Slide the front cover and the front cover gasket off the dowels. Discard the engine front cover gasket.

**Installation**

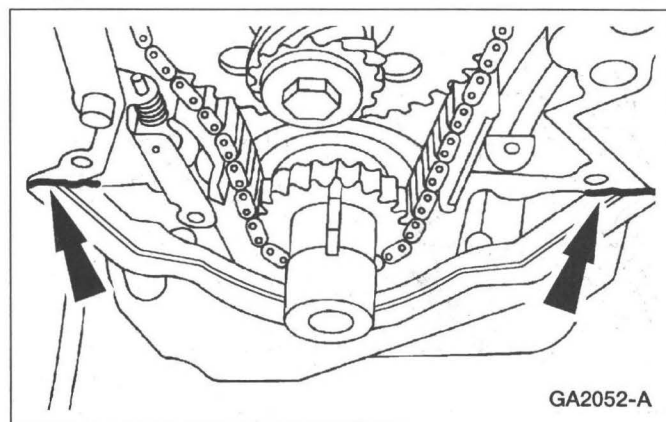
1.  **CAUTION:** In order to prevent foreign material from contaminating the engine block or the engine front cover it is necessary to seal the coolant and oil passages of both components. Failure to follow these directions will result in engine damage.

 **CAUTION:** Do not use a surface conditioning pad or any other type of fibrous abrasive disc to clean the gasket surfaces. Failure to follow these directions will result in engine damage.

Clean and inspect the engine block and front cover as follows:

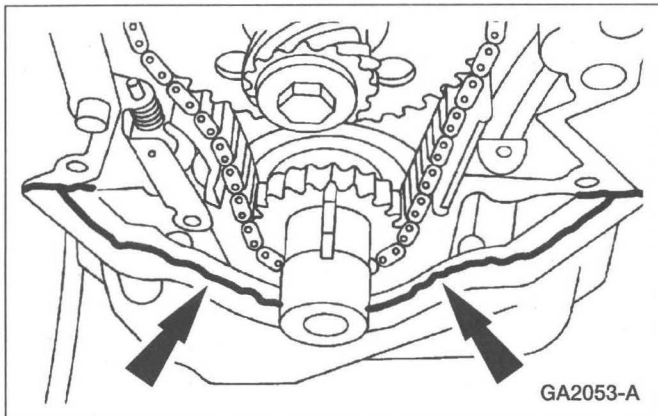
- Pack the exposed portion of the oil pan with shop towels.
- Plug the oil and coolant passages.
- Clean the gasket surfaces.
- Clean all surfaces requiring gasket sealant with metal surface cleaner.
- Using compressed air, remove any remaining foreign material from the engine block and engine front cover.
- Remove the shop towels from the oil pan.
- Remove the plugs or seals from the engine block and engine front cover.

2. Apply a small amount of silicone gasket and sealant as shown on the oil pan to block parting location.



IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

3. Install the front cover gasket and apply silicone gasket and sealant as shown on the oil pan.

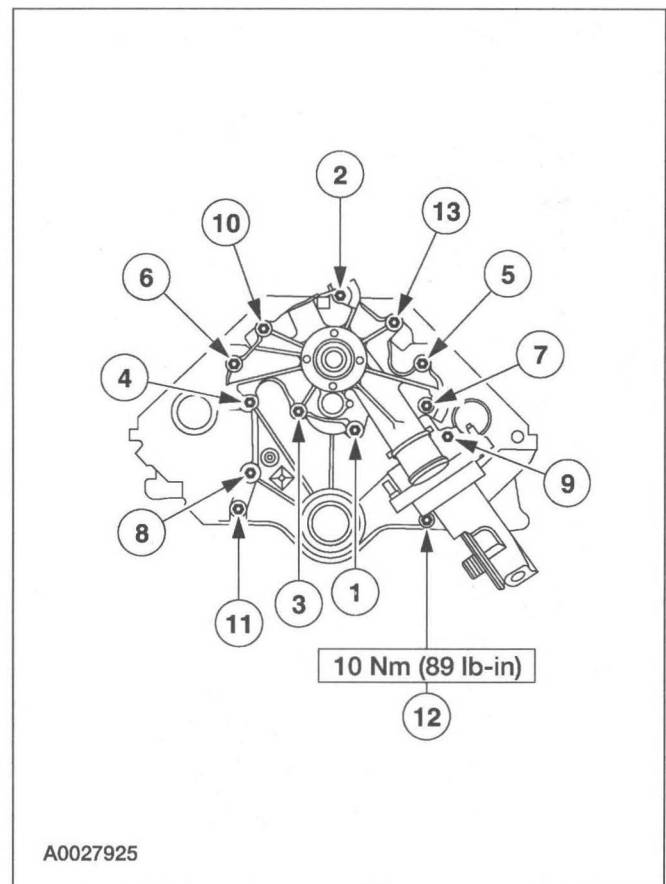


4. **⚠ CAUTION:** Make sure the capscrew is installed. If it is missed, an engine oil leak may occur.

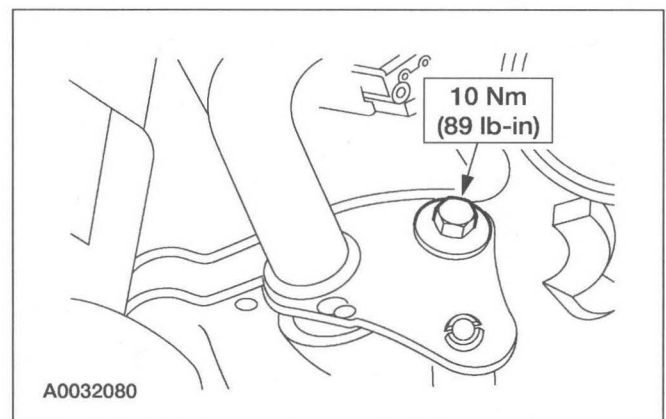
NOTE: The number 12 position is not part of the staged torque.

Install the front cover. Install water pump with a new gasket.

- Tighten the front cover bolts in the sequence shown in two stages:
- Stage 1: Install studs and tighten to 7 Nm (62 lb-in).
- Stage 2: Tighten the bolts, stud bolts and nuts to 28 Nm (21 lb-ft).

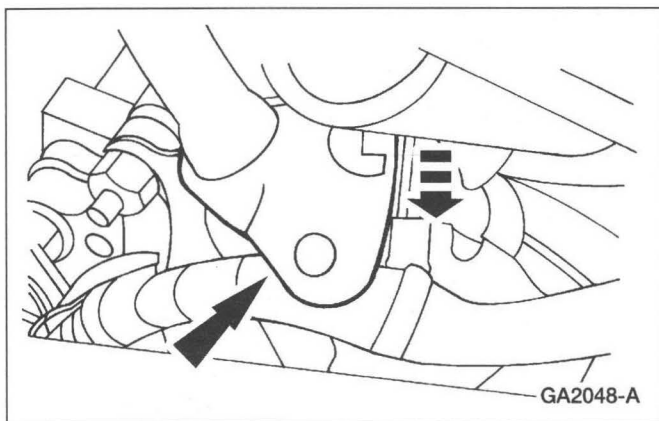


5. Install the camshaft synchronizer. For additional information, refer to Section 303-14.
6. Install the heater water outlet tube.

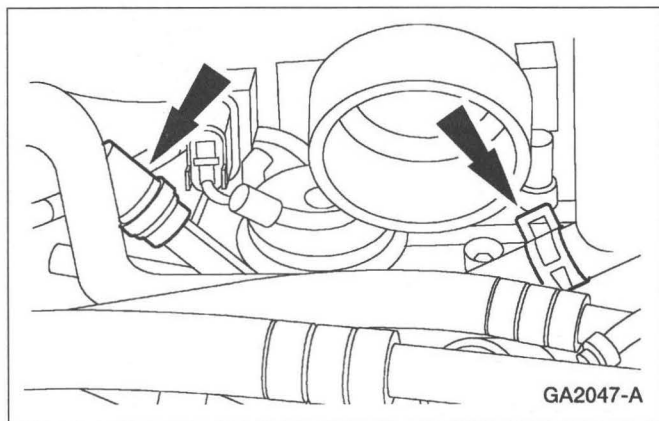


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

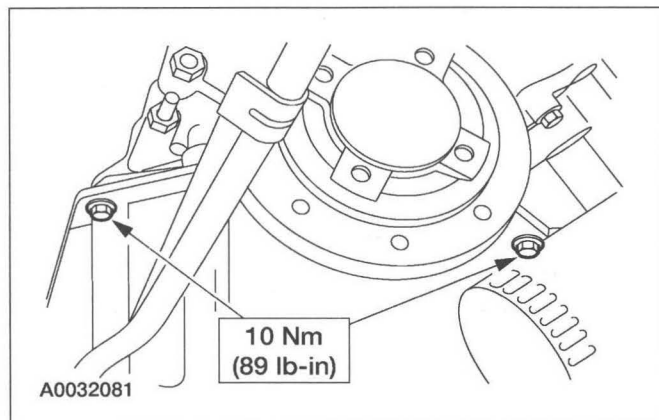
7. Attach the wiring harness to the outlet tube.



8. Install the heater water outlet tube hoses.

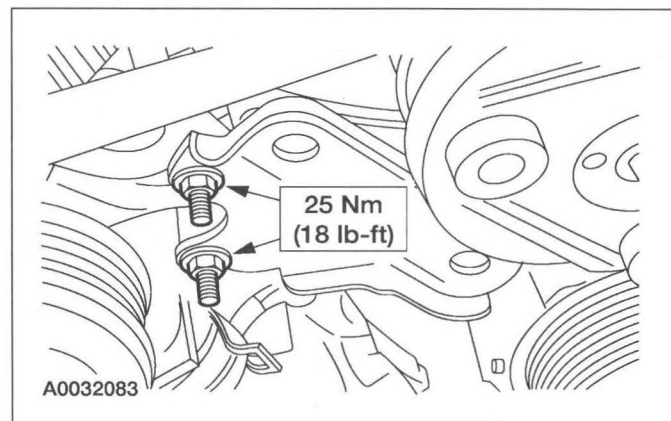


9. Raise and support the vehicle.
10. Install the four front oil pan-to-engine front cover bolts.

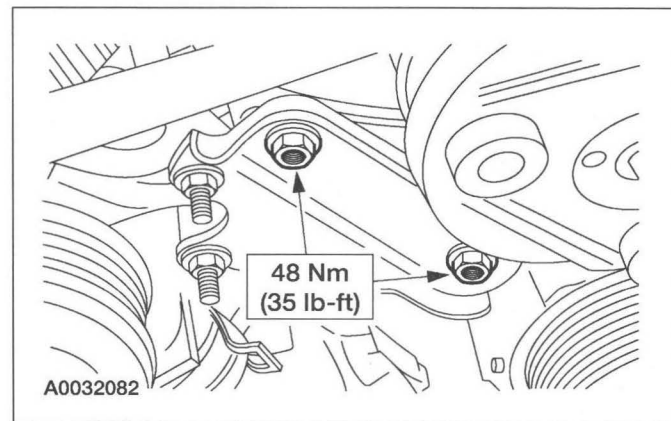


11. Install the crankshaft front oil seal. For additional information, refer to Crankshaft Front Oil Seal in this section.

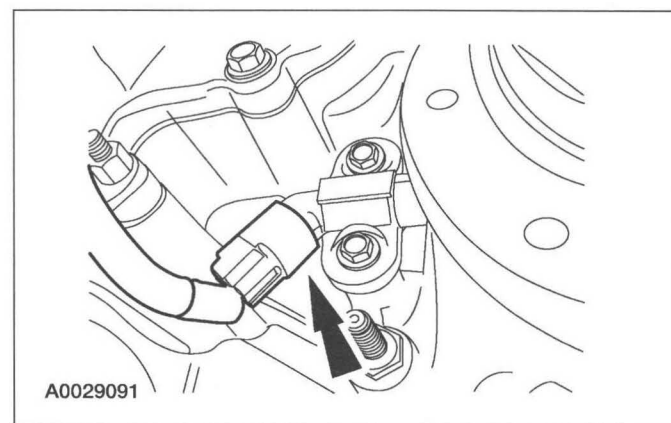
12. Install the crankshaft pulley and the crankshaft damper. For additional information, refer to the Crankshaft Pulley procedure in this section.
13. Install the power steering pump bracket. Install the nuts.



14. Install the power steering pump bracket bolts.



15. Connect the crankshaft sensor electrical connector.

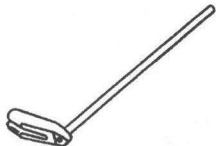


16. Install the crankshaft sensor shield.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

17. Lower the vehicle.
18. Connect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
19. Install the lower radiator hose, the fan shroud and the upper radiator hose. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
20. Install the engine air cleaner. For additional information, refer to Section 303-12.
21. Refill the cooling system. For additional information, refer to Section 303-03A.
22. Install the oil pan drain plug and fill the engine with clean engine oil.
23. Start the engine and check for leaks.

Valve Spring**Special Tool(s)**

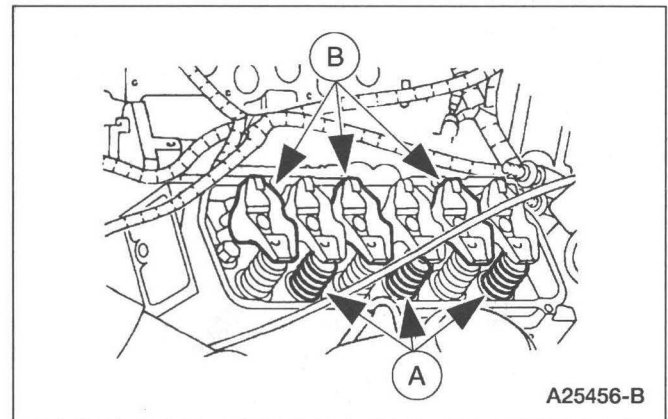
 <p>ST1383-A</p>	<p>Valve Compressor 303-163 (T81P-6513-A)</p>
---	---

Material

Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H


Removal


1. Remove the valve cover. For additional information, refer to Valve Cover LH and Valve Cover RH in this section.
2. Rotate the crankshaft until the piston for the valve being worked on is at the top of its stroke with both the (A) intake valve and the (B) exhaust valve closed.



3. Hold the valve in the cylinder head.
 - Remove the spark plug. For additional information, refer to Section 303-07A.
 - Apply a minimum of 965 kPa (140 psi) of compressed air to the cylinder.

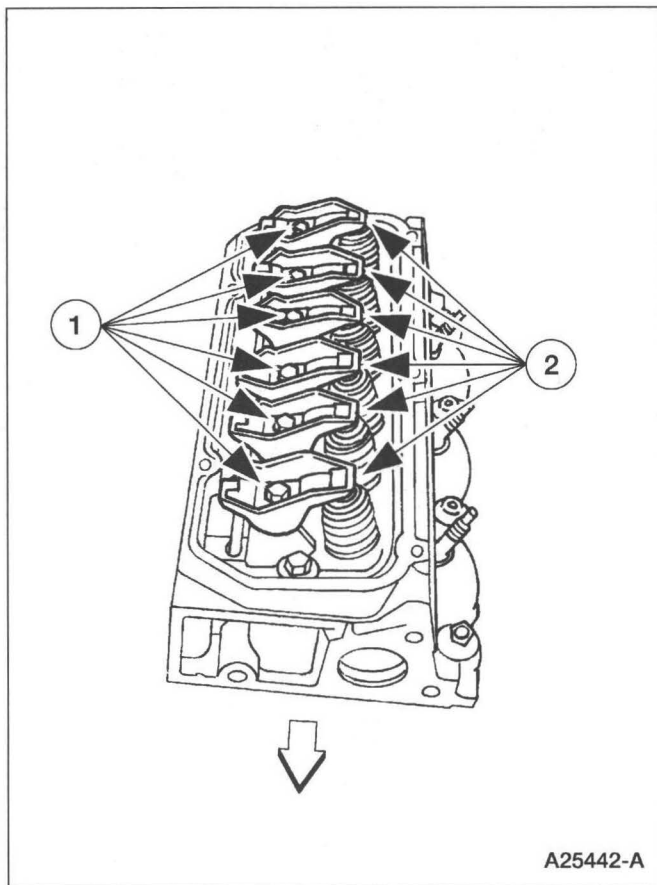
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

4.  **CAUTION:** If the components are to be reinstalled, they must be installed in the same position. Mark the components for location.

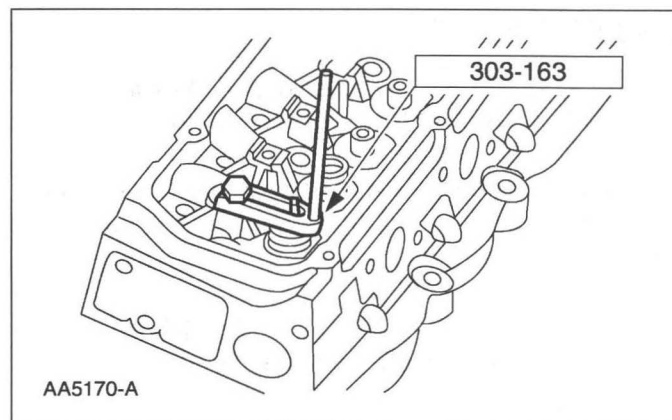
 **CAUTION:** If a valve drops into the cylinder, remove the cylinder head. For additional information refer to Cylinder Head in this section.

Remove the rocker arms.

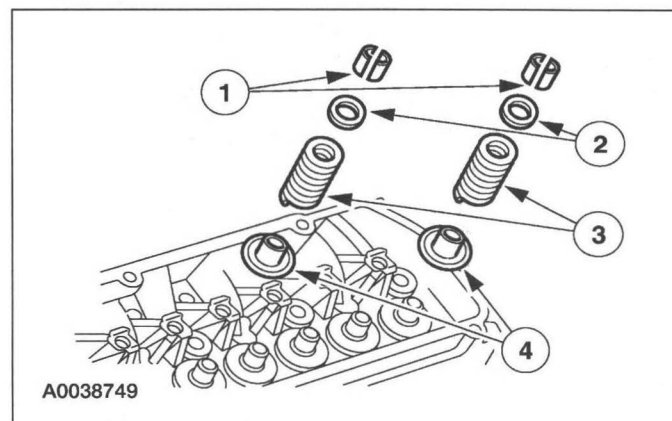
- 1 Remove the bolts.
- 2 Remove the rocker arms.



5. Using the special tool, compress the valve spring.




6. Remove the following:
- 1 Remove the valve spring retainer key.
 - 2 Remove the valve spring retainer.
 - 3 Remove the valve spring.
 - 4 Remove and discard the valve stem seal and seat.



7. Inspect the components, if necessary. For additional information, refer to Section 303-00.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

Installation

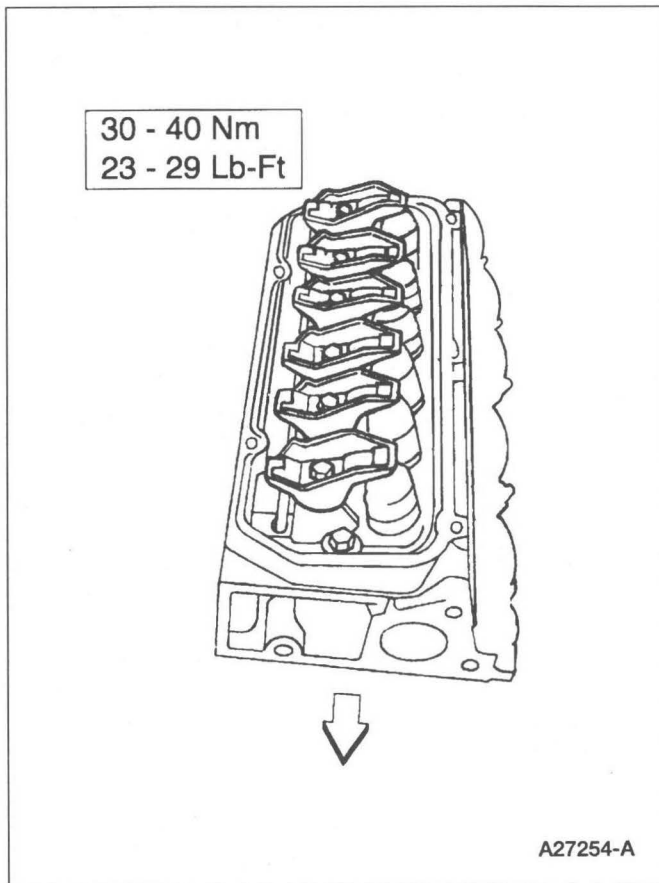
1.  **CAUTION:** The components removed should be marked for location; make sure the components are installed in the correct location.

NOTE: Lubricate parts with clean engine oil.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Tighten the rocker arm bolts in two stages.

- Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 5Nm (44 lb-in).
- Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 35Nm (26 lb-ft).




Valve Tappet

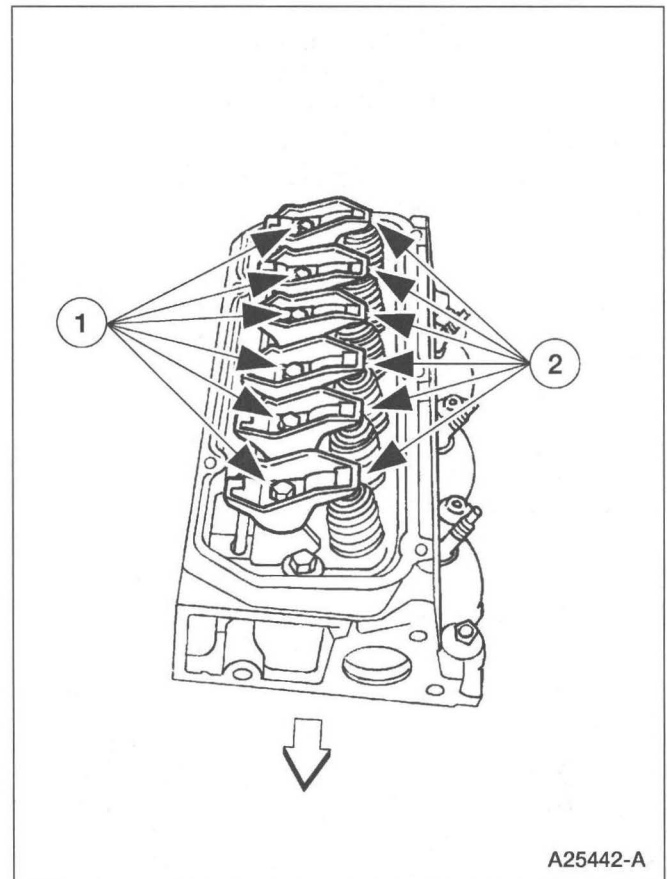
Material

Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

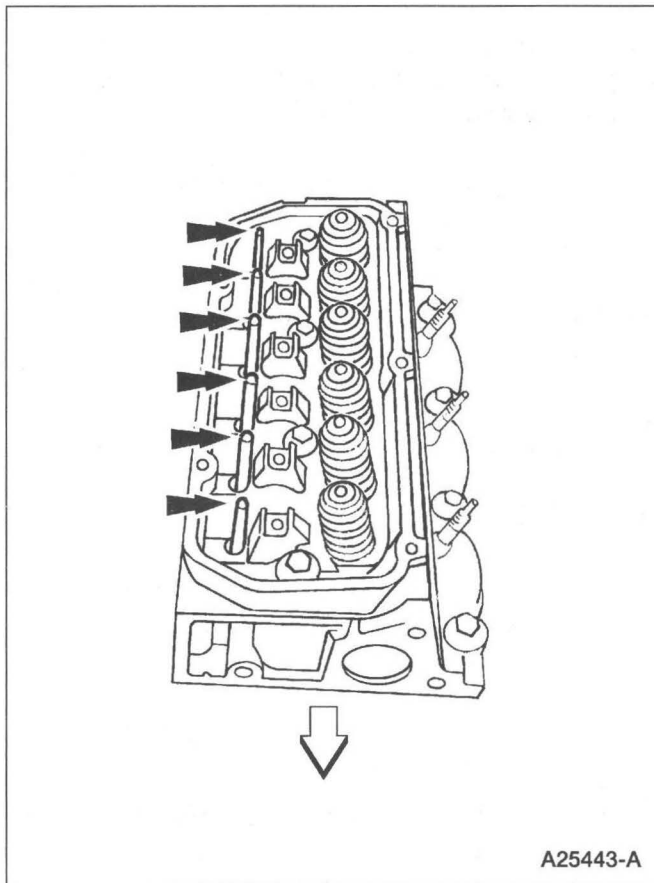
1.  **CAUTION:** If removing more than one valve tappet, mark the components removed for correct location.

1. Remove the lower intake manifold. For additional information, refer to Lower Intake Manifold in this section.
2. Remove the valve cover. For additional information, refer to Valve Cover RH and Valve Cover LH in this section.
3. Remove the rocker arms.
 - 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Remove the rocker arms.

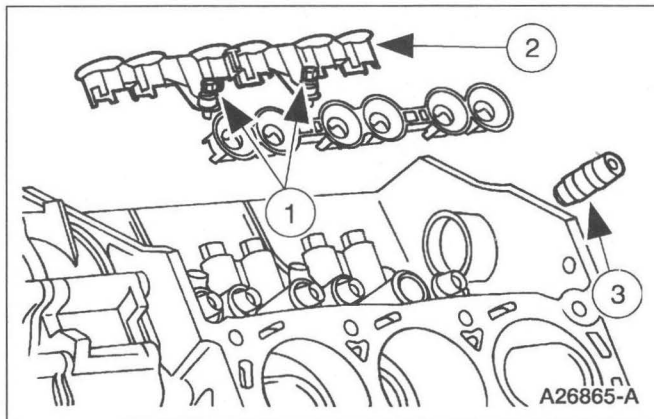



IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

4. Remove the push rods.

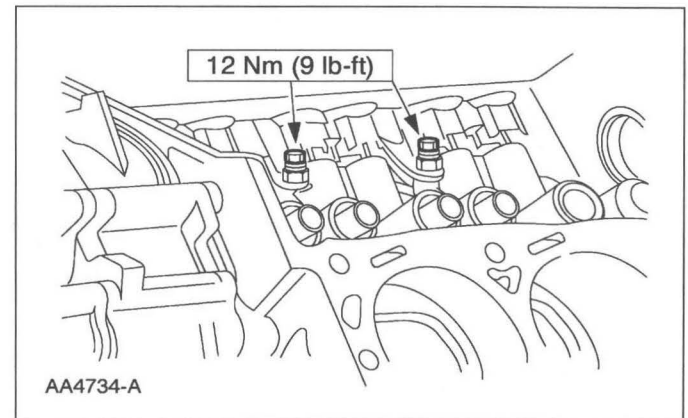


5. Remove the valve tappet.
- 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Remove the tappet guide plate and retainer.
 - 3 Remove the valve tappet.

**Installation**

1.  **CAUTION:** The components removed should be marked for location; make sure the components are installed in the correct location.

NOTE: Lubricate parts with clean engine oil. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Camshaft****Material**

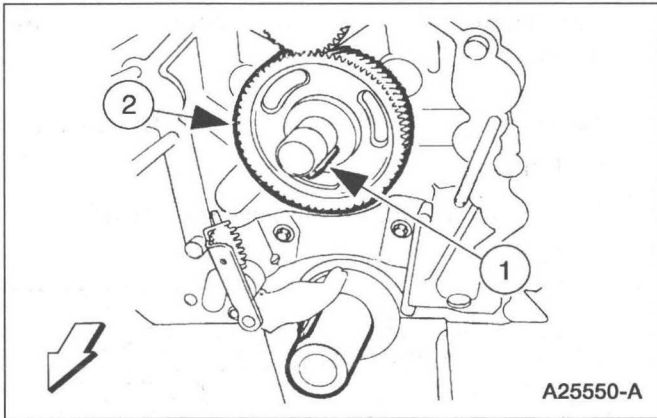
Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

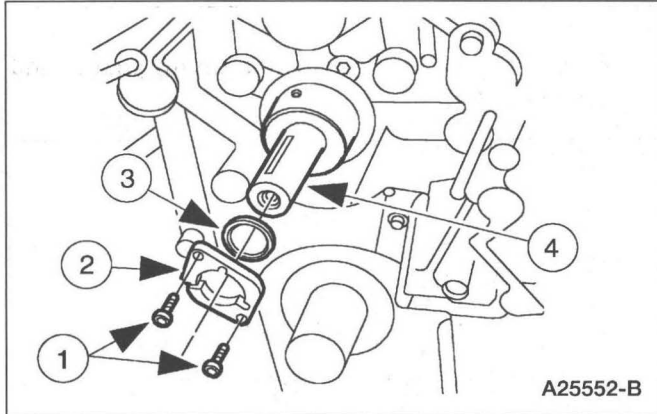
1. Remove the valve tappets. For additional information, refer to Valve Tappet in this section.
2. Remove the timing chain. For additional information, refer to Timing Chain—Tensioner in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

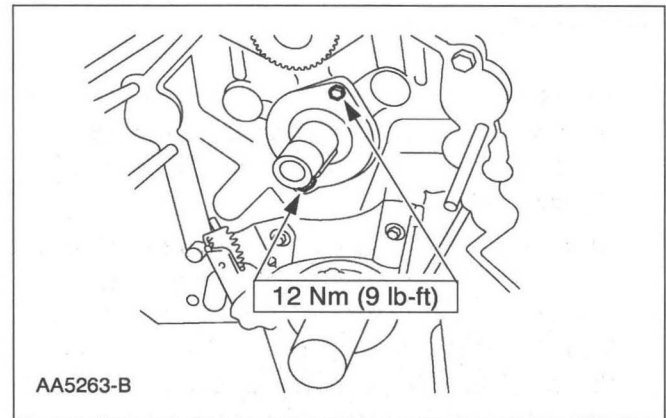
3. Remove the engine balance shaft drive gear from the camshaft.
 - 1 Remove the camshaft key.
 - 2 Remove the engine balance shaft drive gear.



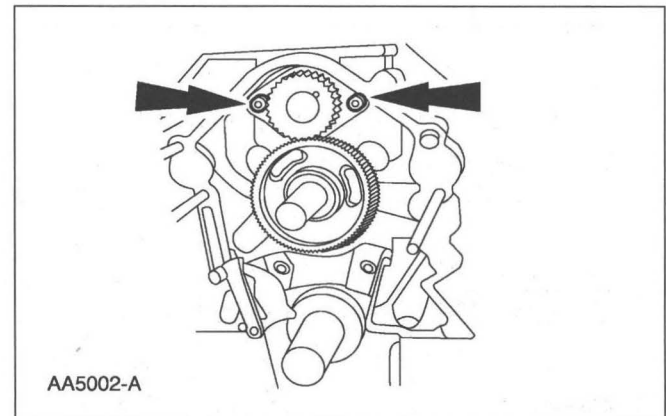
4. Remove the camshaft.
 - 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Remove the camshaft thrust plate.
 - 3 Remove the spacer.
 - 4 Remove the camshaft.

**Installation**

1. **NOTE:** Lubricate parts with clean engine oil.
To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Engine Dynamic Balance Shaft****Removal**

1. Remove the timing chain. For additional information, refer to Timing Chain—Tensioner in this section.
2. Remove the engine dynamic balance shaft.
 - Remove the bolts.
 - Remove the balance shaft drive gear, thrust plate and engine dynamic balance shaft as an assembly.

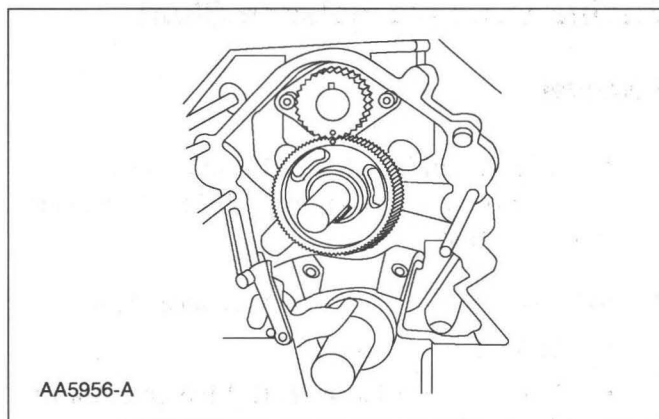


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

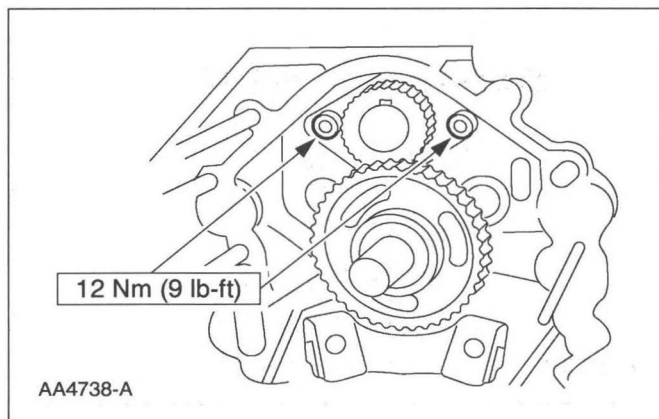
Installation

1. **NOTE:** If correctly aligned, the engine dynamic balance shaft keyway will be at 12 o'clock and the camshaft keyway will be at 6 o'clock on the camshaft.

Turn the camshaft so that the timing mark is at 12 o'clock and install the engine dynamic balance shaft assembly into the cylinder block. Turn the engine balance shaft driven gear so that the timing mark on the camshaft gear lines up with the timing mark on the engine balance shaft drive gear.



2. Install the bolts.

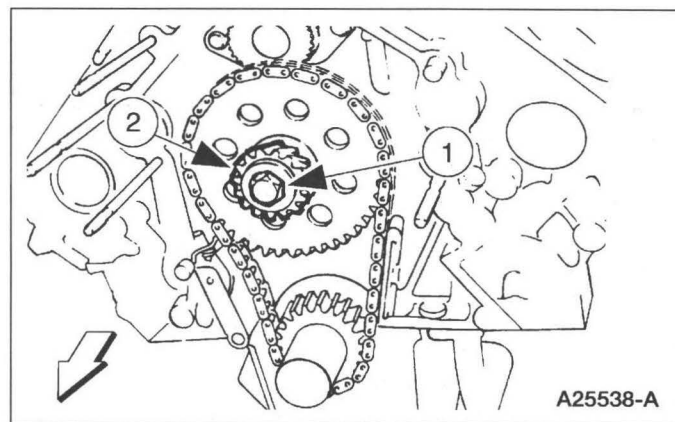


3. Install the timing chain. For additional information, refer to Timing Chain—Tensioner in this section.

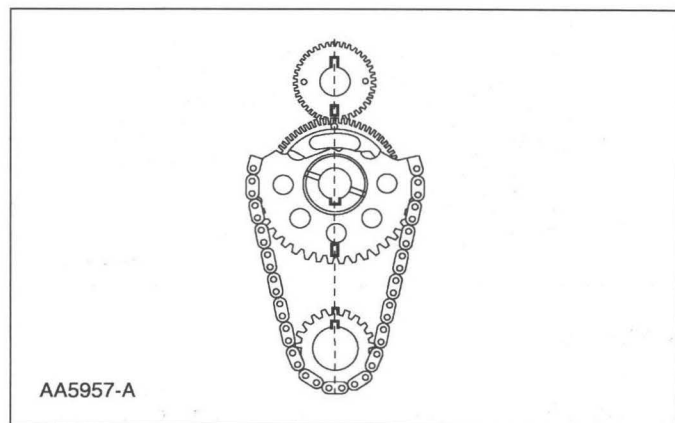
Timing Chain — Tensioner

Removal

1. Remove the timing cover. For additional information, refer to Engine Front Cover in this section.
2. Remove the camshaft synchronizer drive gear.
 - 1 Remove the bolt.
 - 2 Remove the camshaft synchronizer drive gear.

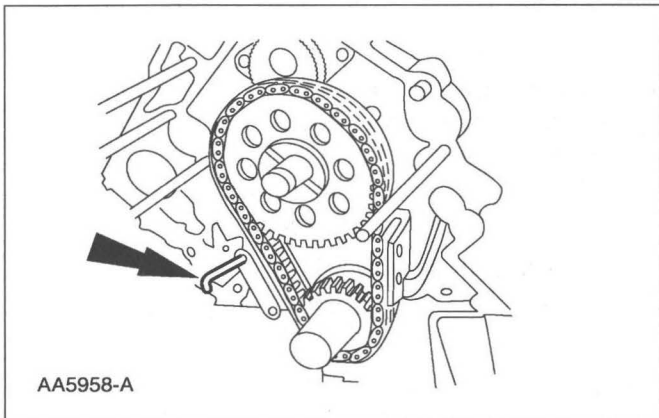


3. Rotate the crankshaft until the timing marks and keyways align.

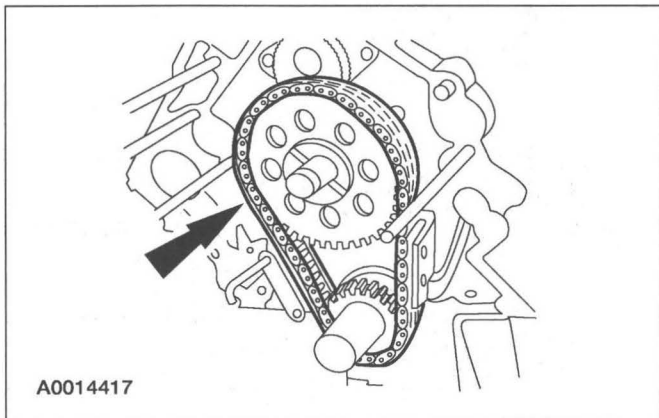


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

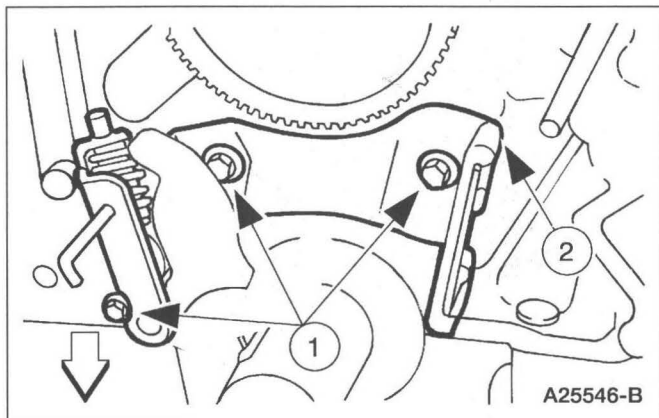
4. Compress and install a retaining pin to hold the timing chain tensioner.



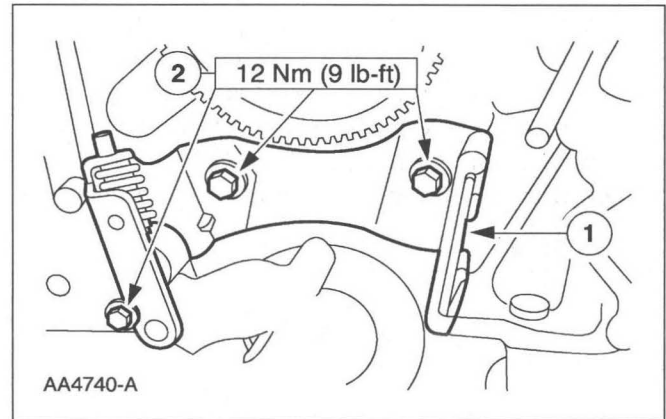
5. Remove the camshaft sprocket, the crankshaft sprocket and the timing chain as an assembly.



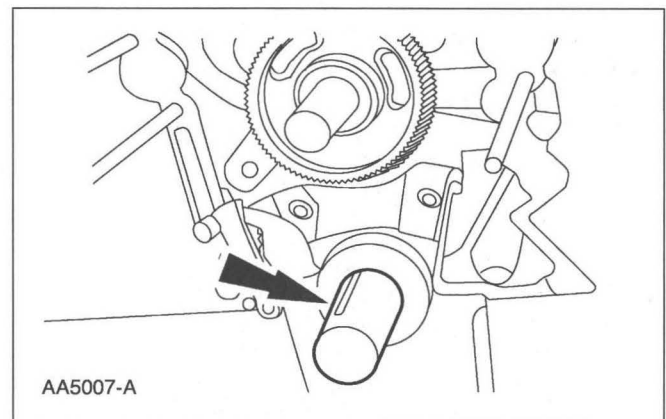
6. Remove the timing chain tensioner.
 - 1 Remove the three bolts.
 - 2 Remove the timing chain tensioner.

**Installation**

1. Install the timing chain tensioner.
 - Position the timing chain tensioner.
 - Install the bolts.



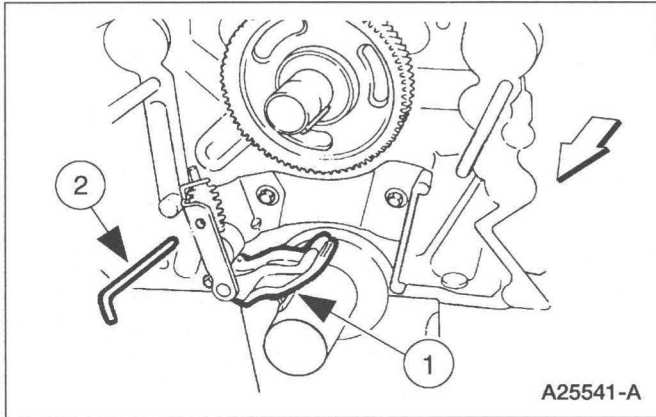
2. Rotate the crankshaft so the number one piston is at top dead center (TDC) and the key is at the 12 o'clock position.



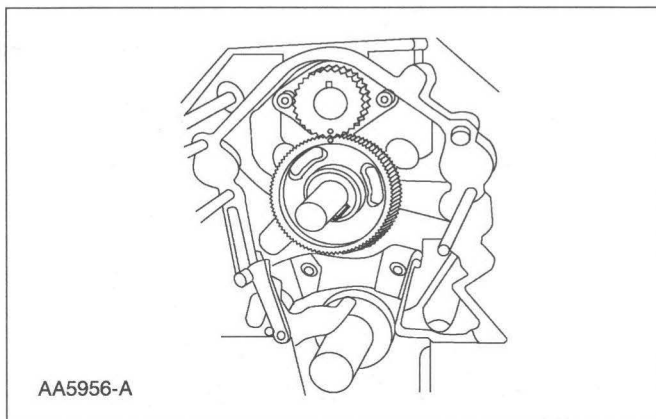
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

3. If necessary, retract the tensioner pad retracting mechanism.

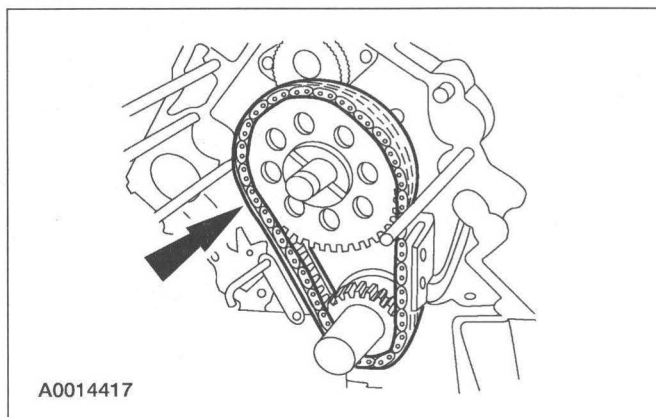
- 1 Compress the tensioner pad retracting mechanism.
- 2 Insert a retaining pin.



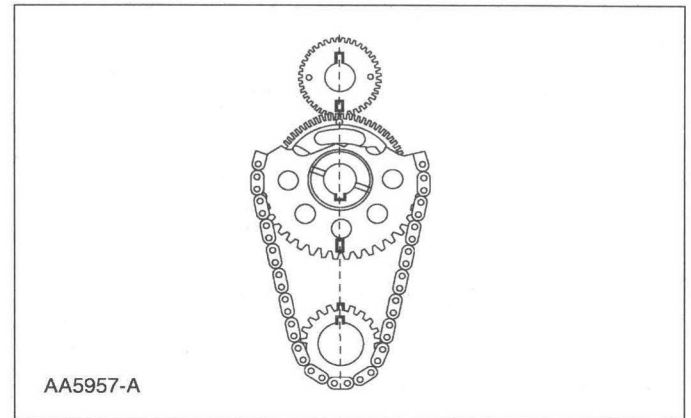
4. Turn the camshaft sprocket so that the timing mark is on the bottom of the camshaft.



5. Install the timing chain/belt, the camshaft sprocket and the crankshaft sprocket.

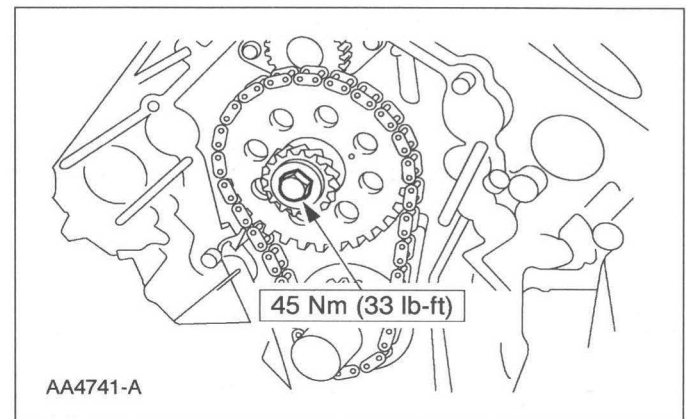


6. Make sure that the timing marks and the keyways are aligned.

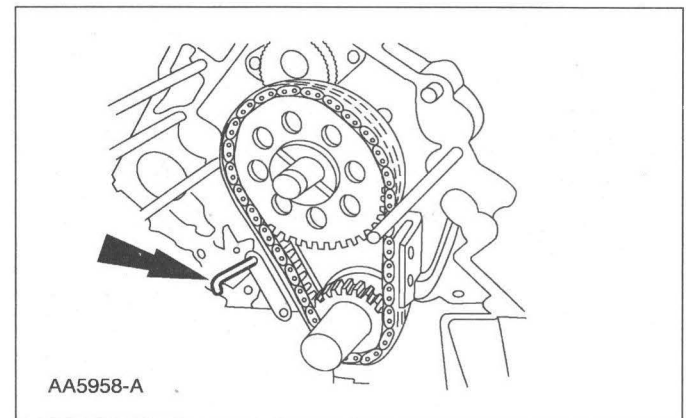


7. Install the camshaft synchronizer drive gear.

- Position the camshaft synchronizer drive gear.
- Install the bolt.



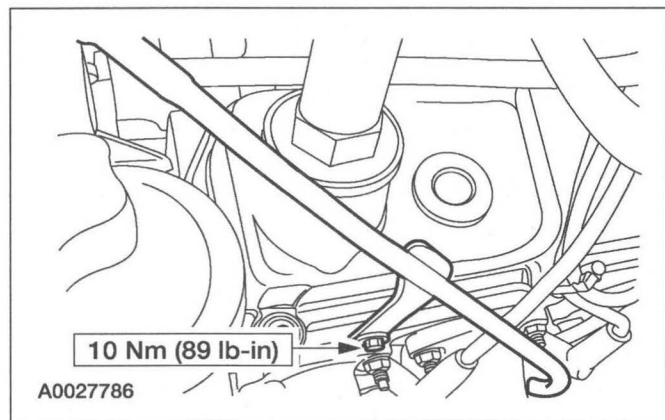
8. Remove the retaining pin.



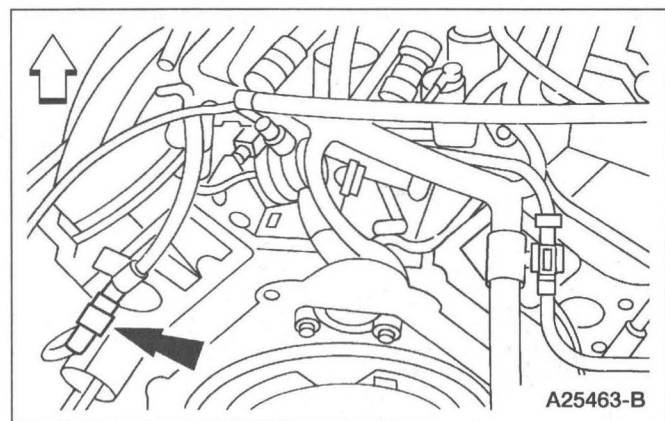
9. Install the timing cover. For additional information, refer to Engine Front Cover in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Exhaust Manifold LH****Removal and Installation**

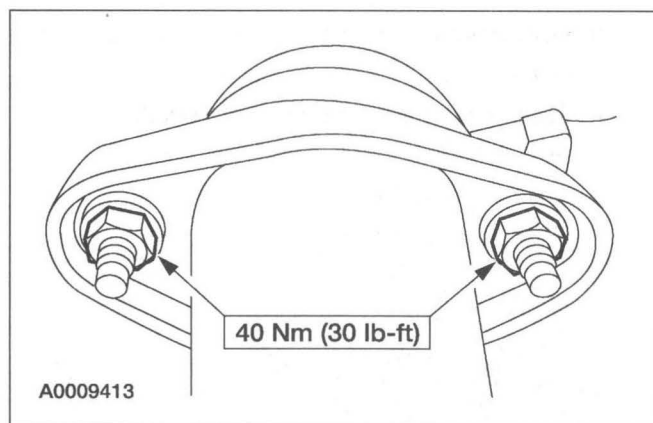
1. Remove the oil level indicator tube (6754).
 - Remove the nut.
 - Remove the oil level indicator tube.
 - Remove and discard the oil level indicator tube O-ring seal.



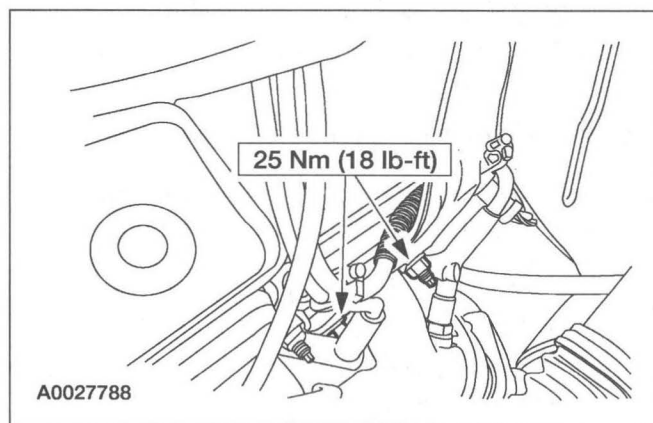
2. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
3. Raise the vehicle on a hoist. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
4. Disconnect the LH heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) electrical connector.



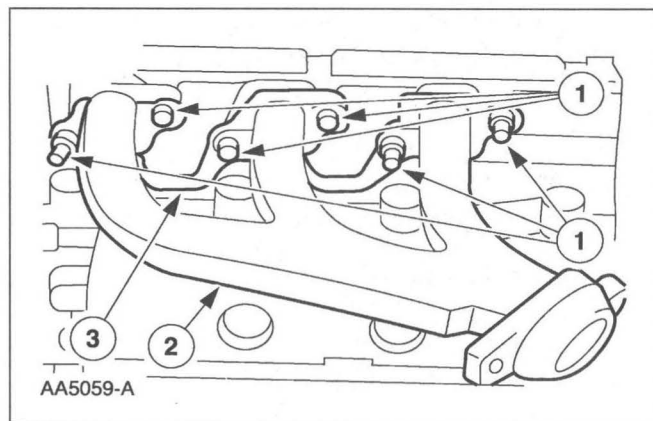
5. Remove the nuts and disconnect the Y-pipe from the LH exhaust manifold.



6. Remove two nuts and the engine lifting eye.



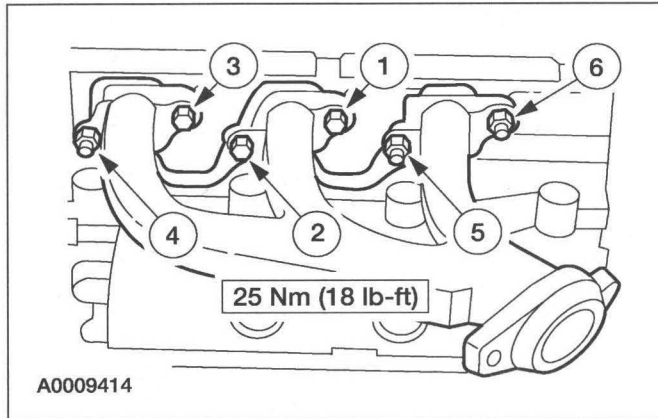
7. Remove the LH exhaust manifold and the LH exhaust manifold gasket.
 - 1 Remove the nuts.
 - 2 Remove the LH exhaust manifold.
 - 3 Remove and discard the LH exhaust manifold gasket.



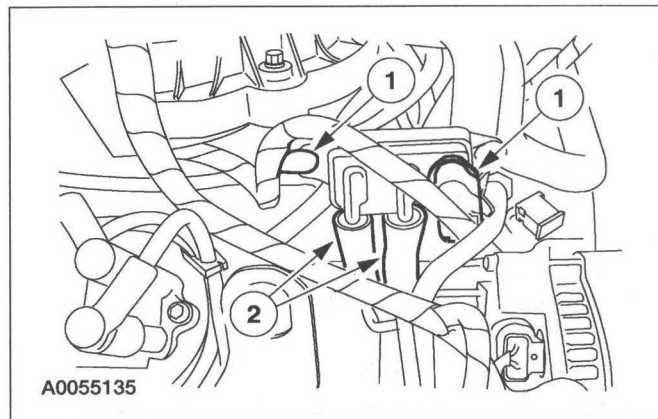
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

8. **NOTE:** Tighten the nuts in the sequence shown.

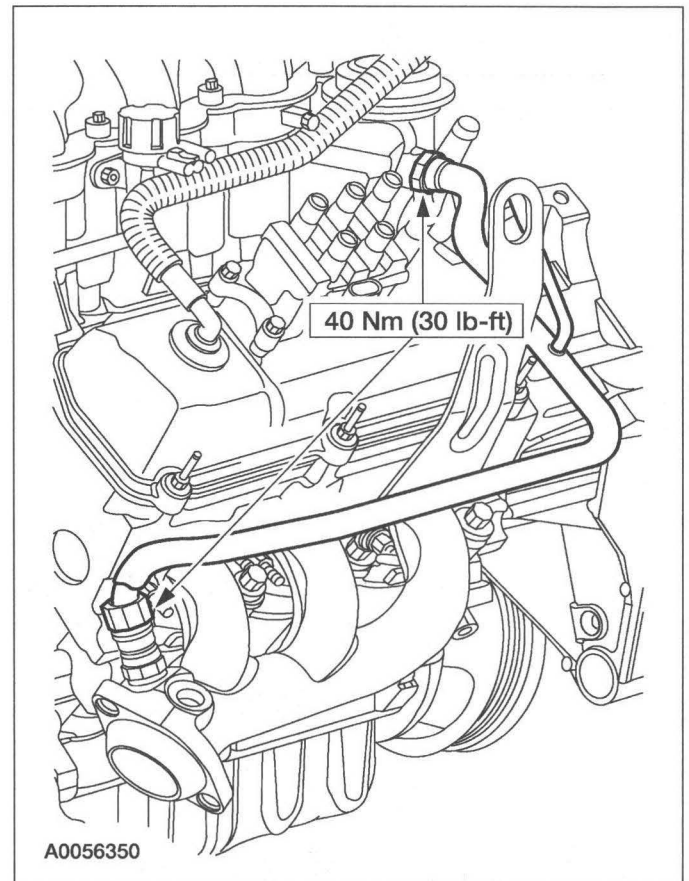
To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Exhaust Manifold RH****Removal and Installation**

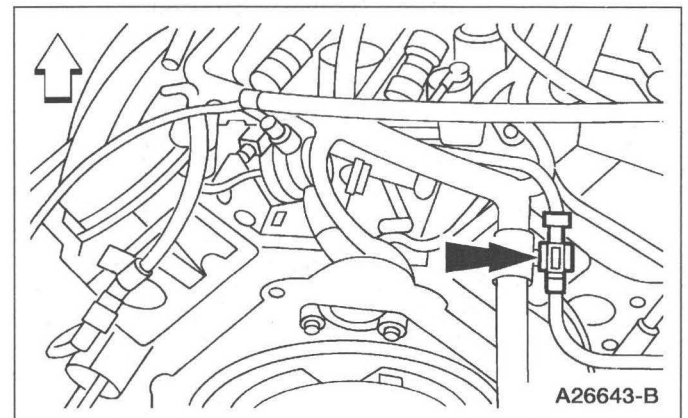
1. Remove the differential pressure feedback exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system.
 - 1 Disconnect the electrical connector and the wiring harness pin-type retainer.
 - 2 Remove the system vacuum hoses from the EGR tube.



2. Remove the exhaust manifold-to-EGR valve tube.

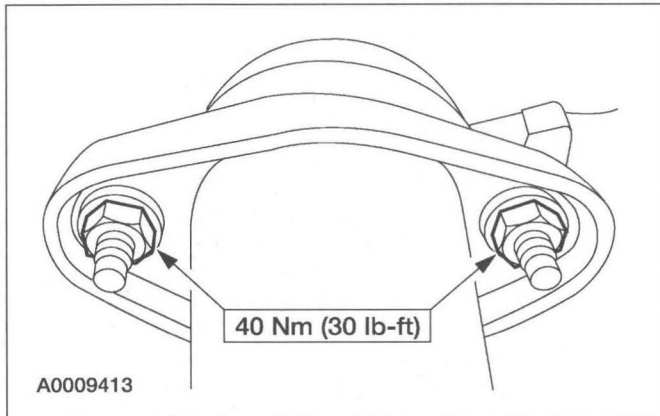


3. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
4. Raise the vehicle on a hoist. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
5. Disconnect the RH heated oxygen sensor (HO2S) electrical connector.

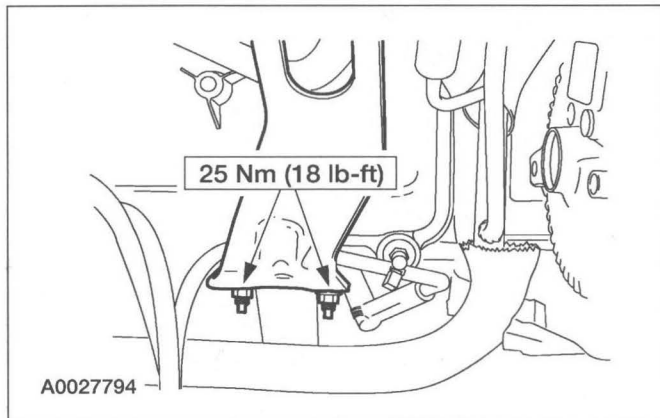


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

6. Remove the nuts and disconnect the Y-pipe from the RH exhaust manifold.

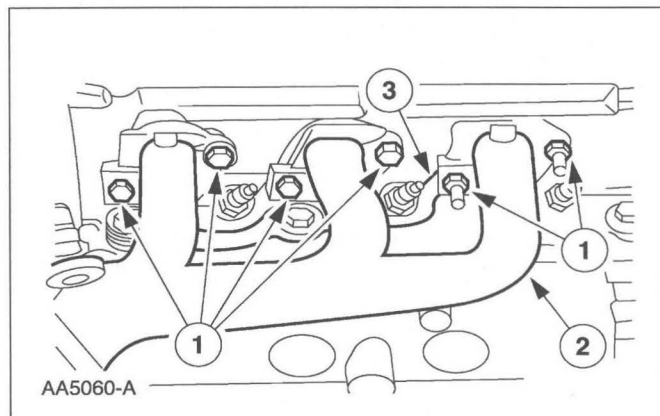


7. Remove the two nuts and the engine lifting eye.



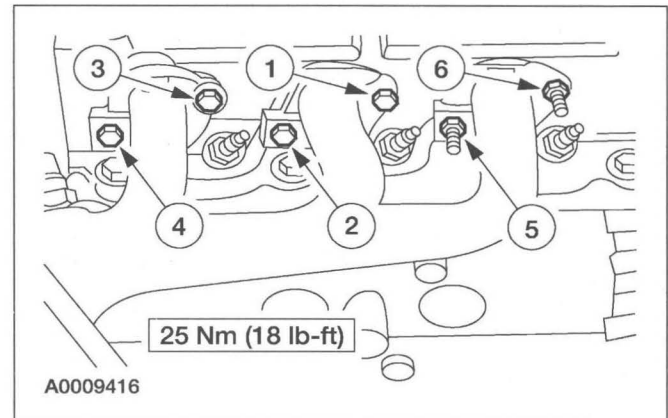
8. Remove the RH exhaust manifold and the RH exhaust manifold gasket.

- 1 Remove the bolts.
- 2 Remove the RH exhaust manifold.
- 3 Remove and discard the RH exhaust manifold gasket.



9. **NOTE:** Use a new exhaust manifold gasket. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

- Tighten the exhaust manifold retainers in the sequence shown.

**Cylinder Head****Material**

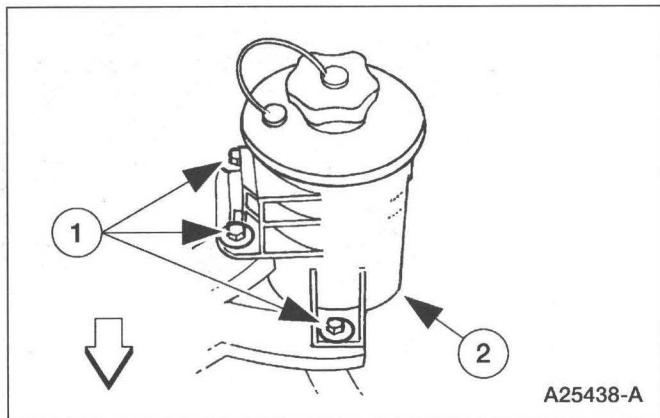
Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal**Both cylinder heads**

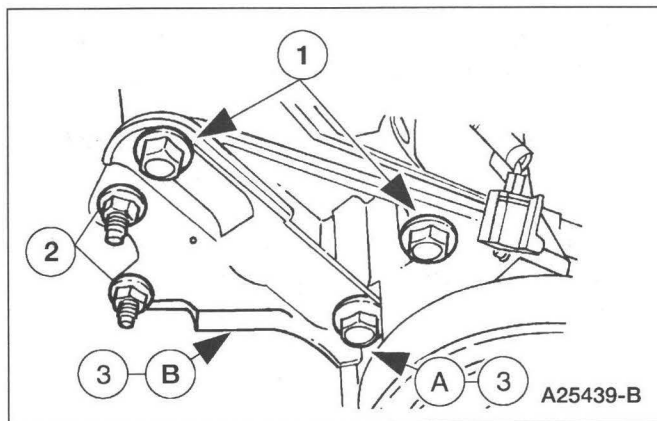
1. Remove the lower intake manifold. For additional information, refer to Lower Intake Manifold in this section.
2. Remove the LH valve cover. For additional information, refer to Valve Cover LH.
3. Remove the RH valve cover. For additional information, refer to Valve Cover RH.
4. Remove the exhaust manifold. For additional information, refer to Exhaust Manifold LH or Exhaust Manifold RH in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**LH cylinder head**

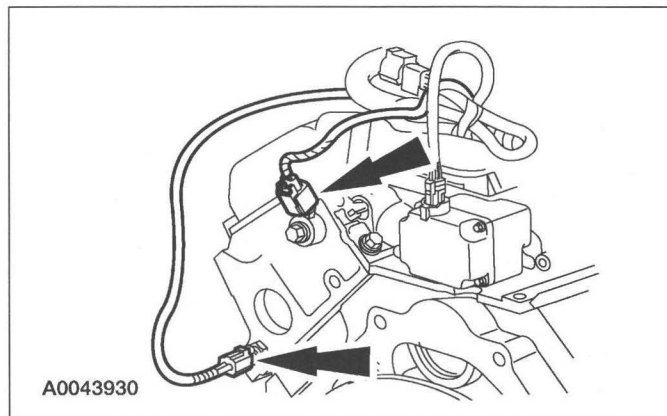
5. Position the power steering pump reservoir aside.
 - 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Position the power steering reservoir aside.



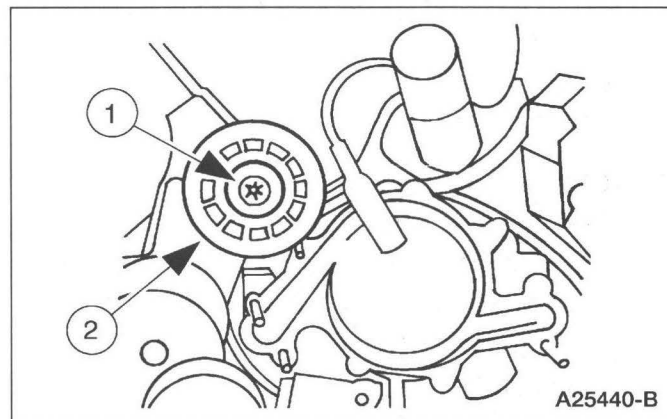
6. Remove the A/C compressor, if equipped. For additional information, refer to Section 412-03.
7. Remove and support the A/C compressor mounting bracket (2882) and power steering pump (3A674).
 - 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Remove the nuts.
 - 3 Loosen the remaining (A) bolt until the (B) A/C compressor mounting bracket and power steering pump are free from the LH cylinder head. Support the A/C compressor mounting bracket and power steering pump and position aside.



8. Disconnect the cylinder head temperature (CHT) sensor and the knock sensor electrical connectors.

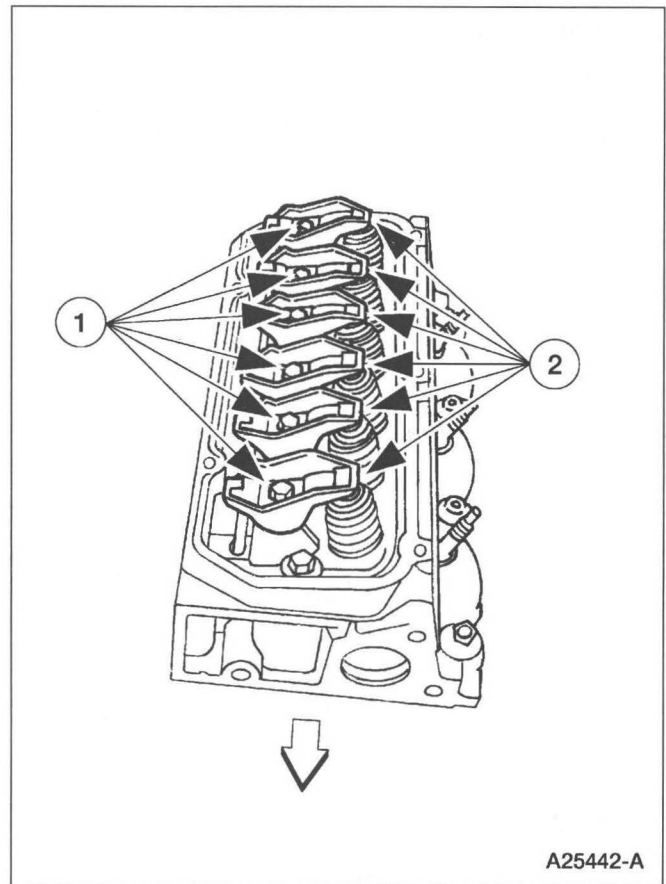
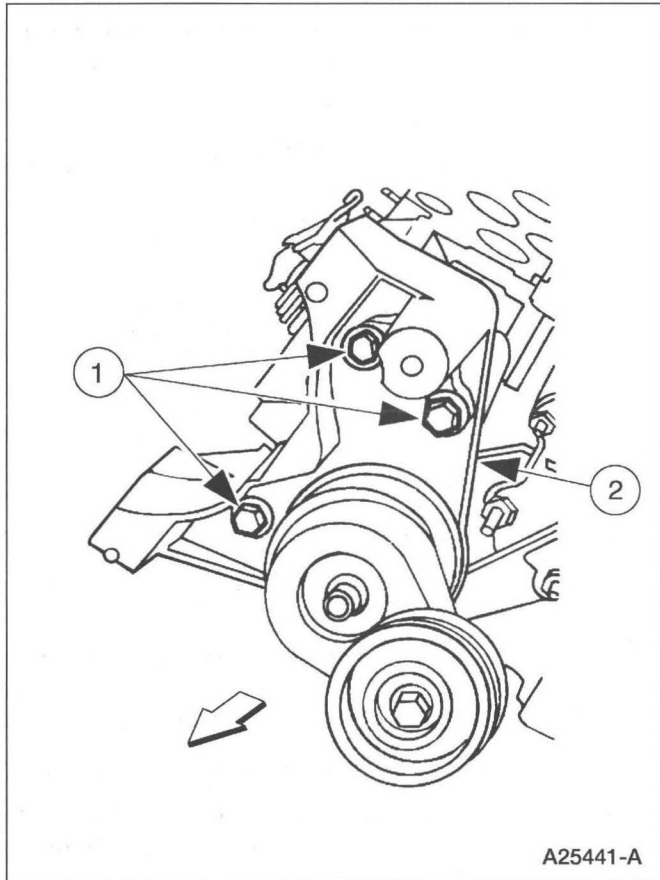
**RH cylinder head**


9. Remove the generator (GEN). For additional information, refer to Section 414-02.
10. Remove the idler pulley.
 - 1 Remove the bolt.
 - 2 Remove the idler pulley.



IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

11. Remove the generator mounting bracket.
- 1 Remove the bolts.
 - 2 Remove the generator mounting bracket.

**Both cylinder heads**

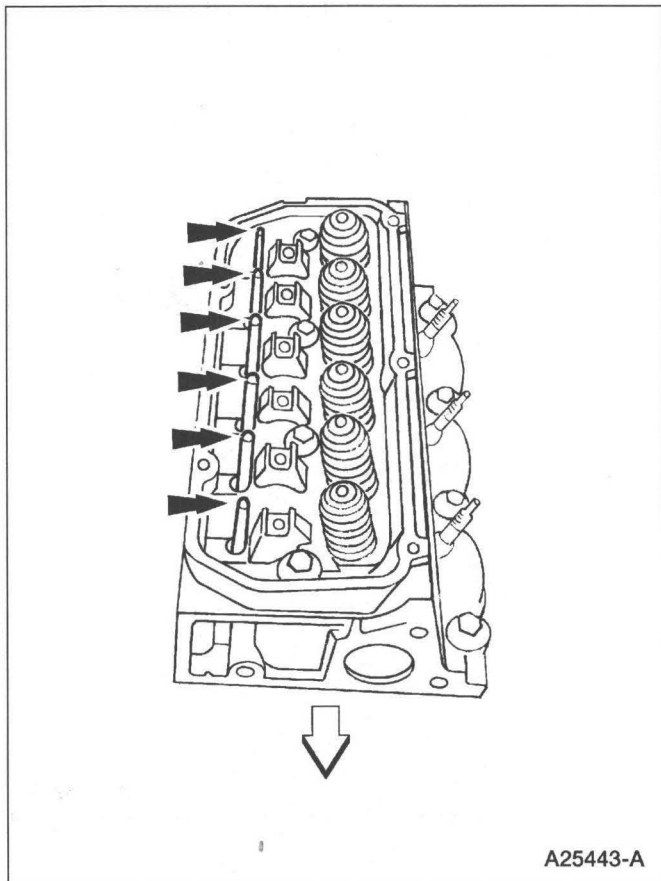
12.  **CAUTION:** If the components are to be reinstalled, they must be installed in the same position. Mark the components for location.

Remove the six rocker arms.

- 1 Remove the bolts.
- 2 Remove the rocker arms.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

13. Remove the push rods.

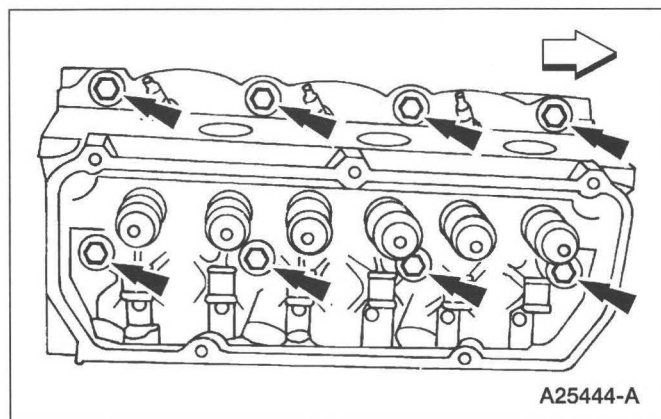


14. **NOTE:** Discard the cylinder head bolts.

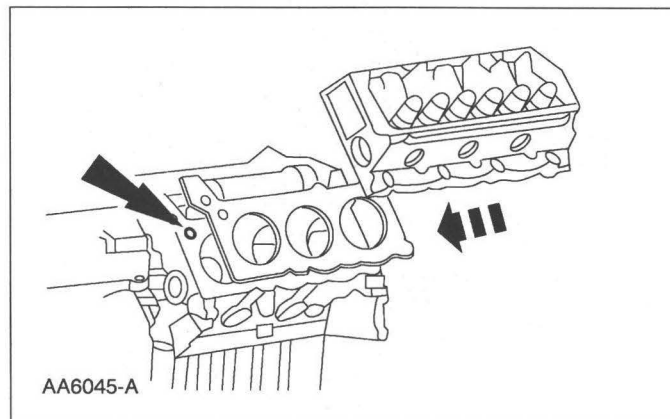
NOTE: Record the location of the long and the short bolts.

Remove the cylinder head.

- Remove and discard the bolts.

**Installation****Both cylinder heads**

1. Clean and inspect the cylinder head for flatness. For additional information, refer to Section 303-00.
2. Position a new cylinder head gasket and install the cylinder head.

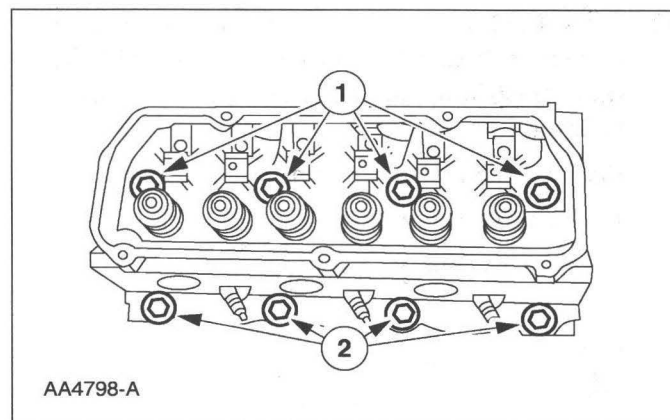


3. **⚠ CAUTION: Always use new bolts.**

NOTE: Lubricate bolts with clean engine oil.

Install new bolts. Refer to the location note made during removal and make sure the bolts are installed in the correct location.

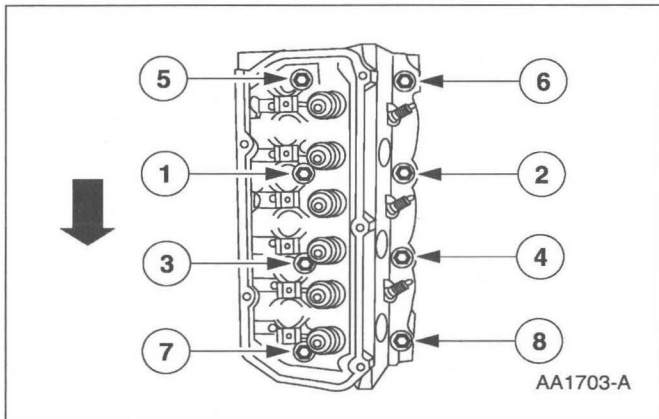
- 1 Install the new long bolts.
- 2 Install the new short bolts.



IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

4. Tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in three stages.

- Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 20 Nm (15 lb-ft).
- Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 40 Nm (30 lb-ft).
- Stage 3: Tighten the bolts to 50 Nm (37 lb-ft).

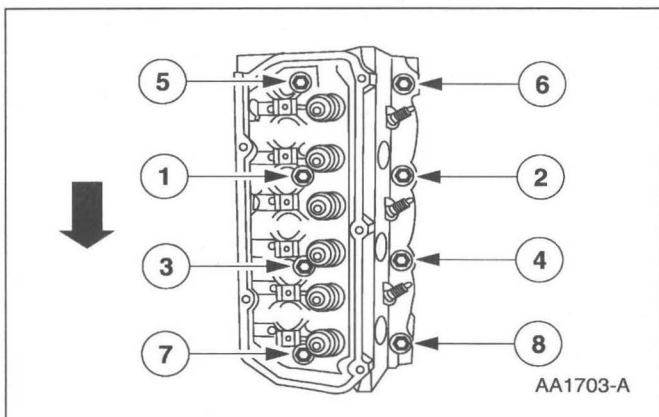


5. **CAUTION:** Do not loosen all of the bolts at one time. Each bolt must be loosened and final-tightened prior to working on the next bolt in the sequence.

NOTE: The short bolts are numbered 2, 4, 6 and 8 and the long bolts numbered 1, 3, 5 and 7.

Loosen, then tighten the bolts in the sequence shown:

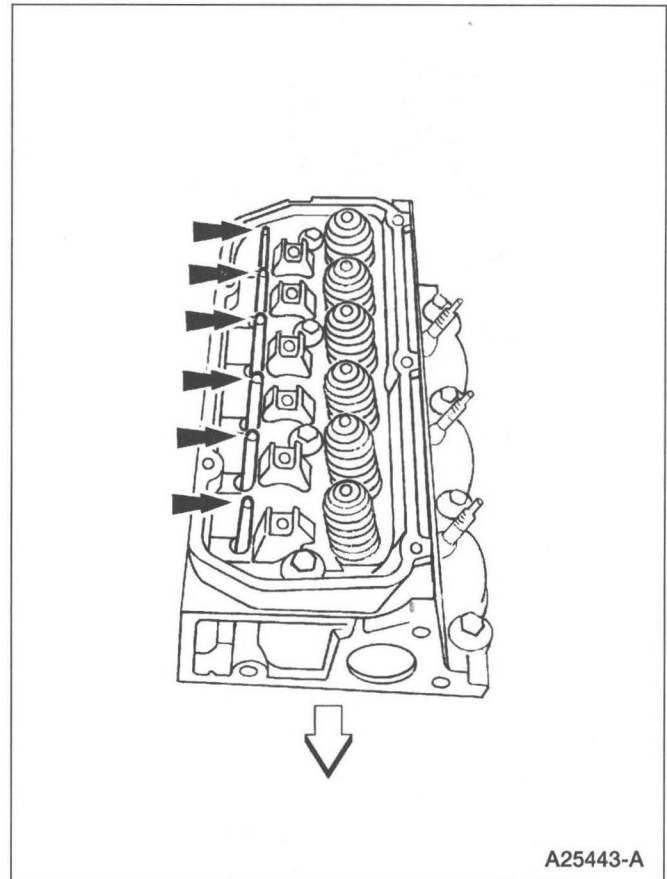
- Tighten the short bolts to 25 Nm (18 lb-ft), then tighten an additional 180 degrees.
- Tighten the long bolts to 45 Nm (33 lb-ft), then tighten an additional 180 degrees.



6. **CAUTION:** Refer to the location note made during removal and make sure the components are installed in the correct location.

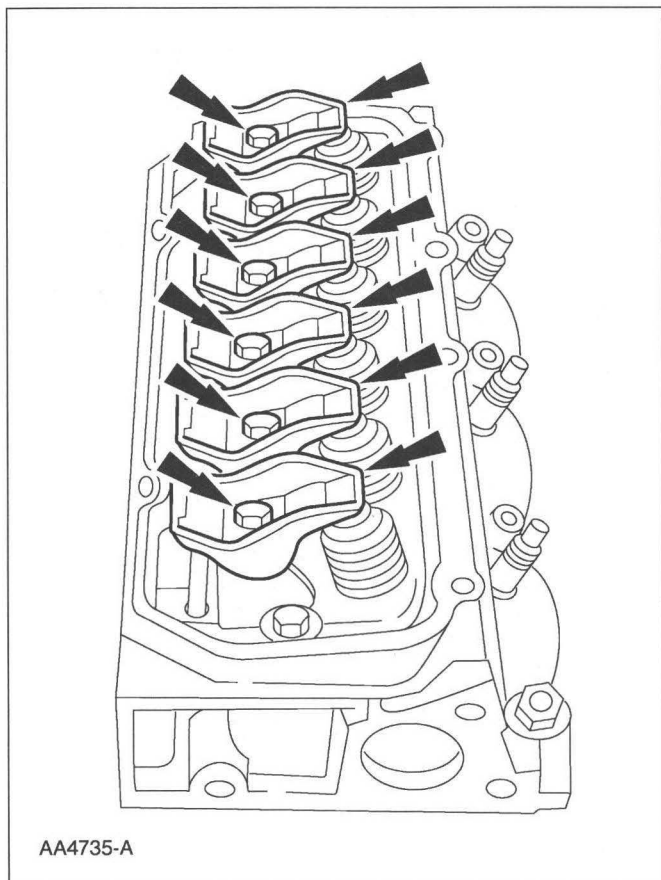
NOTE: Lubricate the pushrods with clean engine oil.

Install the pushrods.



IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

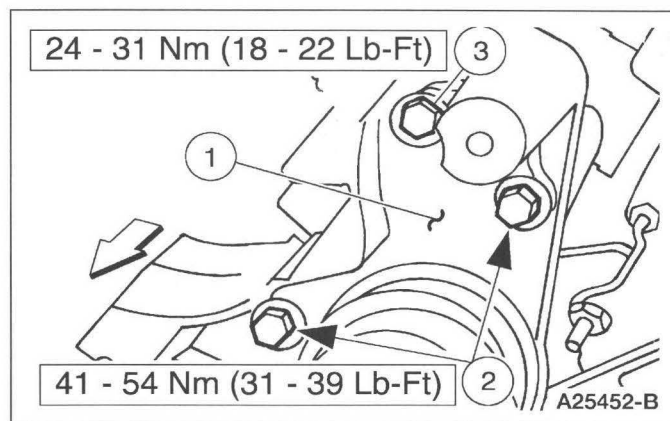
7. Install the rocker arms, tighten the bolts in two stages.
- Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 5 Nm (44 lb-in).
 - Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 35 Nm (26 lb-ft).



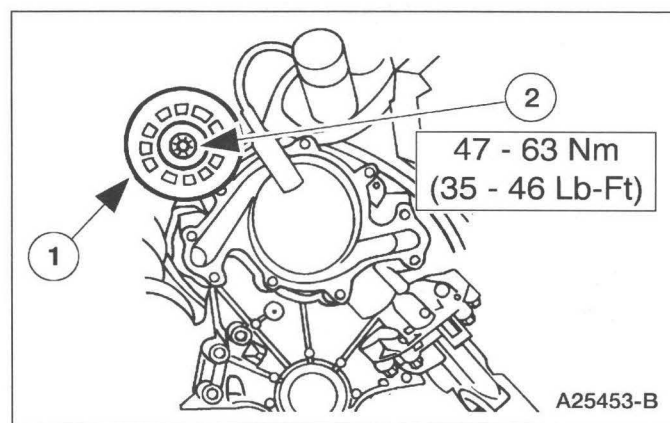
8. If new valve train components have been installed, inspect the valve clearance. For additional information, refer to Section 303-00.

RH cylinder head

9. Install the generator mounting bracket.
- 1 Position the generator mounting bracket.
 - 2 Install the long bolts.
 - 3 Install the short bolt.



10. Install the idler pulley.
- 1 Position the idler pulley.
 - 2 Install the bolt.

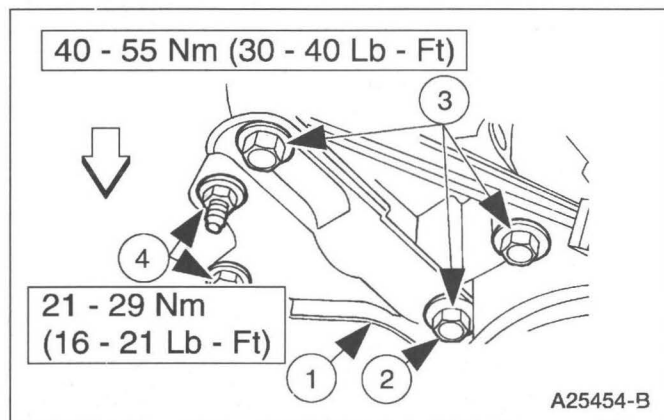


11. Install the generator. For additional information, refer to Section 414-02.

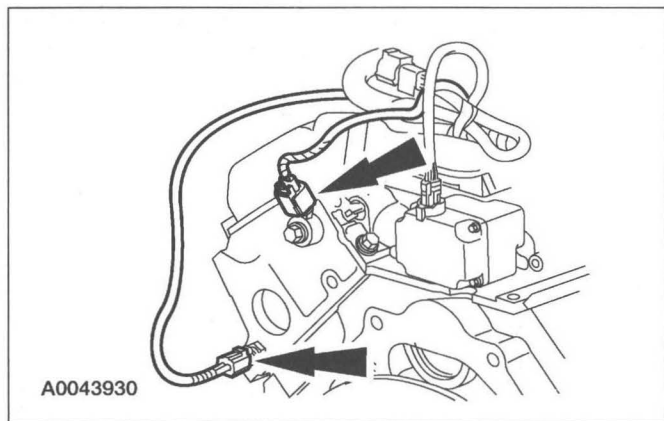
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**LH cylinder head**

12. Install the A/C compressor mounting bracket and power steering pump.

- 1 Position the A/C compressor mounting bracket and power steering pump.
- 2 Start the bolt.
- 3 Install the bolts.
- 4 Install the nuts.



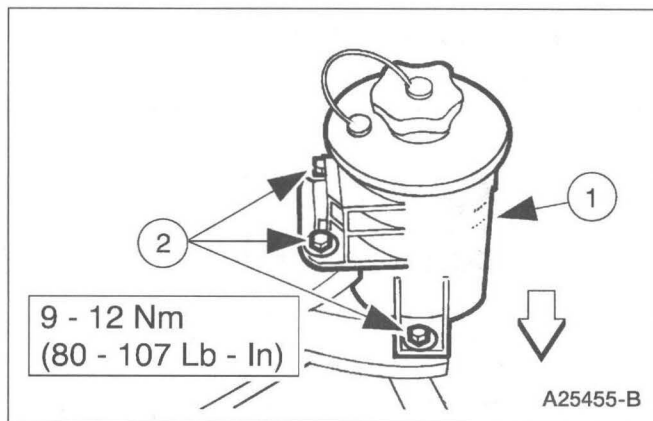
13. Connect the cylinder head temperature (CHT) sensor and the knock sensor electrical connectors.



14. Install the A/C compressor, if equipped. For additional information, refer to Section 412-03.

15. Install the power steering fluid reservoir.

- 1 Position the power steering fluid reservoir.
- 2 Install the bolts.

**Both cylinder heads**

16. Install the exhaust manifolds. For additional information, refer to Exhaust Manifold RH and Exhaust Manifold LH in this section.

17. **NOTE:** Inspect the LH valve cover gasket (6584) for damage. Install a new gasket, if necessary.

Install the LH valve cover. For additional information refer to Valve Cover LH in this section.

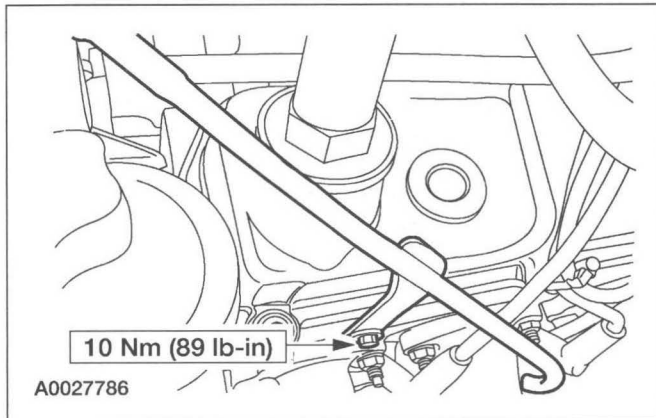
18. **NOTE:** Inspect the RH valve cover gasket for damage. Replace if necessary.

Install the RH valve cover. For additional information, refer to Valve Cover RH in this section.

19. Install the lower intake manifold. For additional information, refer to Lower Intake Manifold in this section.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)**Oil Level Indicator and Tube****Removal and Installation**

1. Remove the oil level indicator tube.
 - Remove the nut.
 - Remove the oil level indicator tube.
 - Remove and discard the oil level indicator tube O-ring seal.



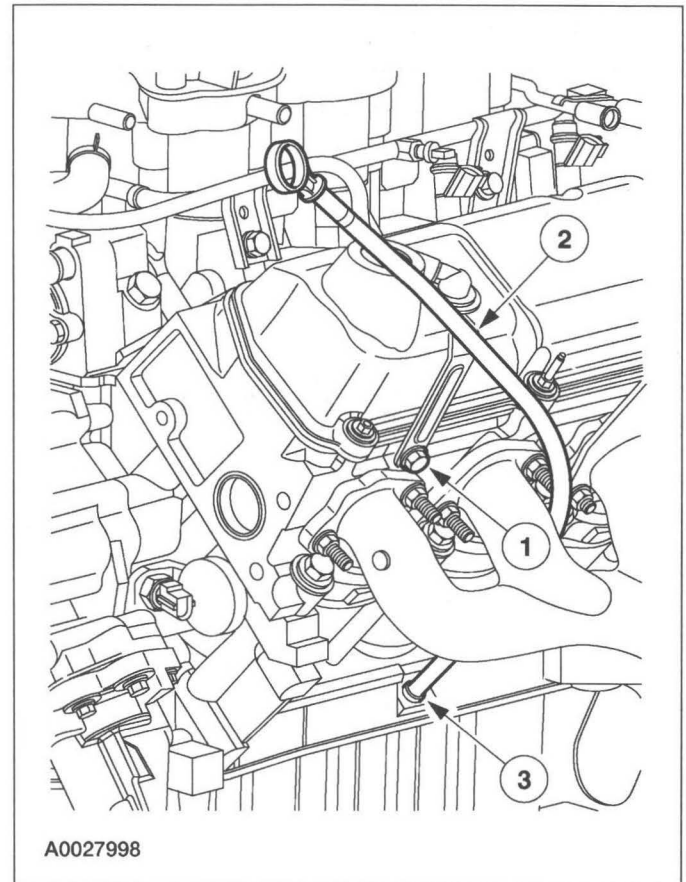
2. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Oil Pan — 4x2**Material**

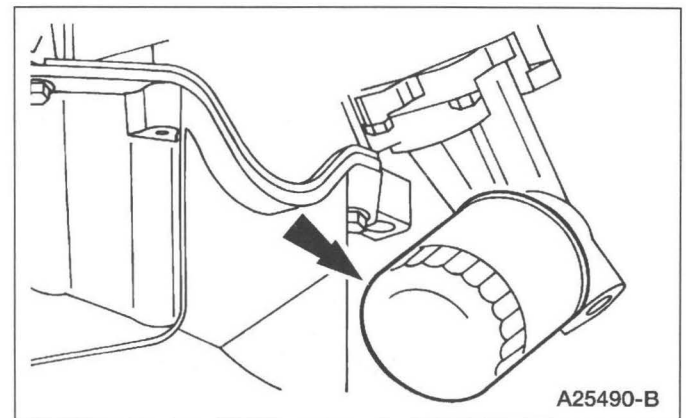
Item	Specification
Metal Surface Cleaner F4AZ-19A536-RA or equivalent	WSE-M5B392-A
Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA or equivalent	WSE-M4G323-A4

Removal and Installation

1. Remove the engine. For additional information, refer to Engine in the removal portion of this section.
2. Remove the oil level indicator tube.
 - 1 Remove the bolt.
 - 2 Remove the oil level indicator tube.
 - 3 Remove and discard the oil level indicator tube O-ring seal.

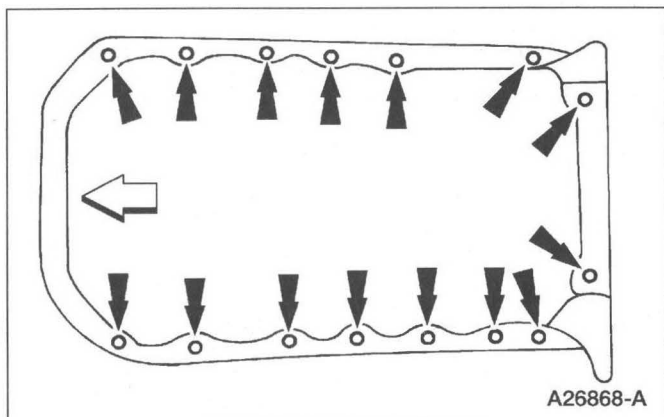


3. Remove the oil bypass filter.



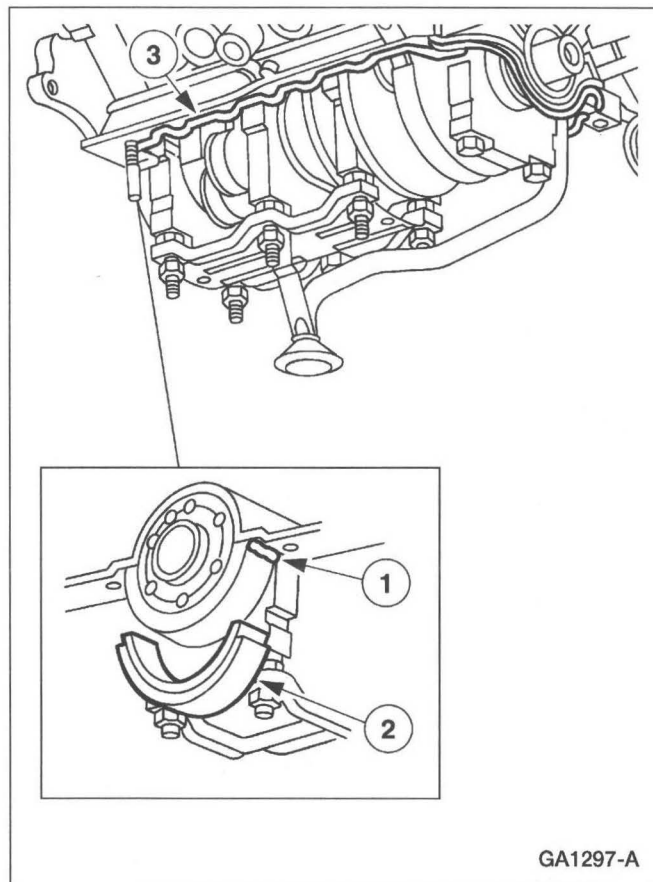
IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

4. Remove the oil pan.
- Remove the bolts.

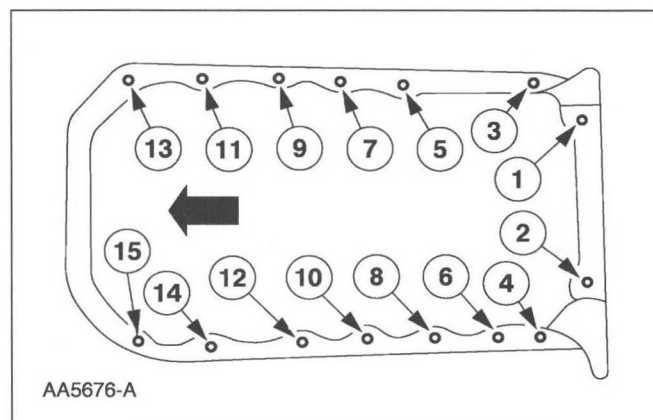


5. **NOTE:** If the oil pan is not installed within four minutes, remove the sealer and reapply. Clean and apply the sealant to the oil pan sealing areas indicated and install the oil pan rear seal.

- 1 Apply the sealer to the rear main bearing cap.
- 2 Install the oil pan rear seal.
- 3 Apply the sealer to the oil pan mating surface.
 - Use metal surface cleaner.
 - Use silicone gasket and sealant.

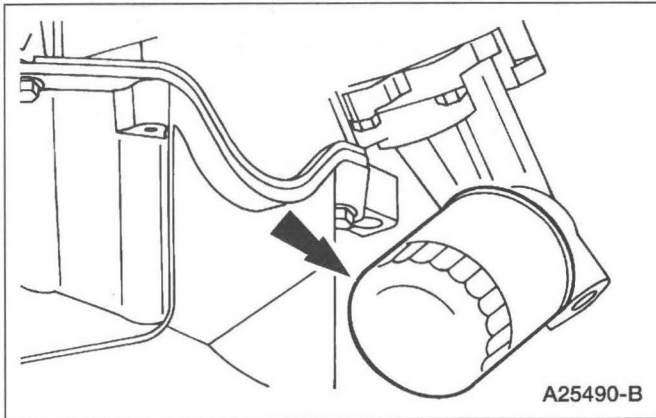


6. Install the oil pan.
- Tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in two stages:
 - Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 5 Nm (44 lb-in).
 - Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 10 Nm (89 lb-in).

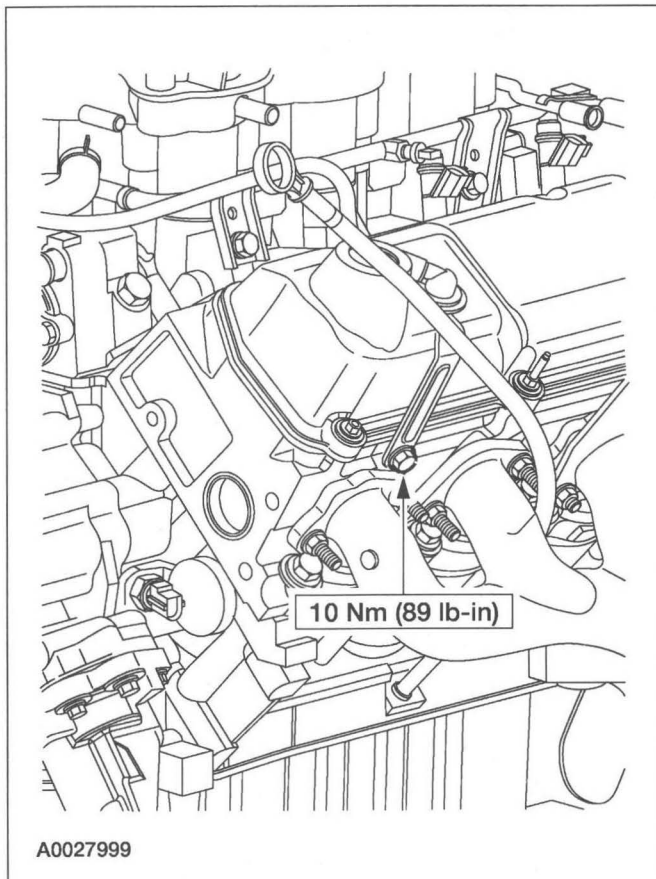


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

7. Install the oil bypass filter.



8. **NOTE:** Install a new O-ring seal.
Install the oil level indicator and tube.
- Install the bolt.



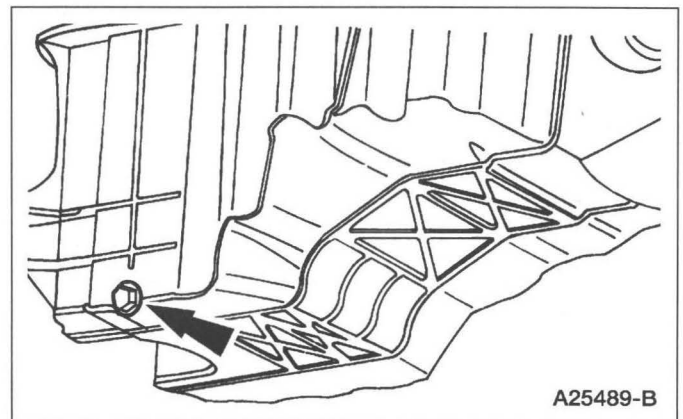
9. Install the engine. For additional information, refer to Engine in the installation portion of this section.

Oil Pan — 4x4**Material**

Item	Specification
Metal Surface Cleaner F4AZ-19A536-RA or equivalent	WSE-M5B392-A
Silicone Gasket and Sealant F7AZ-19554-EA or equivalent	WSE-M4G323-A4
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

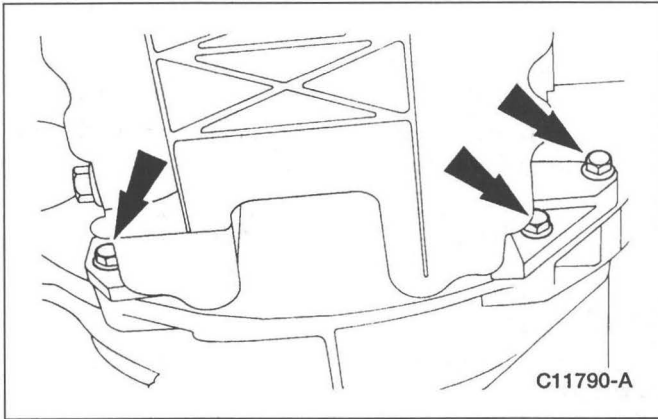
1. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
2. Raise the vehicle on a hoist. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
3. Remove the oil pan drain plug and drain the engine oil.



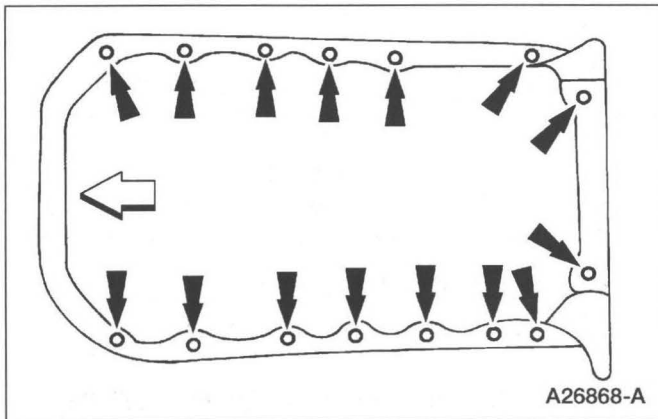
4. Remove the front axle assembly—front drive. For additional information, refer to Section 205-03.

IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

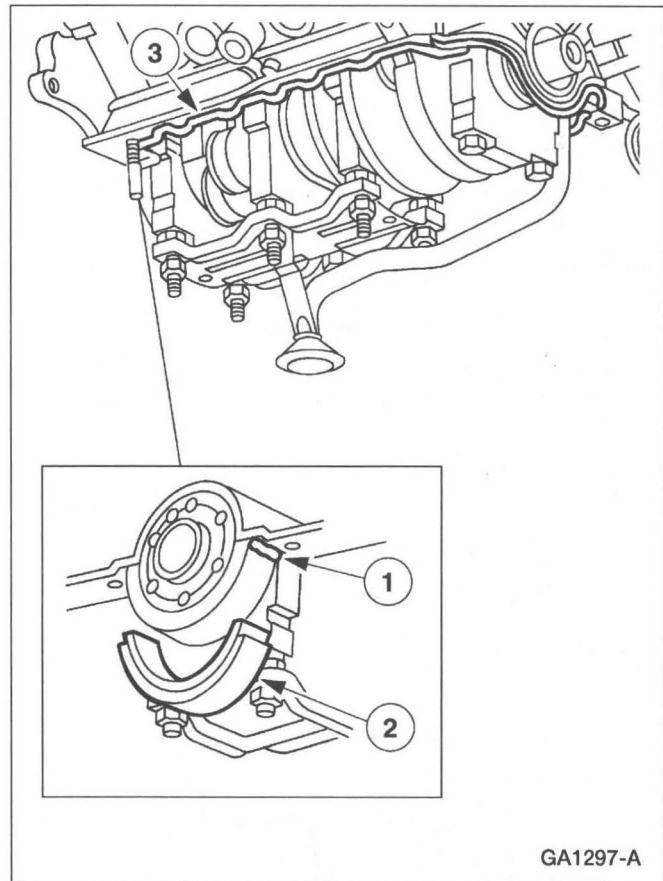
5. Remove the oil pan-to-transmission bolts.



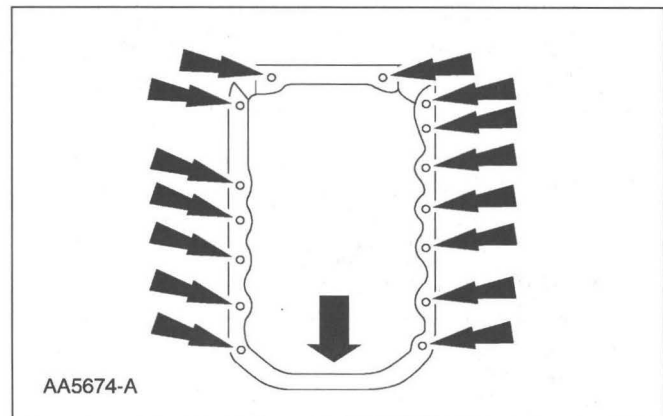
6. Remove the bolts and the oil pan.

**Installation**

1. **NOTE:** If the oil pan is not installed within four minutes, remove the sealer and reapply. Clean and apply sealant to the oil pan sealing areas indicated and install the oil pan rear seal.
 - 1 Apply sealer to the rear main bearing cap.
 - 2 Install the oil pan rear seal.
 - 3 Apply sealer to the oil pan mating surface.
 - Use metal surface cleaner.
 - Use silicone gasket and sealant.

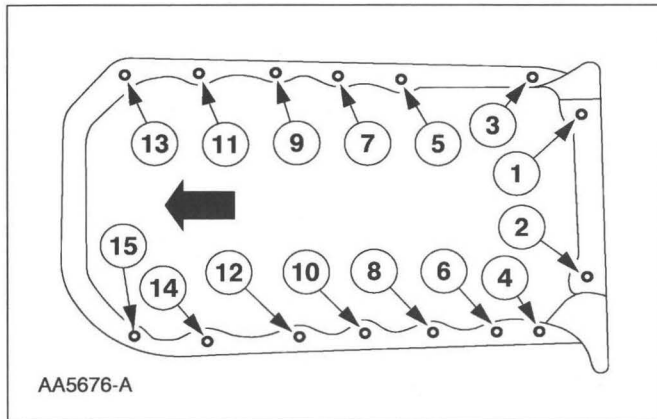


2. Position the oil pan and start the bolts.

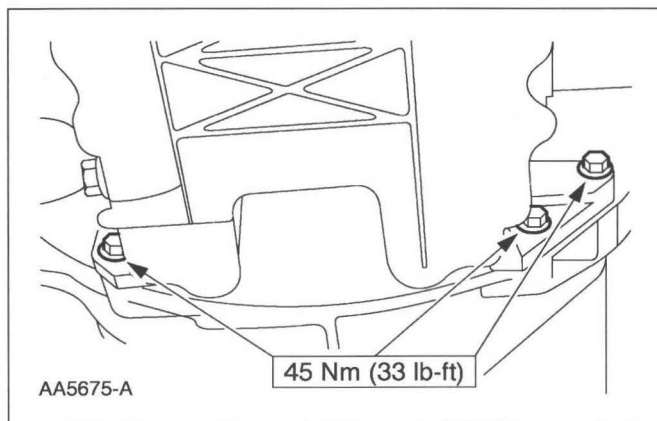


IN-VEHICLE REPAIR (Continued)

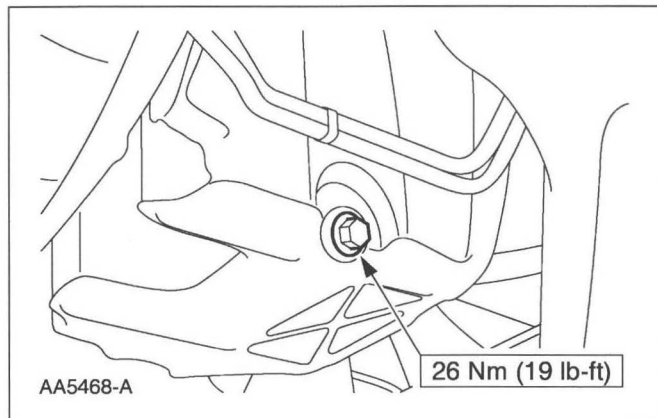
3. Tighten the bolts in the sequence indicated, in two stages.
 - Stage 1: Tighten the bolts to 5 Nm (44 lb-in).
 - Stage 2: Tighten the bolts to 10 Nm (89 lb-in).



4. Install the oil pan-to-transmission bolts.



5. Install the oil pan drain plug.



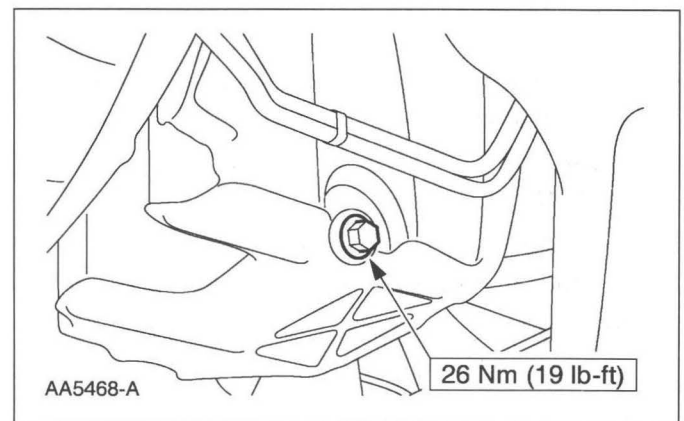
6. Install the front drive axle assembly. For additional information, refer to Section 205-03.
7. Lower the vehicle.
8. Connect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
9. Fill the engine with clean engine oil.

Oil Pump**Material**

Item	Specification
SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP or equivalent	WSS-M2C153-H

Removal

1. Disconnect the battery ground cable. For additional information, refer to Section 414-01.
2. Raise the vehicle on a hoist. For additional information, refer to Section 100-02.
3. Remove the oil pan drain plug and drain the engine oil.



METRICS

ENGLISH/METRIC CONVERSION

DESCRIPTION	MULTIPLY	BY	FOR METRIC EQUIVALENT
Acceleration	ft/s ²	0.3048	m/s ²
	in/s ²	0.0254	m/s ²
Torque	lb-in	0.11298	N·m
	lb-ft	1.3558	N·m
Power	horsepower	0.746	kW
Pressure or Stress	inches of water	0.2491	kPa
	psi	6.895	kPa
	psi	0.069	bar
Energy or Work	BTU	1055.0	Joules(J)
	lb-ft	1.3558	Joules(J)
	kiloWatt-hour	3,600,000 or 3.6×10^6	Joules(J)
Light	foot candle	10.764	lumens/square meter (lm/m ²)
Fuel Performance	miles/gal	0.4251	kilometers/liter (km/L)
	gal/mile	2.3527	liters/kilometer (L/km)
Velocity	mph	1.6093	kilometers/hour (km/h)
Length	inch	25.4	mm
	foot	0.3048	m
	yard	0.9144	m
	mile	1.609	km
Area	square inch (in ²)	645.2	mm ²
		6.45	cm ²
	square ft (ft ²)	0.0929	m ²
	square yard	0.8361	m ²
Volume	cubic inch (in ³)	16387.0	mm ³
		16.387	cm ³
		0.0164	liters (L)
	quart	0.9464	liters (L)
	gallon	3.7854	liters(L)
	cubic yard	0.7646	m ³
Mass	pound	0.4536	kg
	ton	907.18	kg
	ton	0.9078	tonne (t)
Force	kilogram	9.807	N
	ounce	0.2780	N
	pound	4.448	N
Temperature	degree Farenheit (°F)	(°F-32) 0.556	degree Celsius (°C)

Alphabetical Index

1

1-2 Accumulator307-01B-138

2

2-3 Accumulator307-01B-139

A

A/C Cycling Switch412-03-23
 Acceleration Control, Description and Operation 310-02-1
 Acceleration Control, Diagnosis and Testing..... 310-02-2
 Inspection and Verification..... 310-02-2
 Symptom Chart..... 310-02-2
 Accelerator Cable — 4.2L..... 310-02-4
 Accelerator Cable — 4.6L..... 310-02-5
 Accelerator Cable — 5.4L..... 310-02-7
 Accelerator Cable — Supercharged Engine 310-02-8
 Accelerator Pedal — Adjustable 310-02-4
 Accelerator Pedal — Fixed 310-02-3
 Accessory Drive, Description and Operation..... 303-05-1
 Accessory Drive, Diagnosis and Testing 303-05-3
 Component Tests 303-05-5
 Inspection and Verification..... 303-05-3
 Symptom Chart..... 303-05-4
 Accessory Drive — Supercharged Engine 303-05-2
 Accessory Drive Belt Tensioner — Supercharged
 Engine 303-05-8
 Adapter 206-04-6
 Air Bag Disposal — Deployed 501-20B-67
 Air Bag Disposal — Driver, Undeployed,
 Scrapped Vehicle 501-20B-69
 Remote Deployment 501-20B-69
 Air Bag Disposal — Passenger, Undeployed,
 Scrapped Vehicle 501-20B-70
 Air Bag Disposal — Undeployed Inoperative 501-20B-68
 Air Bag and Safety Belt Pretensioner
 Supplemental Restraint System (SRS),
 Description and Operation.....501-20B-1
 Clockspring501-20B-1
 Driver Air Bag Module501-20B-1
 Electrical System.....501-20B-3
 Impact Sensors.....501-20B-3
 Passenger Air Bag Deactivation (PAD) Switch501-20B-2
 Passenger Air Bag Module501-20B-2
 Restraints Control Module (RCM).....501-20B-2
 Safety Belt Pretensioners.....501-20B-2

Air Bag and Safety Belt Pretensioner
 Supplemental Restraint System (SRS),
 Diagnosis and Testing501-20B-3
 Air Bag Reconnect Checklist501-20B-7
 Deactivation and Reactivation Procedures501-20B-4
 Diagnosing Customer Concerns Without Hard
 DTCs501-20B-3
 Diagnosing Customer Concerns with Hard
 DTCs501-20B-3
 Glossary501-20B-6
 Restraint System Diagnostic Tool Warning501-20B-3
 Air Cleaner — Inlet 303-12-9
 Air Cleaner — Outlet 303-12-9
 Air Cleaner — Supercharged Engine..... 303-12-10
 Air Cleaner Element 303-12-11
 Air Cleaner Element — Supercharged Engine..... 303-12-11
 Air Cleaner Outlet Pipe — 4.2L 303-12-7
 Air Cleaner Outlet Pipe — Resonator, 4.6L and
 5.4L 303-12-8
 Air Conditioning 412-03-8
 Air Conditioning (A/C) Clutch Air Gap Adjustment 412-00-96
 Air Conditioning (A/C) Compressor — 4.2L 412-03-9
 Air Conditioning (A/C) Compressor — 4.6L and
 5.4L 412-03-10
 Air Conditioning (A/C) System Check — Retail
 Procedure..... 412-00-88
 Air Conditioning (A/C) System Flushing..... 412-00-103
 Air Conditioning (A/C) System Recovery,
 Evacuation and Charging 412-00-101
 Air Conditioning Line (Peanut) Fitting 412-00-92
 Air Conditioning System..... 412-03-2
 Air Distribution, Description and Operation 412-01-1
 Air Distribution, Diagnosis and Testing..... 412-01-1
 Ambient Air Temperature Sensor..... 412-04-14
 Antenna 415-02-1
 Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Module 206-09B-30
 Anti-Lock Control, Description and Operation..... 206-09A-1
 Anti-Lock Control, Description and Operation..... 206-09B-1
 Anti-Lock Control, Diagnosis and Testing..... 206-09A-1
 Anti-Lock Control, Diagnosis and Testing..... 206-09B-1
 Component Test — Intermittent Failures 206-09B-28
 Inspection and Verification..... 206-09A-2
 Inspection and Verification — Drive Cycle Test 206-09B-3
 Inspection and Verification — Scan Tool
 Communications Check 206-09B-2
 Pinpoint Tests 206-09A-8
 206-09B-8
 Principles of Operation..... 206-09A-1
 206-09B-2
 Symptom Chart..... 206-09A-4
 206-09B-5
 Anti-Theft 419-01-2
 Inspection and Verification..... 419-01-2
 Pinpoint Tests 419-01-5

Alphabetical Index

Anti-Theft (Continued)

Symptom Chart	419-01-5
Anti-Theft — PATS	419-01-1
Apply Components	307-01B-17
Arm — Lower, Removal and Installation	204-01A-4
Arm — Lower, Removal and Installation	204-01B-10
Arm — Upper, Removal and Installation	204-01A-7
Arm — Upper, Removal and Installation	204-01B-7
Audio System, Description and Operation	415-01-1
Audio System, Diagnosis and Testing	415-00-1
Audio System, Diagnosis and Testing	415-01-3
Inspection and Verification	415-00-1
Pinpoint Tests	415-00-5
Symptom Chart	415-00-3
Audio Unit	415-01-3
Auto-dimming Interior Mirror	501-09-18
Autolamps	417-01-11
Inspection and Verification	417-01-11
Pinpoint Tests	417-01-12
Symptom Chart	417-01-12
Auxiliary Transmission Fluid Cooler	307-02-7
Axle — Front Drive	205-03-24
Axle Assembly — Front Drive	205-03-15
Axle Housing, Removal and Installation	205-02A-29
Axle Housing, Removal and Installation	205-02B-29
Axle Housing, Removal and Installation	205-02C-34
Axle Housing Casting Porosity (Holes in Casting) Repair	205-00-25
Axle Housing Weld Leaks Repair	205-00-26
Axle Shaft, In-Vehicle Repair	205-02A-4
Axle Shaft, In-Vehicle Repair	205-02B-5
Axle Shaft — Disc Brake	205-02C-5
Axle Shaft — Drum Brake	205-02C-7

B

B-Pillar Trim Panel — SuperCrew	501-05-4
Backing Plate	206-02-11
Ball Joint	204-01B-20
Bar — Stabilizer	204-01B-20
Bar — Stabilizer, Lightning Vehicles	204-02-5
Bar and Link	204-01A-9
Barometric Pressure (BARO) Sensor — Supercharged Engine	303-14-13
Battery, Diagnosis and Testing	414-01-1
Pinpoint Tests	414-01-2
Battery, Removal and Installation	414-01-3
Battery Cables	414-01-4
Battery Disconnect	414-01-3
Battery Tray	414-01-4
Battery and Cables	414-01-1
Bearing, General Procedures	308-00-21

Bearing, Removal and Installation	308-01-3
Bearing — Inspection	303-00-38
Bearings — Inspection	308-03-3
Belt — 4.2L	303-05-6
Belt — 4.6L, 5.4L With A/C	303-05-7
Belt — 4.6L, 5.4L Without A/C	303-05-7
Belt — Supercharged Engine	303-05-7
Belt Idler Pulley — 4.2L	303-05-9
Belt Idler Pulley — 4.6L, 5.4L	303-05-9
Belt Idler Pulley — Supercharged Engine	303-05-9
Belt Minder Deactivating/Activating	413-09-20
Deactivating/Activating	413-09-20
Preparation	413-09-20
Belt Tensioner — 4.2L	303-05-8
Belt Tensioner — 4.6L, 5.4L	303-05-8
Bi-Fuel Interface Module — Natural Gas	303-04D-25
Bleeding — Components	206-00-14
Bleeding — System	206-00-18
Block Heater	303-03A-18
Blower Motor	412-02-2
Blower Motor Speed Control	412-04-18
Body	501-00-1
Body Closures	501-03-1
Body Sealer Types And Applications	501-00-1
Body System	501-00-2
Inspection and Verification — Body System	501-00-2
Symptom Chart — Body System	501-00-2
Brake Booster, Description and Operation	206-07-1
Hose and Check Valve	206-07-1
Brake Booster, Removal and Installation	206-07-2
Brake Caliper Anchor Plate	206-03-7
Brake Disc Machining	100-04-75
Brake Master Cylinder	206-06-17
Brake Pedal — Adjustable	206-06-10
Brake Pedal Control Switch	206-06-16
Brake Pedal Motor	206-06-14
Brake Pedal Motor Cable	206-06-15
Brake Shift Interlock Actuator	307-05-13
Brake Shoe Adjustment	206-02-2
Brake Drums Installed	206-02-3
Brake Drums Removed	206-02-3
Brake System, Description and Operation	206-00-2
Brake Fluid	206-00-3
Brake System, Diagnosis and Testing	206-00-3
Component Tests	206-00-13
Pinpoint Tests	206-00-8
Symptom Chart	206-00-6
Bulb — Fog Lamp	417-01-53
Bulb — Headlamp	417-01-52
Bulb — Map Lamp	417-02-27
Bumper — Front	501-19-2
Bumper — Front, Arms	501-19-5
Bumper — Rear	501-19-4
Bumper Arms — Rear, Styleside	501-19-5

Alphabetical Index

Bumper Bracket — Front.....	501-19-6
Bumper Cover — Lightning	501-19-1
Bumpers.....	501-19-1
Bushing — Carrier.....	205-03-19
Bushing — Control Arm.....	204-01B-20
Bushing — Cover.....	205-03-20
Bushing — Tube.....	205-03-22
Bushings, Bearing and Thrust Washer Locator, Description and Operation	307-01A-15
Bushings, Bearing and Thrust Washer Locator, Description and Operation	307-01B-12

C

C-Pillar Trim Panel	501-05-5
Cable — Lead-In	415-02-1
Cable Adjustment — Shift Indicator	307-05-11
Cable and Bracket.....	307-05-13
Cable and Bracket Adjustment — 4.2L, 4.6L, 5.4L, 4R70W and 4R100 Transmission	307-05-11
Cable and Conduit — Front.....	206-05-6
Cable and Conduit — Rear	206-05-8
Caliper, Disassembly and Assembly	206-03-12
Caliper, Disassembly and Assembly	206-04-8
Caliper, Removal and Installation.....	206-03-5
Caliper, Removal and Installation.....	206-04-2
Camber and Caster Adjustment — 4x2	204-00-12
Camber and Caster Adjustment — 4x4	204-00-13
Camshaft, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-38
Camshaft, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-106
Camshaft — Lobe Surface	303-00-19
Camshaft End Play — OHC Engines	303-00-18
Camshaft End Play — Push Rod Engines.....	303-00-18
Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Plastigage Method.....	303-00-17
Camshaft Journal — Clearance, Push Rod Engines, Micrometer Method	303-00-17
Camshaft Journal — Diameter.....	303-00-17
Camshaft Lobe Lift	303-00-19
Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor — 4.2L.....	303-14-3
Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-14-4
Camshaft Roller Follower	303-01B-104
Camshaft Runout	303-00-19
Canister — Evaporative Emissions.....	303-13-19
Canister Vent Solenoid Closing Procedure	303-13-17
Center Support	307-01A-209
Central Timer Module (CTM)/Generic Electronic Module (GEM).....	419-10-16
Ignition Switch Positions	419-10-16
Inspection and Verification.....	419-10-16
Pinpoint Tests	419-10-17
Central Timer Module (CTM)/Generic Electronic Module (GEM) (Continued)	
Principles of Operation.....	419-10-16
Symptom Chart.....	419-10-17
Charge Air Cooler — Supercharged Engine	303-12-12
Charging System, Description and Operation.....	414-00-1
Charging System, Diagnosis and Testing	414-00-1
Component Tests	414-00-11
Inspection and Verification.....	414-00-2
Pinpoint Tests	414-00-4
Principles of Operation.....	414-00-1
Symptom Chart.....	414-00-3
Child Safety Seat Tether Anchor	501-20A-42
Child Safety Seat Tether Anchor — LATCH, Front, SuperCab	501-20A-43
Child Safety Seat Tether Anchor — LATCH, Rear, SuperCab	501-20A-45
Child Safety Seat Tether Anchor — LATCH, Rear, SuperCrew.....	501-20A-46
Climate Control Assembly — EATC.....	412-04-7
Climate Control Assembly — Manual A/C	412-04-8
Climate Control System, Description and Operation	412-00-1
System Airflow Description — EATC	412-00-7
System Airflow Description — Manual Climate Control	412-00-6
Climate Control System, Diagnosis and Testing.....	412-00-9
Inspection and Verification.....	412-00-13
Pinpoint Tests	412-00-18
Symptom Chart.....	412-00-16
Clockspring, Removal and Installation	501-20B-105
Clockspring, Removal and Installation	211-04-23
Cluster Lens	413-01A-51
Clutch Controls, Description and Operation.....	308-02-1
Clutch Controls, Diagnosis and Testing	308-02-2
Clutch Master Cylinder/Reservoir.....	308-02-3
Clutch Pedal	308-02-2
Clutch Pedal Position (CPP) Switch	303-14-23
Clutch and Clutch Field Coil	412-03-11
Coalescer	310-01B-23
Coalescer Filter Element	310-01B-24
Coast Clutch Assembly	307-01A-198
Column	211-04-23
Communication Circuit Wiring Repair	418-00-24
Communications Network, Description and Operation	418-00-1
Communications Network, Diagnosis and Testing	418-00-1
Inspection and Verification.....	418-00-2
Pinpoint Tests	418-00-4
Principles of Operation.....	418-00-1
Compact Disc (CD) Changer — Regular Cab	415-01-4
Compass Calibration	419-11-7
Compass Display	419-11-8
Compass Zone Adjustment	419-11-7

Alphabetical Index

Compuvalve — Liquid Propane Gas 303-04D-22
 Condenser Core 412-03-25
 Connecting Rod — Bushing Diameter 303-00-27
 Connecting Rod — Bearing Journal Clearance 303-00-28
 Connecting Rod — Bend 303-00-27
 Connecting Rod — Cleaning 303-00-26
 Connecting Rod — Large End Bore 303-00-27
 Connecting Rod — Piston Pin Side Clearance 303-00-28
 Connecting Rod — Side Clearance 303-00-29
 Connecting Rod — Twist 303-00-28
 Console — Floor 501-12-19
 Console — Floor, Front 501-12-1
 Console — Floor, Rear 501-12-2
 Console — Overhead 501-12-1
 Contaminated Refrigerant Handling 412-00-108
 Control 206-05-4
 Control Components, Description and Operation 412-04-2
 Electronic Automatic Climate Control (EATC) 412-04-6
 Manual Climate Control 412-04-5
 Control Components, Diagnosis and Testing 412-04-7
 Cooler Bypass Valve 307-01A-147
 Cooler Bypass Valve — 4R100 Transmission 307-02-9
 Cooler Bypass Valve Assembly 307-01A-196
 Cooling Fan — Blade, Clutch and Shroud 303-03A-25
 Cooling System Draining, Filling and Bleeding 303-03A-15
 Cowl — Grille 501-02-4
 Crankshaft — Connecting Rod Journal Taper,
 Out of Round 303-00-22
 Crankshaft End Play 303-00-21
 Crankshaft Front Oil Seal 303-01A-29
 Crankshaft Front Seal 303-01B-75
 Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Clearance 303-00-21
 Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Diameter 303-00-20
 Crankshaft Main Bearing Journal — Taper 303-00-20
 Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor — 4.2L 303-14-7
 Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor — 4.6L and
 5.4L 303-14-7
 Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor —
 Supercharged Engine 303-14-7
 Crankshaft Pulley, In-Vehicle Repair 303-01A-27
 Crankshaft Pulley, In-Vehicle Repair 303-01B-70
 Crankshaft Pulley — Supercharged Engine 303-01B-71
 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal 303-01A-59
 Crankshaft Rear Seal 303-01B-155
 Crankshaft Rear Seal with Retainer Plate 303-01B-156
 Crankshaft Runout 303-00-22
 Cylinder Block Core Plug Replacement 303-00-34
 Cylinder Bore — Cleaning 303-00-34
 Cylinder Bore — Out-of-Round 303-00-23
 Cylinder Bore — Taper 303-00-23
 Cylinder Head, Disassembly and Assembly of
 Subassemblies 303-01A-75
 Cylinder Head, Disassembly and Assembly of
 Subassemblies 303-01B-207

Cylinder Head, In-Vehicle Repair 303-01A-45
 Cylinder Head — Distortion 303-00-34
 Cylinder Head Temperature (CHT) Sensor —
 4.2L 303-14-22
 Cylinder Head Temperature (CHT) Sensor —
 4.6L and 5.4L 303-14-23
 Cylinder Heads — 4.6L, Installation 303-01B-264
 Cylinder Heads — 4.6L, Removal 303-01B-168
 Cylinder Heads — 5.4L, Installation 303-01B-282
 Cylinder Heads — 5.4L, Removal 303-01B-180

D

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL), Description and
 Operation 417-04-1
 Daytime Running Lamps (DRL), Diagnosis and
 Testing 417-04-2
 Inspection and Verification 417-04-2
 Pinpoint Tests 417-04-2
 Principles of Operation 417-04-2
 Symptom Chart 417-04-2
 Degas Bottle, Removal and Installation 303-03A-27
 Degas Bottle, Removal and Installation 303-03B-11
 Diagnosis By Symptom, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01A-81
 Diagnosis By Symptom, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01B-83
 Diagnosis by Symptom Index 307-01A-82
 Diagnostic Flow Chart, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01A-29
 Diagnostic Flow Chart, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01B-26
 Diagnostic Instructions — Air Bag and Safety Belt
 Pretensioner Supplemental Restraint System
 (SRS) 501-20B-7
 Active Commands 501-20B-8
 Diagnostic Test Codes (DTCs) 501-20B-9
 Diagnostic Test Modes 501-20B-7
 Inspection and Verification 501-20B-10
 Lamp Fault Codes 501-20B-8
 PID/Data Monitor and Record 501-20B-8
 Symptom Chart 501-20B-11
 Diagnostic Strategy, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01A-29
 Diagnostic Strategy, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01B-25
 Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart 419-10-1
 Diagnostic Trouble Code Chart 419-10-1
 Diagnostic Trouble Code Charts 307-01B-42
 Diagnostics, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01A-39
 Diagnostics, Diagnosis and Testing 307-01B-34
 After On-Board Diagnostics 307-01A-41
 Before Pinpoint Tests 307-01A-41
 Diagnostic Trouble Code Charts 307-01A-42
 On-Board Diagnostics with Diagnostic Tool 307-01A-40
 Pinpoint Tests 307-01A-54
 Rotunda Transmission Tester 307-01A-51
 Shift Solenoids Pre-Diagnosis 307-01A-54

Alphabetical Index

Diagnostics, Diagnosis and

Testing (Continued)

- Transmission Connector Layouts 307-01A-51
- Transmission Drive Cycle Test 307-01A-40
- Differential Bench Torque Test 205-02C-5
- Differential Case, Disassembly and Assembly 205-03-49
- Differential Case, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02A-22
- Differential Case, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02B-22
- Differential Case, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02C-26
- Differential Case Runout Check 205-03-6
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Conventional,
Disassembly and Assembly 205-02A-33
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Conventional,
Disassembly and Assembly 205-02B-32
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Conventional,
Disassembly and Assembly 205-02C-36
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Traction-Lok,
Disassembly and Assembly 205-02A-36
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Traction-Lok,
Disassembly and Assembly 205-02C-39
- Differential Case and Ring Gear — Traction-Lok' 205-02B-35
- Differential Housing Cover, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02A-13
- Differential Housing Cover, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02B-12
- Differential Housing Cover, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02C-16
- Differential Pressure Feedback Exhaust Gas
Recirculation (EGR) System — 4.2L 303-08-7
- Differential Pressure Feedback Exhaust Gas
Recirculation (EGR) System — 4.6L 303-08-8
- Differential Pressure Feedback Exhaust Gas
Recirculation (EGR) System — 5.4L 303-08-8
- Digital Transmission Range (TR) Sensor,
In-Vehicle Repair 307-01A-149
- Digital Transmission Range (TR) Sensor,
In-Vehicle Repair 307-01B-133
- Direct Clutch Assembly and Intermediate Brake
Drum 307-01A-210
- Disassembled Views, Description and Operation 307-01A-8
- Disassembled Views, Description and Operation 307-01B-6
- Disc, Removal and Installation 206-03-8
- Disc, Removal and Installation 206-04-6
- Disc Check 308-00-20
- Disc and Pressure Plate 308-01-1
- Door Ajar Switch 501-14-66
- Door Latch Remote Control — Rear, F-150 501-14-63
- Door Lock Actuator 501-14-66
- Door Lock Actuator — Rear, SuperCrew 501-14-66
- Door Lock Cylinder 501-14-63
- Dowels — Flywheel 308-00-22
- Dowels — Flywheel Housing to Block 308-00-23
- Draining — Coalescer 310-00C-18
- Draining — Coalescer/Filter 310-00B-2
- Drive Cables and Guide Rails 501-17-14
- Drive Pinion, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02A-14
- Drive Pinion, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02B-13
- Drive Pinion, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02C-17
- Drive Pinion Flange, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02A-8
- Drive Pinion Flange, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02B-8
- Drive Pinion Flange, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02C-12
- Drive Pinion Seal, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02A-12
- Drive Pinion Seal, In-Vehicle Repair 205-02B-11
- Drive Pinion Seal, In-Vehicle Repair 205-03-10
- Driveline Angle Inspection 205-00-24
- Driveline System, Description and Operation 205-00-3
- Driveline System, Diagnosis and Testing 205-00-5
- Component Tests 205-00-18
- Inspection and Verification 205-00-6
- Pinpoint Tests 205-00-16
- Symptom Chart 205-00-15
- Driveshaft, Description and Operation 205-01-1
- Driveshaft, Diagnosis and Testing 205-01-4
- Driveshaft — Front 205-01-4
- Driveshaft — Rear, One-Piece 205-01-5
- Driveshaft — Rear, Two-Piece 205-01-6
- Driveshaft Center Bearing 205-01-8
- Driveshaft Slip Yoke 205-01-21
- Driveshaft Universal Joint — Double Cardan 205-01-17
- Driveshaft Universal Joint — Single Cardan,
Flange Yoke 205-01-15
- Driveshaft Universal Joint — Single Cardan, Slip
Yoke 205-01-12
- Drum 206-02-4
- Drum Brake, Description and Operation 206-02-1
- Drum Brake, Diagnosis and Testing 206-02-2
- Dual Converter Y-Pipe — LH Side 309-00-11
- Dual Converter Y-Pipe — RH and LH 309-00-9
- Duct — Defrost Nozzles and Side Demister 412-01-3

E

- Electronic Compass, Description and Operation 419-11-1
- Electronic Compass, Diagnosis and Testing 419-11-1
- Inspection and Verification 419-11-1
- Pinpoint Tests 419-11-2
- Symptom Chart 419-11-2
- Electronic Engine Controls, Description and
Operation 303-14-1
- Electronic Engine Controls, Diagnosis and
Testing 303-14-3
- Electronic Engine Controls — Supercharged
Engine 303-14-3
- Electronic Leak Detection 412-00-97
- Electronic Pressure Control (EPC) Solenoid 307-01B-127
- Engine, Assembly 303-01A-77
- Engine, Assembly 303-01B-221
- Engine, Description and Operation 303-00-1
- Engine, Description and Operation 303-01A-5

Alphabetical Index

Fluorescent Dye Leak Detection.....	412-00-98	Front Seat Cushion — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-74
Flywheel.....	303-01A-58	Front Seat Cushion — With Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-95
Flywheel — Manual Transmission	303-01B-153	Front Suspension, Description and Operation	204-01A-2
Flywheel Check	308-00-21	Front Suspension, Description and Operation	204-01B-2
Flywheel Runout Check	308-00-21	Front Suspension, Diagnosis and Testing	204-01A-3
Fog Lamps	417-01-26	Front Suspension — 4x4.....	204-01B-3
Inspection and Verification.....	417-01-26	Fuel Charging Wiring Harness, Removal and Installation	303-04A-3
Pinpoint Tests	417-01-27	Fuel Charging Wiring Harness, Removal and Installation	303-04B-5
Symptom Chart.....	417-01-27	Fuel Charging Wiring Harness — Supercharged Engine	303-04B-17
Forward Clutch Assembly	307-01A-216	Fuel Charging and Controls, Description and Operation	303-04A-1
Forward Clutch Cylinder.....	307-01B-180	Fuel Charging and Controls, Description and Operation	303-04B-1
Forward Hub and Ring Gear.....	307-01A-210	Fuel Charging and Controls, Description and Operation	303-04C-1
Forward Planet Assembly	307-01A-223	Fuel Charging and Controls, Description and Operation	303-04D-2
Frame Maintenance — Drilling Precautions	502-02-6	Fuel Charging Wiring	303-04C-6
Frame Maintenance — Frame Reinforcing	502-02-8	Fuel Injection Supply Manifold	303-04C-5
Frame Maintenance — Frame Straightening	502-02-7	Fuel Injectors	303-04C-5
Frame Maintenance — Rivet Removal.....	502-02-5	Fuel Pressure Regulator.....	303-04C-3
Frame Maintenance — Rivet Replacement.....	502-02-6	Fuel Pressure Relief Valve	303-04C-6
Frame Maintenance — Welding Precautions	502-02-7	Fuel Shutoff Valve Solenoid.....	303-04C-5
Frame and Body Mounting.....	502-02-1	Fuel Temperature Sensor	303-04C-6
Front Case Bushings	307-01A-193	Injection Pressure Sensor	303-04C-6
Front Disc Brake, Description and Operation	206-03-1	Fuel Charging and Controls, Diagnosis and Testing	303-04A-1
Front Disc Brake, Diagnosis and Testing	206-03-3	Fuel Charging and Controls, Diagnosis and Testing	303-04B-2
Front Door Latch.....	501-14-46	Fuel Charging and Controls, Diagnosis and Testing	303-04C-8
Front Door Latch — SuperCrew	501-14-47	Fuel Charging and Controls, Diagnosis and Testing	303-04D-3
Front Door Trim Panel	501-05-2	Fuel Heater — Vaporizer.....	303-04D-28
Front Door Window Glass.....	501-11-44	Fuel Injection Component Cleaning	303-04C-8
Front Door Window Regulator	501-11-53	Fuel Injection Supply Manifold.....	303-04A-6
Front Door Window Regulator Motor.....	501-11-51	Fuel Injection Supply Manifold — Liquid Propane Gas	303-04D-7
Front Drive Axle	205-03-5	Fuel Injection Supply Manifold and Fuel Injector	303-04B-20
Front Drive Axle and Differential.....	205-03-2	Fuel Injection Supply Manifold and Fuel Injector — Natural Gas	303-04D-11
Front Drive Halfshafts, Description and Operation	205-04-1	Fuel Injectors, Removal and Installation	303-04A-3
Front Drive Halfshafts, Diagnosis and Testing	205-04-2	Fuel Injectors, Removal and Installation	303-04C-11
Front End Body Panels	501-02-2	Fuel Injectors — Liquid Propane Gas	303-04D-6
Front Safety Belt Retractor — Seat Integrated Restraint (SIR), SuperCab.....	501-20A-28	Fuel Line Evacuation	310-00B-4
Front Seat — 40 Percent and Captain's Chair	501-10-51	Fuel Line Fittings — Push Connect	310-00A-6
Front Seat — 60 Percent	501-10-51	Fuel Pressure Regulator, Removal and Installation	303-04A-8
Front Seat — Full Bench.....	501-10-50		
Front Seat — With Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-53		
Front Seat Backrest — 40 Percent and Captain's Chair	501-10-104		
Front Seat Backrest — 60 Percent.....	501-10-104		
Front Seat Backrest — Front Bench	501-10-102		
Front Seat Backrest — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR), Disassembly and Assembly	501-10-106		
Front Seat Backrest — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR), Removal and Installation	501-10-63		
Front Seat Cushion — 40 Percent and Captain's Chair	501-10-93		
Front Seat Cushion — 60 Percent	501-10-93		
Front Seat Cushion — Front Bench	501-10-92		

Alphabetical Index

Fuel Pressure Regulator, Removal and Installation	303-04B-30
Fuel Pressure Regulator — Natural Gas, Removal and Installation	303-04D-20
Fuel Pressure Regulator — Natural Gas, Removal and Installation	310-01C-11
Fuel Pressure Relief Valve	303-04A-8
Fuel Pressure Sensor — Natural Gas	303-04D-21
Fuel Pump — Supercharged Engine	310-01A-8
Fuel System, Description and Operation	310-00A-2
Fuel System, Description and Operation	310-00B-1
Coalescer/Filter	310-00B-1
Typical Vent Stack Installation	310-00B-1
Fuel System, Diagnosis and Testing	310-00A-3
Fuel System, Diagnosis and Testing	310-00B-2
Fuel System — Bi-Fuel Systems	310-00C-4
Fuel System — Lightning	310-00A-3
Fuel System — Liquid Propane Gas	310-00C-2
Fuel System — Natural Gas	310-00C-3
Fuel System Leak Test	310-00B-15
Fuel System Service Precautions	303-04C-11
Fuel System Service Precautions — Liquid Propane Gas	303-04D-4
Fuel System Service Precautions — Natural Gas	303-04D-5
Fuel Tank	310-01A-2
Fuel Tank — Supercharged Engine	310-01A-4
Fuel Tank Draining	310-00A-4
Fuel Tank Evacuation	310-00B-6
Fuel Tank Evacuation — Liquid Propane Gas	310-00C-8
Fuel Tank Evacuation — Natural Gas	310-00C-9
Fuel Tank Inspection, General Procedures	310-00B-16
Fuel Tank Inspection, General Procedures	310-00C-22
Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor, Removal and Installation	310-01B-31
Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor, Removal and Installation	310-01C-13
Fuel Tank Temperature Sensor	310-01B-30
Fuel Tank Temperature Sensor — Natural Gas	310-01C-12
Fuel Tank and Lines, Description and Operation	310-01A-1
Fuel Tank and Lines, Description and Operation	310-01B-2
Fuel Tank and Lines, Description and Operation	310-01C-1
Coalescer/Filter	310-01B-3
Fuel Filler Valve	310-01B-3
Fuel Lines	310-01B-3
Fuel Tank Straps	310-01B-3
Fuel Tanks and Solenoid Valves	310-01B-3
Fuel Tank and Lines, Diagnosis and Testing	310-01A-2
Fuel Tank and Lines, Diagnosis and Testing	310-01B-4
Fuel Tank and Lines, Diagnosis and Testing	310-01C-1
Inspection and Verification	310-01B-4
Pinpoint Test	310-01B-4
Symptom Chart	310-01B-4

G

Gauges And Warning Devices — GEM/CTM	413-09-1
Inspection and Verification	413-09-4
Principles of Operation	413-09-2
Symptom Chart	413-09-8
Geartrain	307-01B-16
Generator, Description and Operation	414-02-1
Generator, Diagnosis and Testing	414-02-1
Generator — 4.2L	414-02-1
Generator — 4.6L and 5.4L	414-02-2
Generator — Lightning	414-02-2
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms, Description and Operation	501-11-1
Rear Window Glass	501-11-1
Window Control Switch	501-11-2
Window Glass — Rear Door, SuperCrew	501-11-1
Window Glass — Rear Side	501-11-1
Windshield Glass	501-11-1
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms, Diagnosis and Testing	501-11-2
Inspection and Verification	501-11-3
Pinpoint Tests	501-11-5
Principles of Operation:	501-11-2
Symptom Chart	501-11-4
Grille Opening Panel Reinforcement	501-02-7

H

Halfshaft, Disassembly and Assembly	205-04-3
Halfshaft, Removal and Installation	205-04-2
Handles, Locks, Latches And Mechanisms	501-14-1
Anti-Scan Feature	501-14-2
Autolock Enable/Disable — Using the Ignition Switch	501-14-3
Autolock Enable/Disable — Using the Keypad	501-14-3
Deactivating/Activating Power Door Unlock Switch Inhibit	501-14-3
Keyless Entry	501-14-1
Power Unlock Inhibit	501-14-3
Headlamp Adjustment	417-01-49
Headlamp Aiming	417-01-49
Mechanical Aiming	417-01-51
Photometric Aiming	417-01-49
Screen Method Aiming	417-01-50
Headlamps	417-01-1
Inspection and Verification	417-01-1
Pinpoint Tests	417-01-3
Symptom Chart	417-01-2
Headliner	501-05-8
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Front	303-14-18

Alphabetical Index

Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Front LH — Supercharged Engines.....	303-14-21	Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve — Supercharged Engine	303-14-12
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Front RH — Supercharged Engines.....	303-14-19	Idle Speed Adjustment	303-04C-8
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Rear	303-14-19	Idle Speed Adjustment — Supercharged Engine	303-04B-2
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Rear, LH, Supercharged Engine	303-14-21	Idler Arm and Bracket	211-03-11
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) — Rear, RH, Supercharged Engine	303-14-20	Ignition Coil	303-07A-2
Heated Seat Module — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-80	Ignition Coil-On-Plug	303-07B-2
Heated Seat Switch — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-60	Ignition Lock Cylinder — Functional	501-14-62
Heated Window Grid Wire Repair	501-11-39	Ignition Lock Cylinder — Non Functional	501-14-60
Heater Core	412-02-3	Ignition Switch	211-05-13
Heater Core Backflushing	303-03A-18	Ignition System	303-07B-1
Heater Hose Coupling	412-00-93	In-Vehicle Temperature Sensor	412-04-15
Heating and Ventilation	412-02-1	Indicator Switch — Shift Range Selector	308-07B-7
Heating/Defrosting	412-02-1	Input Shaft Bearing	308-03-26
Height Adjuster — Shoulder Safety Belt, Regular Cab	501-20A-46	Input Shell	307-01A-224
Hinge Adjustment — Front Door, Fore and Aft	501-03-2	Inspection and Repair After a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Deployment	501-20B-67
Hinge Adjustment — Front Door, Horizontal and Vertical	501-03-1	Instrument Cluster, Description and Operation	413-01A-1
Hinge Adjustment — Rear Door	501-03-3	Instrument Cluster, Description and Operation	413-01C-1
Hinge Adjustment — Rear Door, SuperCrew	501-03-3	Instrument Cluster, Diagnosis and Testing	413-01A-4
Hood Alignment — Horizontal	501-02-3	Instrument Cluster, Diagnosis and Testing	413-01B-1
Hood Latch	501-14-45	Instrument Cluster, Diagnosis and Testing	413-01C-1
Hood Latch Release Handle	501-14-54	Diagnostic Instructions	413-01B-3
Horn, Description and Operation	413-06-1	Inspection and Verification	413-01A-6
Horn, Diagnosis and Testing	413-06-1		413-01B-3
Inspection and Verification	413-06-1		413-01C-2
Pinpoint Tests	413-06-2	Pinpoint Tests	413-01A-13
Symptom Chart	413-06-2		413-01B-9
Hose	211-02-10		413-01C-4
Hydraulic Brake Actuation, Description and Operation	206-06-1	Principles of Operation	413-01A-4
Hydraulic Brake Actuation, Diagnosis and Testing	206-06-3		413-01B-2
Hydraulic Control Unit (HCU)	206-09B-29		413-01C-1
Hydraulic Lash Adjuster	303-01B-104	Symptom Chart	413-01A-10
Hydraulic Leak Check	206-00-20		413-01B-9
Hydraulic System	307-01B-21		413-01C-3
Hydraulic Tubes	308-02-7	Instrument Cluster, Removal and Installation	413-01A-50
		Instrument Cluster — Natural Gas Vehicle	413-01B-1
		Instrument Panel, Description and Operation	501-12-1
		Instrument Panel, Removal and Installation	501-12-2
		Instrument Panel — Cluster Panel	501-12-18
		Instrument Panel — Steering Column Cover	501-12-17
		Instrument Panel Illumination, Description and Operation	413-00-1
		Instrument Panel Illumination, Diagnosis and Testing	413-00-1
		Inspection and Verification	413-00-1
		Pinpoint Tests	413-00-2
		Principles of Operation	413-00-1
		Symptom Chart	413-00-1
		Insulation	501-00-1
		Intake Air Distribution and Filtering, Description and Operation	303-12-1
		Intake Air Distribution and Filtering, Diagnosis and Testing	303-12-5

Identification Codes	100-01-1
Identification Tags, Description and Operation	307-01A-5
Identification Tags, Description and Operation	307-01B-3
Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve — 4.2L	303-14-11
Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-14-11

Alphabetical Index

Intake Air Distribution and Filtering —	
Supercharger	303-12-5
Intake Air Distribution and Filtering —	
Supercharger, Charge Air Cooler	303-12-3
Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor	303-14-15
Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor — Air	
Cleaner — Supercharged Engines	303-14-18
Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor — Intake	
Manifold — Supercharged Engines	303-14-16
Intake Manifold — 4.6L	303-01B-27
Intake Manifold — 5.4L	303-01B-38
Intake Manifold — Spacer Assembly	303-01A-20
Intake Manifold — Supercharged Engine	303-01B-50
Intake Manifold Assembly — 4.6L	303-01B-215
Intake Manifold Assembly — 5.4L	303-01B-219
Interior Door Handle — Front	501-14-58
Interior Door Handle — Rear, F-150	501-14-59
Interior Door Handle — Rear, SuperCrew	501-14-58
Interior Lighting	417-02-1
Interior Lighting — GEM/CTM	417-02-1
GEM Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Index	417-02-3
Inspection and Verification	417-02-2
Pinpoint Tests	417-02-4
Principles of Operation	417-02-1
Symptom Chart	417-02-3
Interior Rear View Mirror	501-09-17
Interior Trim	501-05-1
Intermediate One-Way Clutch	307-01B-173
Intermediate Servo	307-01A-151
Intermediate/Overdrive Cylinder Assembly	307-01A-206

J

Jacking	100-02-1
---------------	----------

K

Key Programming — Additional Key With One	
Programmed Key	419-01-20
Key Programming — Enable/Disable Spare Key	
Programming	419-01-19
Key Programming — Erase All Key Codes and	
Program Two Keys	419-01-19
Key Programming — Program a Key Using Two	
Programmed Keys	419-01-18
Key Release Button	211-05-14
Keyless Entry Keypad	501-14-66
Keyless Entry Keypad Code Programming	501-14-45
Knock Sensor (KS) — 4.2L	303-14-22
Knock Sensor (KS) — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-14-22
Knuckle — Front Wheel	204-01B-16

L

Lamp Assembly — Fog Lamp	417-01-54
Lamp Assembly — Map	417-02-26
Lamp Assembly — Signal Mirrors	417-01-55
Lamp Switch — Brake Pedal Position (BPP)	417-01-56
Lamp Switch — Headlamp	417-01-56
Lead Terminal Repair	501-11-41
Leak Test — Bi-Fuel System	310-00C-19
Leak Test — Evaporative Emission System	303-13-17
Leakage Inspection	307-01B-79
Lifting	100-02-2
Lifting Points — Twin Post Hoist	100-02-2
Line — 4.2L	412-03-29
Line — 4.6L and 5.4L	412-03-29
Lines — Front High-Pressure Fuel	310-01B-26
Lines — Low-Pressure Fuel	310-01B-28
Lines — Rear High-Pressure Fuel	310-01B-25
Locks, Latches and Entry Systems — Module	
Controlled Vehicles	501-14-13
Inspection and Verification	501-14-13
Pinpoint Tests	501-14-15
Principles of Operation	501-14-13
Symptom Chart	501-14-14
Locks, Latches and Entry Systems — Non	
Module Controlled	501-14-4
Inspection and Verification	501-14-4
Pinpoint Tests	501-14-4
Symptom Chart	501-14-4
Low One-Way Clutch Assembly	307-01A-225
Lower Intake Manifold	303-01A-16

M

Main Components and Functions, Description and	
Operation	307-01A-17
Main Components and Functions, Description and	
Operation	307-01B-15
Geartrain	307-01A-18
Torque Converter	307-01A-18
Main Control Valve Body, Disassembly and	
Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-161
Main Control Valve Body, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01B-120
Main Control Valve Body — Accumulator Body	
Check	307-01A-182
Main Control Valve Body — Accumulator Body,	
Solenoid Body	307-01A-124
Main Control Valve Body — Disassembly and	
Assembly	307-01A-175
Main Control Valve Body — Solenoid Body	
Check	307-01A-181

Alphabetical Index

Maintenance Schedule — Vehicles with Gasoline

Engines	100-03-1
Checks and Services	100-03-2
Exceptions To Normal Schedule	100-03-6
General Maintenance Information	100-03-1
Normal Schedule	100-03-2
Special Operating Condition Requirements	100-03-1
Manifold And Tube Assembly — 4.2L	412-03-26
Manifold And Tube Assembly — 4.6L and 5.4L	412-03-27
Manifold Gauge Set Connection	412-00-96
Manual Control Lever Shaft and Seal, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01A-142
Manual Control Lever Shaft and Seal, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01B-129
Manual Transmission, Description and Operation	308-03-2
Manual Transmission, Diagnosis and Testing	308-03-3
Manual Transmission and Clutch, Description and Operation	308-00-1
Manual Transmission and Clutch, Diagnosis and Testing	308-00-2
Symptom Chart	308-00-2
Mass Air Flow (MAF) Sensor	303-14-13
Mass Air Flow (MAF) Sensor — Supercharged Engine	303-14-15
Master Cylinder	206-06-19
Meshload Adjustment	211-00-14
Mirror — Cover, Exterior Rear View Mirror	501-09-14
Mirror — Glass, Exterior Rear View Mirror	501-09-15
Mirror — Inside Rear View, Bracket	501-09-20
Module — Anti-Lock Brake Control	206-09A-36
Module — Central Security Module (CSM)	419-10-23
Module — Driver Air Bag	501-20B-97
Module — Generic Electronic (GEM)/Central Timer (CTM)	419-10-22
Module — Passenger Air Bag	501-20B-101
Module — Passive Anti-Theft Transceiver	419-01-21
Module — Restraints Control	501-20B-95
Module Configuration	418-01-1
Inspection and Verification	418-01-2
Principles of Operation	418-01-1
Module Controlled Functions	419-10-1
Motor	501-16-39
Mounting Arm and Pivot Shaft — Windshield Wiper	501-16-38
Multifunction Switch	211-05-11

N

Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH),

Description and Operation	100-04-1
Acceptable Noise, Vibration and Harshness	100-04-1
Diagnostic Theory	100-04-1

Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH), Description and Operation (Continued)

Glossary of Terms	100-04-1
Tools and Techniques	100-04-6
Noise, Vibration and Harshness (NVH), Diagnosis and Testing	100-04-9
1: Customer Interview	100-04-13
2: Pre-Drive Check	100-04-13
3: Preparing for the Road Test	100-04-13
4: Verify the Customer Concern	100-04-13
5: Road Test	100-04-14
6: Check OASIS/TSBs/Repair History	100-04-16
7: Diagnostic Procedure	100-04-16
Component Tests	100-04-69
NVH Condition and Symptom Categories	100-04-17
Pinpoint Tests	100-04-56
Symptom Charts	100-04-18

O

Oil Filter Adapter — 4x2	303-01B-114
Oil Filter Adapter — 4x4	303-01B-116
Oil Level Indicator and Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-52
Oil Level Indicator and Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-119
Oil Pan — 4x2	303-01A-52
Oil Pan — 4x2, 4.6L	303-01B-120
Oil Pan — 4x2, 5.4L	303-01B-132
Oil Pan — 4x4, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-54
Oil Pan — 4x4, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-145
Oil Pump, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-56
Oil Pump, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-149
Oil Pump Screen and Pickup Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-57
Oil Pump Screen and Pickup Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-150
Output Shaft	308-03-27
Output Shaft — Check	307-01A-221
Output Shaft Speed Sensor	308-07B-7
Output Shaft and Direct Clutch Cylinder	307-01B-187
Output State Control (OSC) Mode, Diagnosis and Testing	307-01A-35
Output State Control (OSC) Mode, Diagnosis and Testing	307-01B-36
Overdrive Ring Gear and Center Shaft Assembly	307-01A-201
Overdrive Servo	307-01B-137

P

Pads, Removal and Installation	206-03-3
Pads, Removal and Installation	206-04-4
Panel	501-04-1

Alphabetical Index

Park System	307-01A-151	Powertrain/Drivetrain Mount Neutralizing	100-04-76
Parking Brake, Description and Operation	206-05-2	Preliminary Inspection, Diagnosis and Testing	307-01A-30
Rear Disc Brakes	206-05-3	Preliminary Inspection, Diagnosis and Testing	307-01B-27
Parking Brake, Diagnosis and Testing	206-05-4	Know/Understand the Concern	307-01A-30
Inspection and Verification	206-05-4	Verification of Condition	307-01A-30
Symptom Chart	206-05-4	Visual Inspection	307-01A-34
Parking, Rear and License Lamps	417-01-22	Pressure Cutoff Switch	412-03-23
Inspection and Verification	417-01-22	Pressure Plate Adjustment	308-00-21
Pinpoint Tests	417-01-23	Pressure Plate Check	308-00-20
Symptom Chart	417-01-22	Pressure Regulator — Fuel	303-04C-21
Passenger Air Bag Deactivation (PAD) Switch	501-20B-114	Pressure Relief	310-00A-3
Pedal and Bracket — Adjustable	206-06-6	Pressure Relief — Fuel Rail Tuning Adjustment	310-00C-24
Pedal and Bracket — Fixed, Automatic		Pressure Relief — Liquid Propane Gas Bi-Fuel	
Transmission	206-06-3	System	310-00C-5
Pedal and Bracket — Fixed, Manual		Pressure Relief — Natural Gas Bi-Fuel System	310-00C-6
Transmission	206-06-4	Pressure Relief Valve	303-04B-31
Pickup Bed, Description and Operation	501-04-1	Pressure Relief Valve — 4.2L	412-03-24
Pickup Bed, Removal and Installation	501-04-4	Pressure Relief Valve — 4.6L and 5.4L	412-03-24
Pinion Seal	205-02C-15	Pressure Relief Valve — Fuel	303-04C-23
Pinpoint Tests — Air Bag and Safety Belt		Pressure Sensor — Fuel Tank	303-13-22
Pretensioner Supplemental Restraint System		Programming	419-02-2
(SRS)	501-20B-11	Erasing Channels	419-02-3
Pinpoint Tests — OSC Equipped Vehicles	307-01B-52	Training a Garage Door Opener Equipped With	
Piston	303-01A-76	“Rolling Codes”	419-02-2
Piston — Pin Connecting Rod, Floating Pin	303-01B-214	Pump	310-01A-8
Piston — Pin Connecting Rod, Press Fit	303-01B-213	Pump Assembly	307-01A-183
Piston — Diameter	303-00-24	Pump and Intermediate Clutch Piston	307-01B-169
Piston — Pin Diameter	303-00-26	Push Rod Adjustment	206-07-1
Piston — Pin to Bore Diameter	303-00-24	Push Rods — Cleaning	303-00-16
Piston — Ring End Gap	303-00-25	Push Rods — Inspection	303-00-16
Piston — Ring-to-Groove Clearance	303-00-25		
Piston — Selection	303-00-24		
Piston — to Cylinder Bore Clearance	303-00-24		
Piston Inspection	303-00-23		
Pivot Arm	501-16-37		
Planetary Gear Support Assembly and Planetary			
One-Way Clutch	307-01B-185		
Plenum Chamber	412-01-5		
Power Brake System	206-07-1		
Power Steering, Description and Operation	211-02-1		
Power Steering Pump	211-02-1		
Pump Identification	211-02-4		
Steering Gear	211-02-2		
Steering Gear Identification	211-02-3		
Power Steering, Diagnosis and Testing	211-02-4		
Power Steering Fluid Cooler	211-02-11		
Power Steering Fluid Reservoir — 4.2L	211-02-4		
Power Steering Fluid Reservoir — 4.6L and 5.4L	211-02-5		
Power Steering Pump	211-02-6		
Power Steering Pump Pulley	211-02-7		
Power Steering Pump to Steering Gear Pressure			
Line	211-02-8		
Power Steering System Purging	211-00-11		
Powertrain Control Module (PCM)	303-14-8		

Q

Quick Release Coupling — Dual Locking	310-00A-8
Quick Release Coupling — Single Locking	310-00A-8

R

Radiator, Removal and Installation	303-03A-23
Radiator, Removal and Installation	303-03B-11
Radiator Grille	501-08-1
Radiator Grille — Bumper Cover	501-08-2
Range Selection, Description and Operation	307-01A-6
Range Selection, Description and Operation	307-01B-4
Rear Case Bushings	307-01A-194
Rear Disc Brake, Description and Operation	206-04-1
Rear Disc Brake, Diagnosis and Testing	206-04-2
Rear Door Latch — Lower	501-14-49
Rear Door Latch — SuperCrew	501-14-51
Rear Door Latch — Upper	501-14-50
Rear Door Trim Panel — SuperCrew	501-05-7

Alphabetical Index

Rear Door Window Glass — SuperCrew	501-11-44	Rear Wheel Bearing and Axle Shaft Oil Seal, In-Vehicle Repair	205-02A-7
Rear Door Window Regulator — SuperCrew	501-11-54	Rear Wheel Bearing and Axle Shaft Oil Seal, In-Vehicle Repair	205-02B-6
Rear Door Window Regulator Motor — SuperCrew	501-11-52	Rear Wheel Bearing and Axle Shaft Oil Seal — Disc Brake	205-02C-9
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Description and Operation	205-02A-2	Rear Wheel Bearing and Axle Shaft Oil Seal — Drum Brake	205-02C-11
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Description and Operation	205-02B-2	Rear Window Glass	501-11-46
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Description and Operation	205-02C-2	Rear Window Glass — Regulator and Motor	501-11-49
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Diagnosis and Testing	205-02A-4	Refrigerant Identification Testing	412-00-107
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Diagnosis and Testing	205-02B-4	Refrigerant Oil Adding	412-00-107
Rear Drive Axle and Differential, Diagnosis and Testing	205-02C-4	Refrigerant System Filtering Following Air Conditioning (A/C) Component Installation	412-00-105
Rear Footwell Duct	412-01-4	Refrigerant System Tests	412-00-94
Rear Safety Belt Retractor — Center, SuperCrew	501-20A-33	Register — Center	412-01-2
Rear Safety Belt Retractor — Outboard, SuperCrew	501-20A-33	Register — LH	412-01-2
Rear Seat — 40 Percent and Quad Bucket, SuperCrew	501-10-56	Register — RH	412-01-3
Rear Seat — 60 Percent, SuperCrew	501-10-55	Remote Transmitter Programming	501-14-45
Rear Seat — SuperCab	501-10-55	Replacement of the Weld Nut and Reinforcement	501-20A-24
Rear Seat Backrest — 40 Percent and Quad Bucket, SuperCrew, Disassembly and Assembly	501-10-113	Reservoir	206-06-18
Rear Seat Backrest — 40 Percent and Quad Bucket, SuperCrew, Removal and Installation	501-10-66	Retractor — Rear, SuperCab	501-20A-27
Rear Seat Backrest — SuperCab	501-10-112	Reverse Clutch	307-01B-174
Rear Seat Backrest — SuperCrew 60 Percent, Disassembly and Assembly	501-10-113	Reverse Clutch Piston	307-01A-226
Rear Seat Backrest — SuperCrew 60 Percent, Removal and Installation	501-10-65	Reverse Idler Gear	308-03-32
Rear Seat Backrest Latch — SuperCrew	501-10-82	Reverse Planet Assembly	307-01A-224
Rear Seat Cushion — 40 Percent and Quad Bucket, SuperCrew	501-10-101	Reverse Servo Assembly	307-01B-135
Rear Seat Cushion — 60/40 Bench and Quad Bucket, SuperCrew	501-10-80	Reverse Sun Gear	307-01B-186
Rear Seat Cushion — SuperCab	501-10-99	Reversing Lamps	417-01-31
Rear Seat Cushion — SuperCrew 60 Percent	501-10-99	Inspection and Verification	417-01-31
Rear Suspension, Description and Operation	204-02-1	Pinpoint Tests	417-01-31
Rear Axle Bumpers	204-02-3	Symptom Chart	417-01-31
Rear Spring	204-02-3	Ride Height	204-01B-3
Shock Absorbers	204-02-3	Ring Gear	308-01-4
Suspension Fasteners	204-02-3	Road Testing Vehicle	307-01B-29
Rear Suspension, Diagnosis and Testing	204-02-3	Rocker Arms — Cleaning	303-00-15
Rear View Mirrors, Description and Operation	501-09-1	Rocker Arms — Inspection	303-00-16
Rear View Mirrors, Diagnosis and Testing	501-09-1	Roller Follower — Inspection	303-00-29
Inspection and Verification	501-09-1	Roof Opening Panel, Description and Operation	501-17-1
Component Test	501-09-12	Roof Opening Panel, Diagnosis and Testing	501-17-1
Pinpoint Tests	501-09-2	Inspection and Verification	501-17-1
Symptom Chart	501-09-2	Pinpoint Tests	501-17-3
		Symptom Chart	501-17-2
		Roof Opening Panel, Removal and Installation	501-17-11
		Roof Opening Panel Alignment — Height Adjustment	501-17-10
		Roof Opening Panel Alignment — Horizontal Adjustment	501-17-10
		Roof Opening Panel Frame	501-17-12
		Roof Opening Panel Module	501-17-13
		Roof Opening Panel Motor	501-17-11

Alphabetical Index

S

SPECIFICATIONS

Acceleration Control.....	310-02-1
Accessory Drive	303-05-1
Air Conditioning	412-03-1
Air Distribution and Filtering	412-01-1
Antenna	415-02-1
Anti-Lock Control — 4-Wheel	206-09B-1
Anti-Lock Control — Rear	206-09A-1
Anti-Theft — PATS.....	419-01-1
Audio Unit	415-01-1
Automatic Transaxle/Transmission External Controls	307-05-1
Automatic Transmission — 4R100	307-01A-1
Automatic Transmission — 4R70W	307-01B-1
Battery, Mounting and Cables	414-01-1
Body Closures.....	501-03-1
Body System — General Information	501-00-1
Brake System — General Information	206-00-1
Bumpers	501-19-1
Climate Control System - General Information	412-00-1
Clutch	308-01-1
Clutch Controls	308-02-1
Control Components	412-04-1
Daytime Running Lamps.....	417-04-1
Driveline System — General Information	205-00-1
Driveshaft	205-01-1
Drum Brake	206-02-1
Electronic Engine Controls	303-14-1
Engine — 4.2L	303-01A-1
Engine — 4.6L and 5.4L.....	303-01B-1
Engine Cooling	303-03A-1
Engine Emission Control.....	303-08-1
Engine Ignition — 4.2L	303-07A-1
Engine Ignition — 4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V).....	303-07B-1
Engine System — General Information	303-00-1
Evaporative Emissions.....	303-13-1
Exhaust System	309-00-1
Exterior Lighting	417-01-1
Exterior Trim and Ornamentation	501-08-1
Front Disc Brake	206-03-1
Front Drive Axle/Differential — Ford 8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-03-1
Front Drive Halfshafts	205-04-1
Front End Body Panels	501-02-1
Front Suspension — 4x2	204-01A-1
Front Suspension — 4x4	204-01B-1
Fuel Charging and Controls — 4.2L	303-04A-1
Fuel Charging and Controls — 4.6L (2V) and 5.4L (2V)	303-04B-1
Fuel Charging and Controls — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	303-04D-1

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

Fuel Charging and Controls — Natural Gas Vehicle	303-04C-1
Fuel System — General Information	310-00A-1
Fuel System — General Information — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-00C-1
Fuel System — General Information — Natural Gas	310-00B-1
Fuel Tank and Lines	310-01A-1
Fuel Tank and Lines — Bi-Fuel Vehicles	310-01C-1
Fuel Tank and Lines — Natural Gas	310-01B-1
Full Frame and Body Mounting	502-02-1
Generator and Regulator	414-02-1
Glass, Frames and Mechanisms	501-11-1
Handles, Locks, Latches and Entry Systems.....	501-14-1
Heating and Ventilation	412-02-1
Horn.....	413-06-1
Hydraulic Brake Actuation	206-06-1
Instrument Cluster — Conventional.....	413-01A-1
Instrument Cluster — Natural Gas Vehicle	413-01B-1
Instrument Panel and Console	501-12-1
Intake Air Distribution and Filtering	303-12-1
Interior Trim and Ornamentation	501-05-1
Manual Transaxle/Transmission	308-03-1
Manual Transaxle/Transmission and Clutch — General Information	308-00-1
Module Communications Network.....	418-00-1
Multifunction Electronic Modules	419-10-1
Parking Brake and Actuation	206-05-1
Pickup Bed and Platform Body	501-04-1
Power Brake Actuation	206-07-1
Power Steering	211-02-1
Rear Disc Brake.....	206-04-1
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford 10.25-Inch Ring Gear	205-02C-1
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford 8.8-Inch Ring Gear	205-02A-1
Rear Drive Axle/Differential — Ford 9.75-Inch Ring Gear	205-02B-1
Rear Suspension	204-02-1
Rear View Mirrors	501-09-1
Roof Opening Panel	501-17-1
Safety Belt System.....	501-20A-1
Seating.....	501-10-1
Speed Control	310-03-1
Starting System	303-06-1
Steering Column	211-04-1
Steering Column Switches.....	211-05-1
Steering Linkage	211-03-1
Steering System — General Information	211-00-1
Supercharger Cooling.....	303-03B-1
Supplemental Restraint System	501-20B-1
Suspension System — General Information.....	204-00-1
Transaxle/Transmission Cooling	307-02-1

Alphabetical Index

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

Transfer Case	308-07B-1	Safety Belt Tongue Rotated on Belt	501-20A-26
Wheels and Tires	204-04-1	Safety Precautions	204-04-1
Wipers and Washers	501-16-1	Seal — Oil	308-07B-4
Safety Belt — 60/40 Split and Front Bench Seat, Center Passenger	501-20A-41	Seals, Rings and Gasket Locator, Description and Operation	307-01A-16
Safety Belt — Rear, SuperCab	501-20A-42	Seals, Rings and Gasket Locator, Description and Operation	307-01B-13
Safety Belt Buckle — 40 Percent Portion of 60/40 Split Bench	501-20A-54	Seat — 40 Percent and Captain's Chair	501-10-88
Safety Belt Buckle — 60 Percent Portion of 60/40 Split Bench	501-20A-53	Seat — 60 Percent Front Bench	501-10-84
Safety Belt Buckle — Bucket Seats	501-20A-51	Seat — Front Bench	501-10-83
Safety Belt Buckle — Full Bench Seat	501-20A-52	Seat — Track, Manual	501-10-91
Safety Belt Buckle — Rear, Left Hand Passenger, SuperCrew	501-20A-55	Seat Backrest — Rear Seat	501-10-60
Safety Belt Buckle — Rear, Right Hand and Center Passenger SuperCrew	501-20A-56	Seat Control Switch — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-10-57
Safety Belt Buckle — Rear, SuperCab	501-20A-54	Seat Control Switch — Seat Regulator Control	501-10-56
Safety Belt Buckle and Pretensioner — Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR), SuperCab	501-20A-56	Seat Latch — SuperCrew Rear Seat	501-10-82
Safety Belt Cleaning	501-20A-24	Seat Track — Manual	501-10-67
Safety Belt Pretensioner Disposal — Deployed	501-20B-71	Seat Track — Power	501-10-69
Safety Belt Pretensioner Disposal — Undeployed, Inoperative	501-20B-71	Seat Track — With Seat Integrated Restraints	501-10-70
Safety Belt Pretensioner Disposal — Undeployed, Scrapped Vehicle	501-20B-72	Seats, Description and Operation	501-10-2
Safety Belt Buckle Pretensioner Remote Deployment	501-20B-72	Rear—CrewCab	501-10-3
Safety Belt Retractor Pretensioner Remote Deployment	501-20B-73	Seats, Diagnosis and Testing	501-10-3
Safety Belt Procedure After a Collision	501-20A-26	Inspection and Verification	501-10-4
Safety Belt Retractor and Pretensioner — Without Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-20A-34	Pinpoint Tests	501-10-7
Safety Belt Shoulder Height Adjuster — Front, SuperCrew	501-20A-47	Principles of Operation	501-10-4
Safety Belt Shoulder Height Adjuster — Rear, SuperCrew	501-20A-49	Restraint System Diagnostic Tool Warning	501-10-4
Safety Belt Shoulder Height Adjuster With Stripped Weld Nuts	501-20A-24	Symptom Chart	501-10-5
Safety Belt System, Description and Operation	501-20A-2	Sector Shaft Arm — 4x2	211-03-7
Attaching Safety Seats With Tether Straps	501-20A-4	Sector Shaft Arm — 4x4	211-03-8
Dual Locking Mode Retractors	501-20A-3	Sector Shaft Arm Drag Link	211-03-6
Fastening Safety Belts	501-20A-3	Security Access — Procedure	419-01-20
Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH)	501-20A-5	Selector Lever	307-05-15
Pretensioner System	501-20A-2	Sender Unit — 4.2L	303-03A-27
Safety Belt Extension Assembly	501-20A-3	Sensor — Front, 4x2	206-09B-31
Safety Belt, Buckle End—Front	501-20A-3	Sensor — Front, 4x4	206-09B-32
Seat Integrated Restraints (SIR)	501-20A-2	Sensor — Rear, Removal and Installation	206-09A-37
Warning System — Driver Safety Belt	501-20A-4	Sensor — Rear, Removal and Installation	206-09B-31
Safety Belt System, Diagnosis and Testing	501-20A-5	Sensor Indicator	206-09A-37
Component Test	501-20A-5	Sensor Indicator — Front, 4x2	206-09B-32
Inspection and Verification	501-20A-5	Shaft Seal	412-03-15
Symptom Chart	501-20A-5	Shield, Removal and Installation	206-03-10
		Shield, Removal and Installation	206-04-7
		Shift Control Housing	308-03-22
		Shift Lever	308-07B-5
		Shift Lever and Boot	308-03-9
		Shift Patterns, Description and Operation	307-01A-6
		Shift Patterns, Description and Operation	307-01B-5
		Shift Point Road Test	307-01B-29
		Shift Switch — 4WD Indicator	308-07B-4
		Shoes	206-02-6
		Shoes — Rear Disc Brakes	206-05-9
		Slave Cylinder	308-02-6
		Solenoid — Canister Vent	303-13-23
		Solenoid Valve — Fuel Tank	310-01B-19

Alphabetical Index

Solenoid Valve — Tank	310-01C-5	Steering System, Diagnosis and Testing (Continued)	
Spacer — Mid-Ship Fuel Tank Mounting	310-01B-21	Symptom Chart	211-00-5
Spark Plug, Removal and Installation	303-07A-3	Stoplamps	417-01-15
Spark Plug, Removal and Installation	303-07B-2	Inspection and Verification	417-01-15
Spark Plug — Inspection	303-00-35	Pinpoint Tests	417-01-16
Spark Plug Hole Thread Repair	303-00-35	Symptom Chart	417-01-16
Spark Plug Wire	303-07A-2	Suction Accumulator — 4.2L	412-03-20
Speakers	415-03-1	Suction Accumulator — 4.6L and 5.4L	412-03-21
Speakers — Door Mounted	415-03-1	Sunload Sensor	412-04-16
Special Testing Procedures	307-01B-74	Supercharger Bypass Vacuum Solenoid	303-14-24
Speed Control, Description and Operation	310-03-1	Supercharger Bypass Vacuum Solenoid —	
Speed Control, Diagnosis and Testing	310-03-1	Actuator	303-14-24
Inspection and Verification	310-03-2	Supercharger Cooling, Description and Operation	303-03B-1
Pinpoint Tests	310-03-4	Supercharger Cooling, Diagnosis and Testing	303-03B-2
Principles of Operation	310-03-1	Component Tests	303-03B-6
Self-Test Diagnostics	310-03-2	Inspection and Verification	303-03B-3
Symptom Chart	310-03-3	Pinpoint Tests	303-03B-5
Speed Control Cable	310-03-25	Symptom Chart	303-03B-5
Speed Control Servo	310-03-26	Supercharger Cooling System Draining, Filling	
Spindle	204-01A-11	and Bleeding	303-03B-8
Spring	204-02-6	Supercharger Cooling System Flushing	303-03B-9
Spring — Coil	204-01A-14	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	
Spring Lock Coupling	412-00-89	Deactivation and Reactivation, General	
Spring Lock Couplings	310-00B-3	Procedures	501-10-32
Spring Lock Couplings — Spring Lock	310-00A-5	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	
Sprockets	303-00-15	Deactivation and Reactivation, General	
Starter Drive and Flywheel Ring Gear Inspection	303-06-19	Procedures	501-20A-6
Starter Motor	303-06-21	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	
Starting System, Description and Operation	303-06-1	Deactivation and Reactivation, General	
Starting System, Diagnosis and Testing	303-06-3	Procedures	501-20B-74
Inspection and Verification	303-06-3	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	
Pinpoint Tests	303-06-4	Deactivation and Reactivation, General	
Symptom Chart	303-06-3	Procedures	211-04-4
Steering Column, Description and Operation	211-04-2	Supply Manifold — Fuel Injection	303-04C-15
Steering Column, Diagnosis and Testing	211-04-4	Support — Cab	502-02-8
Steering Column — Manual Transmission	211-04-26	Support Straps	310-01A-7
Steering Column — Automatic Transmission	211-04-37	Support Straps — In-Bed Tank Assembly, Upper	310-01B-21
Steering Column Shaft	211-04-25	Support Straps — Mid-Ship Tank	310-01B-20
Steering Column Switches, Description and		Suspension System	204-00-4
Operation	211-05-1	Component Tests	204-00-11
Steering Column Switches, Diagnosis and Testing	211-05-2	Inspection and Verification	204-00-4
Component Test	211-05-11	Symptom Chart	204-00-5
Inspection and Verification	211-05-2	Switch — Clutch Pedal Position (CPP)	303-06-23
Pinpoint Tests	211-05-7	Switch — Deactivator	310-03-28
Symptom Chart	211-05-6	Switch — Door Open Warning Lamp	413-09-21
Steering Gear, Disassembly and Assembly	211-02-14	Switch — Relay Solenoid	303-06-20
Steering Gear, Removal and Installation	211-02-12	Switch — Speed Control Actuator	310-03-27
Steering Linkage, Description and Operation	211-03-2	Switches	412-04-9
Steering Linkage, Diagnosis and Testing	211-03-2	Synchronizer — Camshaft, 4.2L	303-14-4
Steering System, Description and Operation	211-00-1	Synchronizers	308-03-33
Steering System, Diagnosis and Testing	211-00-3	System Flushing	211-00-9
Component Tests	211-00-7		
Inspection and Verification	211-00-3		

Alphabetical Index

T

Tailgate Latch	501-14-53	Torque Converter Impeller to Pump Stator Interference Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-229
Tailgate Latch Remote Control	501-14-65	Torque Converter Impeller to Pump Stator Interference Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-197
Tailgate Lock Cylinder	501-14-63	Torque Converter Leak Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-228
Tailgate Release Handle	501-14-60	Torque Converter Leak Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-196
Tank — Compressed Natural Gas (CNG)	310-01C-4	Torque Converter One-Way Clutch Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-231
Tank — Forward In-Bed	310-01B-15	Torque Converter One-Way Clutch Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-198
Tank — Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG)	310-01C-2	Torque Converter Turbine to Pump Stator Interference Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-232
Tank — Midship	310-01B-11	Torque Converter Turbine to Pump Stator Interference Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-199
Tank — Rear In-Bed	310-01B-17	Torque Multiplication Conversion	310-00B-18
Tank Inspection — Purging	310-00C-21	Torsion Bar	204-01B-14
Temperature Blend Door Actuator	412-04-10	Trailer Lamps	417-01-35
Thermostat — 4.2L	303-03A-19	Inspection and Verification	417-01-35
Thermostat — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-03A-20	Pinpoint Tests	417-01-36
Throttle Body, Removal and Installation	303-04A-2	Symptom Chart	417-01-36
Throttle Body, Removal and Installation	303-04B-2	Transfer Case, Description and Operation	308-07A-1
Throttle Body — Supercharged Engine	303-04B-3	Transfer Case, Description and Operation	308-07B-1
Throttle Position (TP) Sensor — 4.2L	303-14-9	Transfer Case, Diagnosis and Testing	308-07B-3
Throttle Position (TP) Sensor — 4.6L and 5.4L	303-14-9	Transfer Case, Disassembly and Assembly	308-07B-8
Throttle Position (TP) Sensor — Supercharged Engine	303-14-11	Transfer Case, Installation	308-07B-38
Tie Rod End — Inner	211-03-3	Transfer Case — 4R100 Transmission	308-07B-33
Tie Rod End — Outer	211-03-4	Transfer Case — 4R70W Transmission	308-07B-30
Tie Rod End — Adjusting Sleeve	211-03-5	Transfer Case — ESOF	308-07A-3
Timing Chain — Tensioner	303-01A-40	Inspection and Verification — Electronic Shift on the Fly (ESOF)	308-07A-6
Timing Drive Components — Romeo Engine (4.6L)	303-01B-94	Pinpoint Tests	308-07A-12
Timing Drive Components — Windsor Engine (5.4L)	303-01B-85	Symptom Chart — Electronic Shift on the Fly (ESOF)	308-07A-11
Toe Adjustment	204-00-14	Transfer Case — Electronic Shift on the Fly (ESOF) Features	308-07A-3
Tonneau Cover	501-00-3	Transfer Case — Electronic Shift on the Fly (ESOF) Operation	308-07A-2
Tonneau Cover — Side Rail	501-04-6	Transfer Case — MSOF	308-07A-72
Tonneau Cover — Side Rail End Cap	501-04-7	Inspection and Verification	308-07A-73
Torque Converter, Description and Operation	307-01B-15	Pinpoint Tests	308-07A-78
Torque Converter, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-227	Symptom Chart	308-07A-77
Torque Converter, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-195	Transfer Case — Mechanical Shift On The Fly (MSOF) Operation	308-07A-2
Torque Converter Cleaning And Inspection, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-227	Transfer Case — Power Flow	308-07A-1
Torque Converter Cleaning And Inspection, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-195	Transfer Case Draining and Filling	308-07B-3
Torque Converter Diagnosis	307-01B-31	Transmission, Assembly	307-01A-233
Torque Converter End Play Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-230	Transmission, Assembly	307-01B-200
Torque Converter End Play Check, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-197	Transmission, Assembly	308-03-33
Torque Converter Flushing, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01A-228		
Torque Converter Flushing, Disassembly and Assembly of Subassemblies	307-01B-196		

Alphabetical Index

Transmission, Disassembly	307-01A-162
Transmission, Disassembly	307-01B-150
Transmission, Disassembly	308-03-14
Transmission, Installation	307-01A-258
Transmission, Installation	307-01B-216
Transmission, Installation	308-03-43
Transmission, Removal	307-01A-155
Transmission, Removal	307-01B-143
Transmission, Removal	308-03-11
Transmission Connector Layouts	307-01B-49
Transmission Control Switch	307-05-15
Transmission Cooling, Description and Operation	307-02-1
Transmission Cooling, Diagnosis and Testing	307-02-5
Inspection and Verification	307-02-5
Symptom Chart	307-02-6
Transmission Description, Description and Operation	307-01A-5
Transmission Description, Description and Operation	307-01B-3
Transmission Drive Cycle Test	307-01B-40
Transmission Electronic Control System, Description and Operation	307-01A-26
Transmission Electronic Control System, Description and Operation	307-01B-23
Transmission Filler Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01A-123
Transmission Filler Tube, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01B-119
Transmission Fluid Cooler	307-01B-82
Transmission Fluid Cooler — Backflushing and Cleaning, General Procedures	307-01A-117
Transmission Fluid Cooler — Backflushing and Cleaning, General Procedures	307-01B-112
Transmission Fluid Cooler Tubes	307-02-11
Transmission Fluid Drain and Refill, General Procedures	307-01A-118
Transmission Fluid Drain and Refill, General Procedures	307-01B-112
Transmission Insulator and Retainer, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01A-152
Transmission Insulator and Retainer, In-Vehicle Repair	307-01B-140
Transmission Support Crossmember	307-01B-142
Trim Panel — Corner, Upper	501-05-9
Trim Panel — Rear Door	501-05-2
Turbine Shaft Speed (TSS) Sensor and Output	
Shaft Speed (OSS) Sensor	307-01A-133
Turn Signal and Hazard Lamps	417-01-19
Inspection and Verification	417-01-19
Pinpoint Tests	417-01-20
Symptom Chart	417-01-19

U

Universal Joint Flange — Front	205-03-11
Universal Joints	205-01-3
Universal Transmitter, Description and Operation	419-02-1
Universal Transmitter, Diagnosis and Testing	419-02-1
Inspection and Verification	419-02-1
Pinpoint Tests	419-02-1
Symptom Chart	419-02-1
Upper Intake Manifold	303-01A-13

V

Vacuum Control Motor — Air Inlet Door	412-04-17
Vacuum Control Motor — Panel/Defrost Door	412-04-14
Vacuum Control Motor — Panel/Floor Door	412-04-14
Vacuum Hose Repair — Mini-Tube	412-00-109
Vacuum Reservoir Tank and Bracket	412-04-17
Valve	206-09A-36
Valve — Seat Inspection	303-00-33
Valve — Spring Installed Length	303-00-32
Valve — Evaporative Emission Canister Purge	303-13-21
Valve — Fuel Vapor Vent	303-13-22
Valve — Guide Inner Diameter	303-00-31
Valve — Guide Reaming	303-00-32
Valve — Inspection	303-00-31
Valve — Seat Runout	303-00-34
Valve — Seat Width	303-00-33
Valve — Spring Free Length	303-00-32
Valve — Spring Squareness	303-00-32
Valve — Stem Diameter	303-00-30
Valve Cover LH, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-24
Valve Cover LH, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-56
Valve Cover RH, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01A-25
Valve Cover RH, In-Vehicle Repair	303-01B-63
Valve Seals	303-01B-103
Valve Spring	303-01A-35
Valve Spring Strength	303-00-33
Valve Springs	303-01B-102
Valve Stem to Valve Guide Clearance	303-00-30
Valve Tappet	303-01A-37
Valve Tappet — Inspection	303-00-30
Vehicle Demagnetizing	419-11-7
Vehicle Security Module	419-10-19
Inspection and Verification	419-10-19
Pinpoint Tests	419-10-20
Principles of Operation	419-10-19
Symptom Chart	419-10-20
Video Cassette Player	415-07-1
Video System, Description and Operation	415-07-1
Video System, Diagnosis and Testing	415-07-1
Visual Inspection	307-01B-34

Alphabetical Index

Voltage Regulator 414-02-4

W

Warning Devices 413-09-1
 Warning Indicator Bulb 413-01A-51
 Washer Pump and Reservoir 501-16-39
 Water Pump, Removal and Installation 303-03A-21
 Water Pump, Removal and Installation 303-03B-10
 Weld Nut Repair — "J" Nut, Restraints Control
 Module (RCM) 501-20B-92
 Weld Nut Repair — Missing Weld Nut, Restraints
 Control Module (RCM) 501-20B-93
 Weld Nut Repair — Stripped Weld Nut,
 Restraints Control Module (RCM) 501-20B-94
 Wheel 211-04-22
 Wheel Alignment Angles 204-00-1
 Camber 204-00-2
 Dogtracking 204-00-3
 Drift/Pull 204-00-4
 Nibble 204-00-4
 Poor Returnability/Sticky Steering 204-00-4
 Ride Height 204-00-3
 Shimmy 204-00-4
 Toe 204-00-2
 Wander 204-00-4
 Wheel Track 204-00-3

Wheel Bearing Check 100-04-77
 Wheel Bearing Inspection 204-00-12
 Wheel Cylinder, Disassembly and Assembly 206-02-12
 Wheel Cylinder, Removal and Installation 206-02-10
 Wheel Hub 204-01B-5
 Wheel Leaks 204-04-4
 Wheel Studs, Removal and Installation 204-01A-4
 Wheel Studs, Removal and Installation 204-01B-7
 Wheel Studs, Removal and Installation 204-02-4
 Wheel and Tire 204-04-5
 Wheels And Tires, Description and Operation 204-04-1
 Wheels And Tires, Diagnosis and Testing 204-04-2
 Component Tests 204-04-4
 Inspection and Verification 204-04-2
 Symptom Chart 204-04-3
 Window Control Switch 501-11-42
 Window Glass — Rear Side 501-11-42
 Windshield Glass 501-11-56
 Wiper Blade and Pivot Arm Adjustment —
 Windshield 501-16-36
 Wipers and Washers 501-16-1
 Wipers and Washers — GEM/CTM 501-16-1
 Inspection and Verification 501-16-1
 Pinpoint Tests 501-16-7
 Symptom Chart 501-16-6
 Wiring Harness — Fuel Charging 303-04C-12
 Wiring Repair 501-20B-91

Buy Now

